Manual No.'21 • PAC-SM-383
updated September 02, 2022

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES

SERVICE MANUAL

MICRO INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

(Split system, air to air heat pump type)

CEILING CASSETTE-4 WAY TYPE

Twin type	Triple type	Double twin type
FDT200VSAWPVH	FDT200VSAWTVH	FDT200VSAWDVH
250VSAWPVH		250VSAWDVH
280VSAWPVH		280VSAWDVH

CEILING CASSETTE-4 WAY COMPACT TYPE

Double twin type
FDTC200VSAWDVH
250VSAWDVH

DUCT CONNECTED-HIGH STATIC PRESSURE TYPE

Single type
FDU200VSAWVH
250VSAWVH
280VSAWVH

DUCT CONNECTED-LOW/MIDDLE STATIC PRESSURE TYPE

Twin type	Triple type
FDUM200VSAWPVH	FDUM200VSAWTVH
250VSAWPVH	
280VSAWPVH	

CEILING SUSPENDED TYPE

Twin type	Triple type	Double twin type
FDE200VSAWPVH	FDE200VSAWTVH	FDE200VSAWDVH
250VSAWPVH		250VSAWDVH
280VSAWPVH		280VSAWDVH

WALL MOUNTED TYPE

Twin type
SRK200VSAWPZR

V Multi System

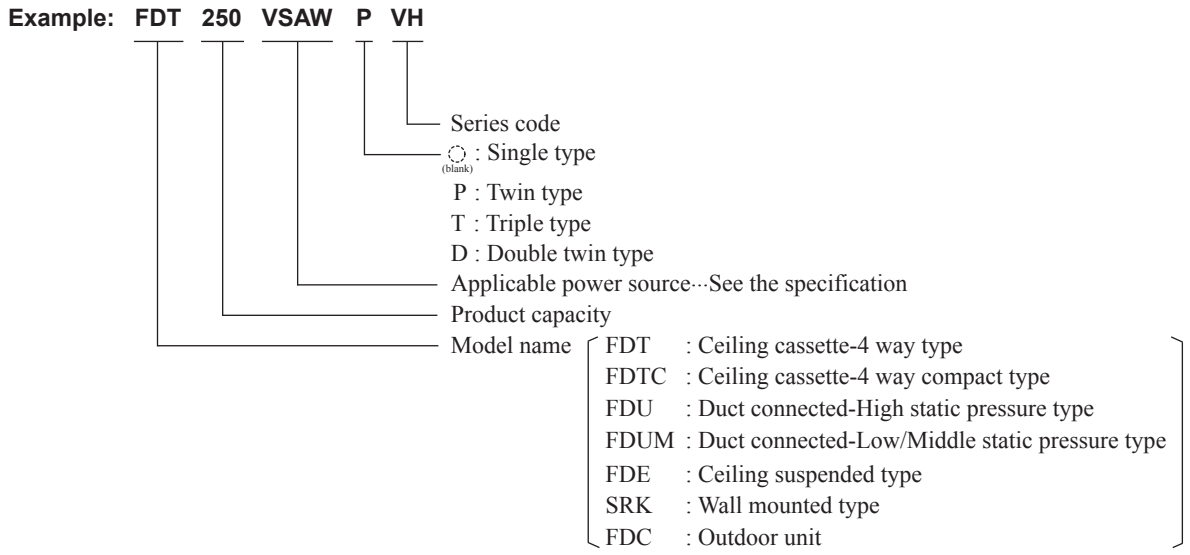
(OUTDOOR UNIT)	(INDOOR UNIT)	
FDC200VSA-W	FDT50VH	FDE50VH
250VSA-W	60VH	60VH
280VSA-W	71VH	71VH
	100VH	100VH
	125VH	125VH
	140VH	140VH

• Notes:
(1) SRK twin type can be connected only after service code "/A" of FDC200VSA-W.
(2) The service code "/A" is reflected from the serial number below.
S/N: A0430001BF–.

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.

CONTENTS

■How to read the model name

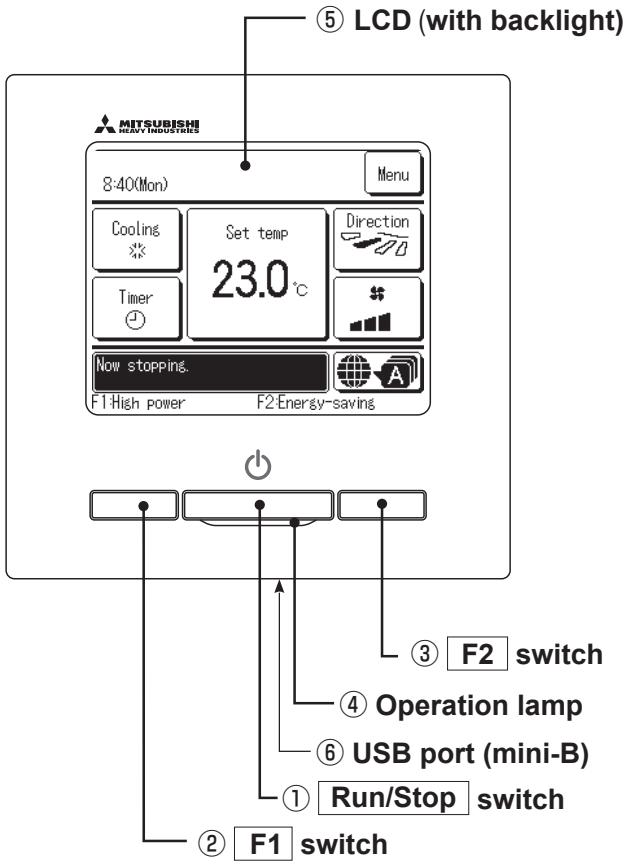


1. OUTLINE OF OPERATION CONTROL BY MICROCOMPUTER

1.1 Remote control (Option parts)

(1) Wired remote control

Model RC-EX3A



Touch panel system, which is operated by tapping the LCD screen with a finger, is employed for any operations other than the ①Run/Stop, ②F1 and ③F2 switches.

① Run/Stop switch

One push on the button starts operation and another push stops operation.

② F1 switch③ F2 switch

This switch starts operation that is set in F1/F2 function change.

④ Operation lamp

This lamp lights in green (yellow-green) during operation. It changes to red (orange) if any error occurs.
Operation lamp luminance can be changed.

⑤ LCD (with backlight)

A tap on the LCD lights the backlight.
The backlight turns off automatically if there is no operation for certain period of time. Lighting period of the backlight lighting can be changed.
If the backlight is ON setting, when the screen is tapped while the backlight is turned off, the backlight only is turned on. (Operations with switches ①,② and ③ are excluded.)

⑥ USB port

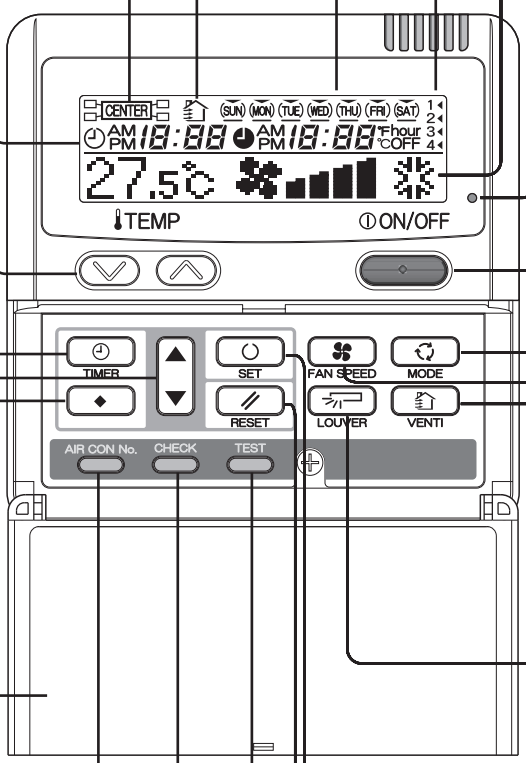
USB connector (mini-B) allows connecting to a personal computer.
For operating methods, refer to the instruction manual attached to the software for personal computer (remote control utility software).

Note(1) When connecting to a personal computer, do not connect simultaneously with other USB devices.
Please be sure to connect to the computer directly,without going through a hub, etc.

Model RC-E5

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened. Note that all the items that may be displayed in the liquid crystal display area are shown in the figure for the sake of explanation.
Characters displayed with dots in the liquid crystal display area are abbreviated.

The figure below shows the remote control with the cover opened.



Ventilaion display
Displayed during ventilation operation

Central control display
Displayed when the air conditioning system is controlled by central control.

Timer operation display
Displays the timer operation setting.

Temperature setting buttons
These buttons are used to set the temperature of the room.

Timer button
This button is used to set the timer mode.

Timer setting buttons
These buttons are used to set the timer mode and the time.

ESP button
This button is used to select the auto static pressure adjustment mode.

Cover

AIR CON No. button
Display the indoor unit number connected to this remote control.

CHECK button
This button is used at servicing.

TEST button
This button is used during test operation.

Weekly timer display
Displays the settings of the weekly timer.

Operation setting display area
Displays setting temperature, air flow volume, operation mode and oparation message.

Operation/check indicator light
During oparation: Lit in green
In case of error: Flashing in red

Operation/stop button
This button is used to operate and stop the air-conditioning system.
Press the button once to operate the system and press it once again to stop the system.

MODE button
This button is used to change the operation mode.

FAN SPEED button
This button is used to set the air flow volume.

VENT button
This button is used to operate external ventilator.

LOUVER button
This button is used to operate/stop the swing louver.

SET button
•This button is used to fix the setting.
•This button is used to set the silent mode.

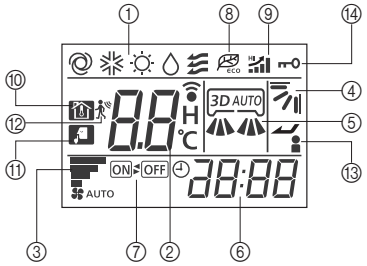
RESET button
•Press this button while making settings to go back to the previous operation.
•This button is also used to reset the "**FILTER CLEANING**" display. (Press it after cleaning the air filter)

∗ All displays are described in the liguid crystal display for explanation.

(2) Wireless remote control

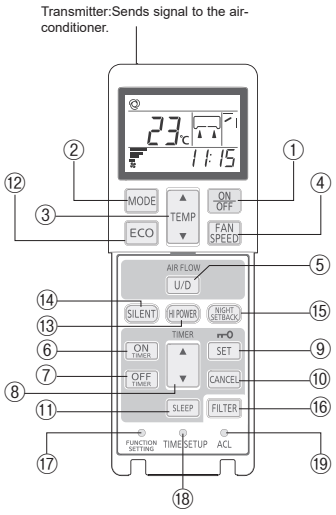
RCN-E2 (Except SRK series)

Indication section



①	OPERATION MODE display	Indicates selected operation mode.
②	SET TEMP display	Indicates set temperature.
	SLEEP TIMER time display	Indicates the amount of time remaining on the sleep timer.
	Indoor function setting number display	Indicates the setting number of the indoor function setting.
③	FAN SPEED display	Indicates the selected air flow volume.
④	UP/DOWN AIR FLOW display	Indicates the up/down louver position.
⑤	LEFT/RIGHT AIR FLOW display	Indicates the left/right louver position.
⑥	Clock display	Indicates the current time. If the timer is set, the ON TIMER and OFF TIMER setting times are indicated.
⑦	ON/OFF TIMER display	Displayed when the timer is set.
⑧	ECO mode display	Displayed when the energy-saving operation is active.
⑨	HI POWER display	Displayed when the high power operation is active.
⑩	NIGHT SETBACK display	Displayed when the home leave mode is active.
⑪	SILENT display	Displayed when the silent mode control is active.
⑫	Motion sensor display	Displayed when the infrared sensor control(motion sensor control) is enabled.
⑬	Anti draft setting display	Displayed when anti draft setting is enabled.
⑭	Child lock display	Displayed when child lock is enabled.

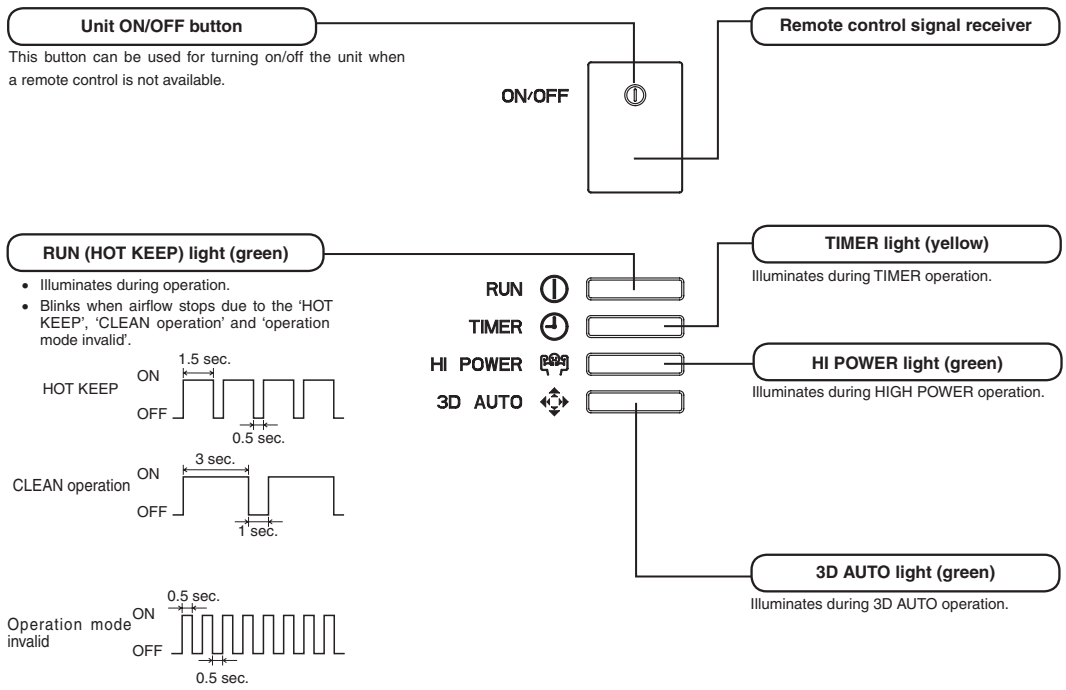
Operation section



①	ON/OFF button	When this is pressed once, the air-conditioner starts to operate and when this is pressed once again, it stops operating.
②	MODE button	Every time this button is pressed, displays switch as below (AUTO) → (COOL) → (HEAT) → (FAN) → (DRY) →
③	TEMP button	Change the set temperature by pressing ▲ or ▼ button.
④	FAN SPEED button	The fan speed is switched in the following order: 1-speed → 2-speed → 3-speed → 4-speed → AUTO → 1-speed.
⑤	U/D button	Used to determine the up/down louver position.
⑥	ON TIMER button	Used to set the ON TIMER.
⑦	OFF TIMER button	Used to set the OFF TIMER.
⑧	SELECT button	Used to switch the time when setting the timer or adjusting the time. Used to switch the settings of the indoor function.
⑨	SET button	Used to determine the setting when setting the timer or adjusting the time. Used to determine the settings of the indoor function. When press and hold SET button ,Child Lock is enabled.
⑩	CANCEL button	Used to cancel the timer setting.
⑪	SLEEP button	Used to set the sleep timer.
⑫	ECO button	Pressing this button starts the energy-saving operation. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑬	HI POWER button	Pressing this button starts the high power operation. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑭	SILENT button	Pressing this button starts the silent mode control. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑮	NIGHT SETBACK button	Pressing this button starts the home leave mode. Pressing this button again cancels it.
⑯	FILTER button	Pressing this button resets FILTER SIGN.
⑰	FUNCTION SETTING switch	Used to set the indoor function.
⑱	TIME SETUP switch	Used to set the current time.
⑲	ACL switch	Used to reset the microcomputer.

Model SRK100ZR-W

Unit display section



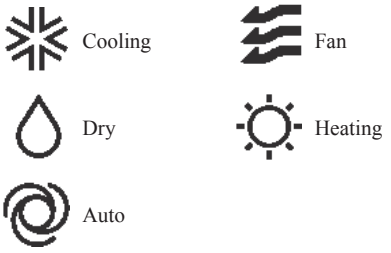
Note(1) Wireless remote control of SRK100ZR-W accessory can't be used.

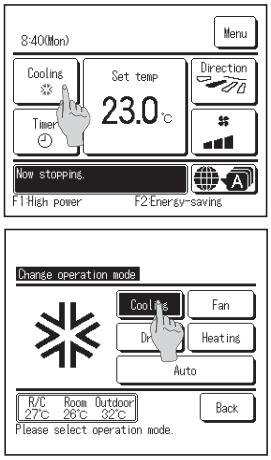
1.2 Operation control function by the wired remote control

●Model RC-EX3A

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(a) Tap the change operation mode button on the TOP screen.
(b) When the change operation mode screen is displayed, tap the button of desired mode.
(c) When the operation mode is selected, the display returns to the TOP screen.
Icons displayed have the following meanings.



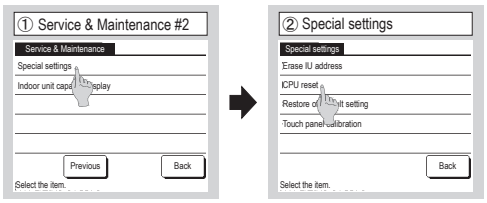


Notes (1) Operation modes which cannot be selected depending on combinations of indoor unit and outdoor unit are not displayed.
(2) When the Auto is selected, the cooling and heating switching operation is performed automatically according to indoor and outdoor temperatures.

(2) CPU reset

Reset CPU from the remote control as follows.

TOP screen → Menu ⇒ Service setting ⇒ Service & Maintenance ⇒ Service password



The selected screen is displayed.

The selected screen is displayed.

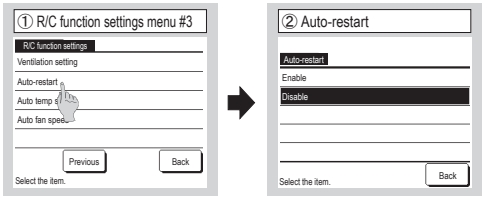
CPU reset

Microcomputers of indoor unit and outdoor unit connected are reset (State of restoration after power failure).

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power source failure)

Enable the Auto-restart function from the remote control as follows.

TOP screen → Menu ⇒ Service setting ⇒ R/C function settings ⇒ Service password



If the unit stops during operation,

Enable

It returns to the state before the power failure as soon as the power source is restored (After the end of the primary control at the power on).

Disable

It stops after the restoration of power source.

●Since the status of remote control is retained in memory always, it restarts operations according to the contents of memory as soon as the power source is restored. Although the timer mode is cancelled, the weekly timer, peak cut timer and silent mode timer operate according to the following contents:

・When the clock setting is valid : These timer settings are also valid.
・When the clock setting is invalid : These timer settings become “Invalid” since the clock setting is invalid.
These timer settings have to be changed to “Valid” after the timer setting.

●Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

Note(1) Items (f) and (g) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

(a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized.

(b) Operation mode

(c) Air flow volume mode

(d) Room temperature setting

(e) Louver auto swing/stop
However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).

(f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the administrator or installation function settings ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)

(g) Weekly timer, peak-cut timer or silent mode timer settings

(h) Remote control function setting

(4) Alert displays

If the following (a) to (c) appear, check and repair as follows.

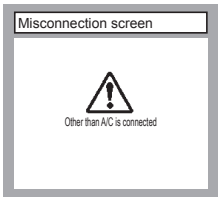
(a) Communication check between indoor unit and remote control

●This appears if communications cannot be established between the remote control and the indoor unit.
Check whether the system is correctly connected (indoor unit, outdoor unit, remote control) and whether the power source for the outdoor unit is connected.

(b) Clock setting check

●This appears when the timer settings are done without clock setting.
Set the clock setting before the timer settings.

(c) Misconnection



●This appears when something other than the air-conditioner has been connected to the remote control.
Check the location to which the remote control is connected.

●Model RC-E5

(1) Switching sequence of the operation mode switches of remote control

(2) CPU reset

This functions when "CHECK" and "ESP" buttons on the remote control are pressed simultaneously. Operation is same as that of the power source reset.

(3) Power failure compensation function (Electric power source failure)

- This becomes effective if "Power failure compensation effective" is selected with the setting of remote control function.
- Since it memorizes always the condition of remote control, it starts operation according to the contents of memory no sooner than normal state is recovered after the power failure. Although the auto swing stop position and the timer mode are cancelled, the weekly timer setting is restored with the holiday setting for all weekdays.
  After recovering from the power failure, it readjusts the clock and resets the holiday setting for each weekday so that the setting of weekly timer becomes effective.
- Content memorized with the power failure compensation are as follows.

Note (1) Items (f), (g) and (h) are memorized regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not while the setting of silent mode is cancelled regardless whether the power failure compensation is effective or not.

(a) At power failure – Operating/stopped
If it had been operating under the off timer mode, sleep timer mode, the state of stop is memorized. (Although the timer mode is cancelled at the recovery from power failure, the setting of weekly timer is changed to the holiday setting for all weekdays.)

(b) Operation mode

(c) Air flow volume mode

(d) Room temperature setting

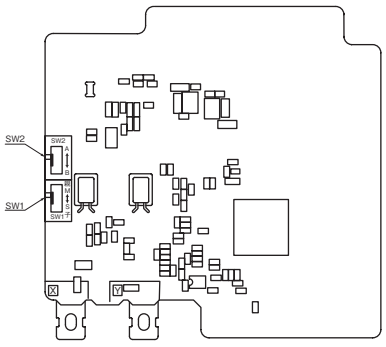
(e) Louver auto swing/stop
However, the stop position (4-position) is cancelled so that it returns to Position (1).

(f) "Remote control function items" which have been set with the remote control function setting ("Indoor function items" are saved in the memory of indoor unit.)

(g) Upper limit value and lower limit value which have been set with the temperature setting control

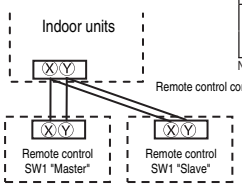
(h) Sleep timer and weekly timer settings (Other timer settings are not memorized.)

[Parts layout on remote control PCB]



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote controls are used

A maximum of two remote controls can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)



Switch	Setting	Contents
SW1	M	Master remote control
	S	Slave remote control

Note (1) Don't change SW2 because it is not used normally.

Caution

When using multiple remote controls, the following dispiays or settings cannot be done with the slave remote control. It is available only with the master remote control.

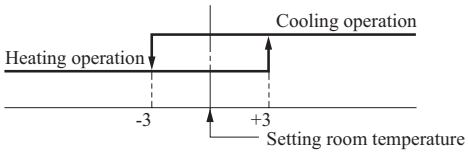
①Louver position setting (set upper or lower limit of swinging range)
②Setting indoor unit functions
③Setting temperature range
④Operation data display
⑤Error data display
⑥Silent mode setting
⑦Test operation of drain pump
⑧Remote control sensor setting

1.3 Operation control function by the indoor control

(Ⅰ) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

(1) Auto operation

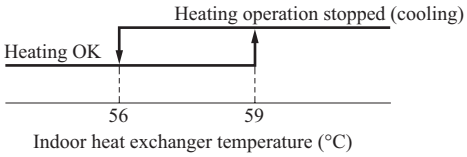
(a) If “Auto” mode is selected by the remote control, the heating and the cooling are automatically switched according to the difference between outdoor air temperature and setting temperature and the difference between setting temperature and return air temperature. (When the switching of cooling mode ↔ heating mode takes place within 3 minutes, the compressor does not operate for 3 minutes by the control of 3-minute timer.) This will facilitate the cooling/heating switching operation in intermediate seasons and the adaptation to unmanned operation at stores, etc (ATM corner of bank).



Notes (1) Temperature range of switching cooling/heating mode can be changed by RC-EX3A from ±1.0 – ±4.0.

(2) Room temperature control during auto cooling/auto heating is performed according to the setting room temperature. (DIFF: ±1 deg)

(3) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature rises to 59°C or higher during heating operation, it is switched automatically to cooling operation. In addition, for 1 hour after this switching, the heating operation is not performed, regardless of the temperature shown at right.



(b) The following automatic controls are performed other than (a) above.

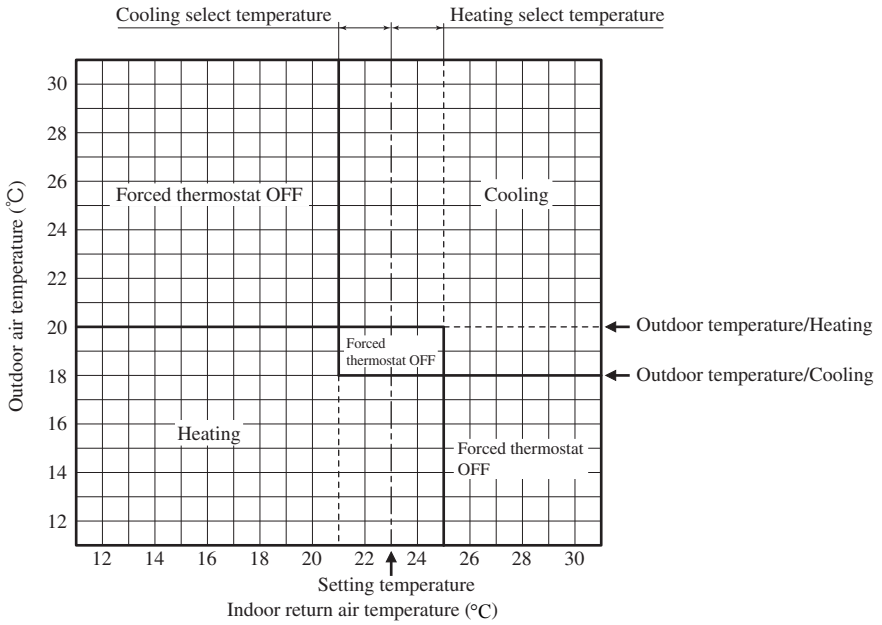
(i) Cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the conditions of the "Judgment based on Setting temperature + Cooling select temperature and Indoor return air temperature" and the "Judgment based on Outdoor temperature".

1) In "Setting temperature - Cooling select temperature < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor return air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling

2) "Setting temperature + Heating select temperature > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/ Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating

3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.

4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



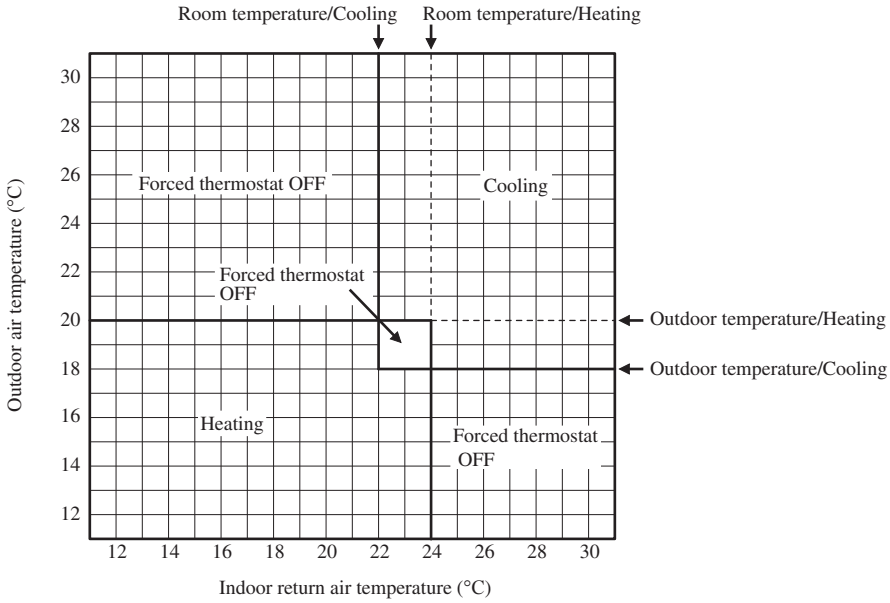
(ii) Regardless of the setting temperature, the cooling or heating operation mode is judged according to the "Judgment based on Room temperature/Cooling or Heating and Outdoor temperature/Cooling or Heating".

1) In case of "Room temperature/Cooling < Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature/Cooling < Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Cooling

2) In case of "Room temperature/Heating > Indoor return air temperature" and "Outdoor temperature /Heating > Outdoor air temperature" ⇒ Operation mode: Heating

3) The outdoor air temperature of the above judgment conditions is sampled at every 10 minutes.

4) In the range where the above cooling and heating zones are overlapped ⇒ Forced thermostat OFF



(2) Operations of functional items during cooling/heating

Operation / Functional item	Cooling		Fan	Heating			Dehumidifying
	Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF		Thermostat ON	Thermostat OFF	Hot start (Defrost)	
Compressor	○	×	×	○	×	○	○/×
4-way valve	×	×	×	○	○	○(×)	×
Outdoor unit fan	○	×	×	○	×	○(×)	○/×
Indoor unit fan	○	○	○	○/×	○/×	○/×	○/×
Drain pump (3)	○	×(2)	×(2)	○/×(2)			Thermostat ON: ○ Thermostat OFF: ×(2)

Notes (1) ○: Operation ×: Stop ○/×: Turned ON/OFF by the control other than the room temperature control.
(2) ON during the drain pump motor delay control.
(3) Drain pump ON setting may be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

(3) Dehumidifying (DRY) operation

(a) FDT, FDTC series

Indoor ambient temperatures and humidity are controlled simultaneously with the relative humidity sensor (HS) and the suction temperature sensor [Thi-A (or the remote control temperature sensor when it is activated)], which are installed at the suction inlet.

(i) When the operation has been started with cooling, if there is a difference of 2°C or less between the suction and setting temperatures, the indoor fan speed is lowered by one. This speed is retained for 3 minutes after changing the speed.

(ii) After the above condition, when a difference between suction and setting temperature is lower than 3°C, and the relative humidity is high, the indoor fan speed is lowered by one.
When the difference between suction and setting temperature is larger than 3°C, the indoor fan speed is raised by one. This speed is retained for 3 minutes after changing the speed.

(iii) When relative humidity becomes lower, the indoor fan speed is retained.

(iv) In case of the thermostat OFF, the indoor fan speed at the thermostat ON is retained.

(b) FDU, FDUM, FDE series

Return air temperature sensor [Thi-A (by the remote control when the remote control temperature sensor is enabled)] controls the indoor temperature environment simultaneously.

(i) Operation is started in the cooling mode. When the difference between the return air temperature and the setting temperature is 2°C or less, the indoor fan speed is brought down by one. That speed is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor fan speed.

(ii) If the return air temperature exceeds the setting temperature by 3°C during dehumidifying operation, the indoor fan speed is raised by one. That speed is retained for 3 minutes after changing the indoor fan speed.

(iii) If the thermostat OFF is established during the above control, the indoor fan speed at the thermostat ON is retained so far as the thermostat is turned OFF.

(4) Timer operation

(a) RC-EX3A

(i) Sleep timer

Set the time from the start to stop of operation. The time can be selected in the range from 30 to 240 minutes (in the unit of 10-minute).

Note (1) Enable the "Sleep timer" setting from the remote control. If the setting is enabled, the timer operates at every time.

(ii) Set OFF timer by hour

Set the time to stop the unit after operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour).

(iii) Set ON timer by hour

Set the time to start the unit after the stop of operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour). It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

(iv) Set ON timer by clock

Set the time to start operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be switched only once or daily. It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(v) Set OFF timer by clock

Set the time to stop operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be switched only once or daily.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(vi) Weekly timer

Set the ON or OFF timer for a week. Up to 8 patterns can be set for a day. The day-off setting is provided for holidays and non-business days.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use the weekly timer.

(vii) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

	Sleep timer	Set OFF timer by hour	Set ON timer by hour	Set OFF timer by clock	Set ON timer by clock	Weekly timer
Sleep timer		×	×	○	○	○
Set OFF timer by hour	×		×	×	×	×
Set ON timer by hour	×	×		×	×	×
Set OFF timer by clock	○	×	×		○	×
Set ON timer by clock	○	×	×	○		×
Weekly timer	○	×	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(b) RC-E5

(i) Sleep timer

Set the duration of time from the present to the time to turn off the air-conditioner.

It can be selected from 10 steps in the range from "OFF 1 hour later" to "OFF 10 hours later". After the Sleep timer setting, the remaining time is displayed with progress of time in the unit of hour.

(ii) OFF timer

Time to turn OFF the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes.

(iii) ON timer

Time to turn ON the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes. Indoor temperature can be set simultaneously.

(iv) Weekly timer

Timer operation (ON timer, OFF timer) can be set up to 4 times a day for each weekday.

(v) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

Item \ Item	Sleep timer	OFF timer	ON timer	Weekly timer
Sleep timer		×	○	×
OFF timer	×		○	×
ON timer	○	○		×
Weekly timer	×	×	×	

Notes (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(2) Since the ON timer, Sleep timer and OFF timer are set in parallel, when the times to turn ON and OFF the air-conditioner are duplicated, the setting of the OFF timer has priority.

(5) Hot start (Cold draft prevention at heating)

(a) Operating conditions

When either one of following conditions is satisfied, the hot start control is performed.

(i) From stop to heating operation

(ii) From cooling to heating operation

(iii) Form heating thermostat OFF to ON

(iv) After completing the defrost operation (only on units with thermostat ON)

(b) Contents of operation

(i) Indoor fan motor control at hot start

1) Within 7 minutes after starting heating operation, the fan mode is determined depending on the condition of thermostat (fan control with heating thermostat OFF).

a) Thermostat OFF

i) Operates according to the fan control setting at heating thermostat OFF.

ii) Even if it changes from thermostat OFF to ON, the fan continues to operate with the fan control at thermostat OFF till the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.

iii) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set air flow volume.

b) Thermostat ON

i) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or lower, the fan is turned OFF and does not operate.

ii) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 25°C or higher, the fan operates with the fan control at heating thermostat OFF.

iii) When the heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher, the fan operates with the set air flow volume.

c) If the fan control at heating thermostat OFF is set at the "Set air flow volume" (from the remote control), the fan operates with the set air flow volume regardless of the thermostat ON/OFF.

2) Once the fan motor is changed from OFF to ON during the thermostat ON, the indoor fan motor is not turned OFF even if the heat exchanger temperature sensor detects lower than 25°C.

Note (1) When the defrost control signal is received, it complies with the fan control during defrost operation.

3) Once the hot start is completed, it will not restart even if the temperature on the heat exchanger temperature sensor drops.

(ii) During the hot start, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(iii) When the fan motor is turned OFF for 7 minutes continuously after defrost operation, the fan motor is turned ON regardless of the temperatures detected with the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensors (Thi-R1, R2).

(c) Ending condition

(i) If one of following conditions is satisfied during the hot start control, this control is terminated, and the fan is operated with the set air flow volume.

1) Heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1 or R2, whichever higher) detects 35°C or higher.

2) It has elapsed 7 minutes after starting the hot start control.

(6) Hot keep

Hot keep control is performed at the start of the defrost operation.

(a) Contents of operation

(i) When the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R1 or R2) drops to less than 35°C, the speed of indoor fan follows fan setting at the time of thermostat OFF.

(ii) During the hot keep, the louver is kept at the horizontal position.

(7) Auto swing control (FDT, FDTC, FDE only)

Note Even if [Auto Swing] is selected, the louver position with anti draft function is fixed to position 1.

(a) RC-EX3A

(i) Louver control

1) To operate the swing louver when the air-conditioner is operating, press the "Direction" button on the TOP screen of remote control. The wind direction select screen will be displayed.

2) To swing the louver, touch the "Auto swing" button. The lover will move up and down. To fix the swing louver at a position, touch one of [1] - [4] buttons. The swing lover will stop at the selected position.

3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
This allows the microcomputer recognizing and inputting the louver motor (LM) position.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating

At the hot start and the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (in order to prevent blowing of cool wind). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver free stop control

If you touch the "Menu" → "Service setting" → "R/C settings" → "Service password" buttons one after another on the TOP screen of remote control, the "Flap control" screen is displayed. If the free stop is selected on this screen, the louver motor stops upon receipt of the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position before the stop.

(b) RC-E5

(i) Louver control

1) Press the "LOUVER" button to operate the swing louver when the air-conditioner is operating.
"SWING" is displayed for 3 seconds and then the swing louver moves up and down continuously.

2) To fix the swing louver at a position, press one time the "LOUVER" button while the swing louver is moving so that four stop positions are displayed one after another per second.
When a desired stop position is displayed, press the "LOUVER" button again. The display stops, changes to show the "STOP 1" for 5 seconds and then the swing louver stops.

3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
This allows inputting the louver motor (LM) position, which is necessary for the microcomputer to recognize the louver position.

Note (1) If you press the "LOUVER" button, the swing motion is displayed on the louver position LCD for 10 seconds. The display changes to the "SWING" display 3 seconds later.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating

At the hot start with the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (In order to prevent the cold start). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver-free stop control

When the louver-free stop has been selected with the indoor function of wired remote control "POSITION", the louver motor stops when it receives the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position where it was before the stop.

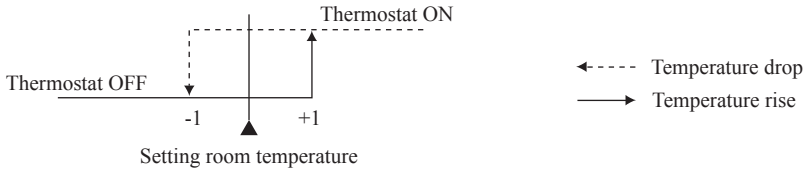
Note (1) When the indoor function of wired remote control "POSITION" has been switched, switch also the remote control function "POSITION" in the same way.

(8) Thermostat operation

(a) Cooling

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the setting room temperature as shown below.

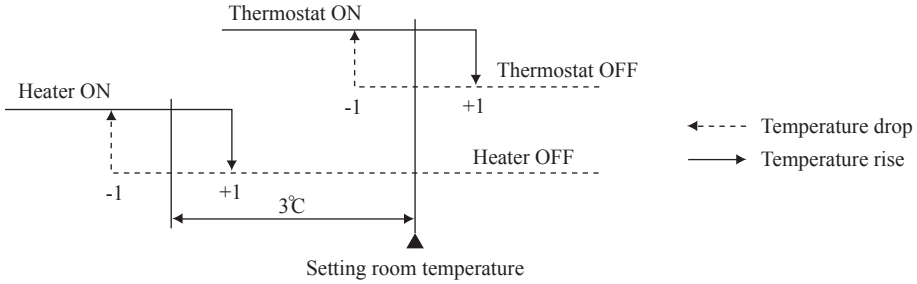


(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Setting room temperature < +1 at the start of cooling operation (including from heating to cooling).

(b) Heating

(i) Thermostat is operated with the room temperature control.

(ii) Thermostat is turned ON or OFF relative to the setting room temperature as shown below.



(iii) Thermostat is turned ON when the room temperature is in the range of -1 < Setting room temperature < +1 at the start of heating operation (including from cooling to heating).

(c) Fan control during heating thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the heating thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed (Factory default) ② Set fan speed ③ Intermittence ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed (Factory default)" is selected, the following speed is used for the indoor fans.

・For DC motor : ULo

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the heating operation, the indoor unit moves to the hot control and turns OFF the indoor fan if the heat exchanger temperature sensors (both Thi-R1 and R2) detect 25°C or lower.
2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.
3) After operating at ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.
4) If the thermostat is turned ON, it moves to the hot start control.
5) When the heating thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from ULo to stop.
   The remote control uses the operation data display function to display temperatures and updates values of temperature even when the indoor fan is turned OFF.
6) When the defrost operation starts while the heating thermostat is turned OFF or the thermostat is turned OFF during defrost operation, the indoor fan is turned OFF. (Hot keep or hot start control takes priority.) However, the suction temperature is updated at every 7-minute.
7) When the heating thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(d) Fan control during cooling thermostat OFF

(i) Following fan controls during the cooling thermostat OFF can be selected with the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

① Low fan speed ② Set fan speed (Factory default) ③ Intermittence ④ Fan OFF

(ii) When the "Low fan speed" is selected, the following speed is used for the indoor fans.

・For DC motor : ULo

(iii) When the "Set fan speed" is selected, it is operated with the set fan speed also in the thermostat OFF condition.

(iv) If the "Intermittence" is selected, following controls are performed:

1) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the cooling operation, the indoor fan motor stops.

2) Indoor fan OFF is fixed for 5 minutes. After the 5 minutes, the indoor fan is operated at ULo for 2 minutes. In the meantime the louver is controlled at level.

3) After operating at ULo for 2 minutes, the indoor fan moves to the state of 1) above.

4) If the thermostat is turned ON, the fan starts operation at set fan speed.

5) When the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, the remote control displays the temperature detected at the fan stop and revises the temperature later when the indoor fan changes from ULo to stop.

By using operation data display function at wireless remote control, the tempenature as displayad and the value is updated including the fan stops.

6) When the cooling thermostat is turned ON or the operation is changed to another mode (including stop), this control is stopped immediately, and the operating condition is restored.

(v) When the "Fan OFF" is selected, the fan on the indoor unit of which the thermostat has been turned OFF, is turned OFF. The same occurs also when the remote control sensor is effective.

(9) Filter sign

As the operation time (Total ON time of ON/OFF switch) accumulates to 180 hours (1), "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed on the remote control. (This is displayed when the unit is in trouble and under the central control, regardless of ON/OFF.)

Notes (1) Time setting for the filter sign can be made as shown below using the indoor function of wired remote control "Filter sign". (It is set at setting 1 at the shipping from factory.)

Filter sign setting	Function
Setting **1**	Setting time: 180 hrs (Factory default)
Setting **2**	Setting time: 600 hrs
Setting **3**	Setting time: 1,000 hrs
Setting **4**	Setting time: 1,000 hrs (Unit stop) (2)

(2) After the setting time has elapsed, the "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed and, after operating for 24 hours further (counted also during the stop), the unit stops.

(10) Compressor inching prevention control

(a) 3-minute timer

When the compressor has been stopped by the thermostat, remote control operation switch or anomalous condition, its restart will be inhibited for 3 minutes. However, the 3-minute timer is invalidated at the power on the electric power source for the unit.

(b) 3-minute forced operation timer

(i) Compressor will not stop for 3 minutes after the compressor ON. However, it stops immediately when the unit is stopped by means of the ON/OFF switch or when the thermostat is turned OFF by the change of operation mode.

(ii) If the thermostat is turned OFF during the forced operation control of heating compressor, the louver position (with the auto swing) is returned to the level position.

Note (1) The compressor stops when it has entered the protective control.

(11) Drain pump control

(a) This control is operated when the inverter frequency is other than 0 Hz during the cooling operation and automatic cooling and dehumidifying operations.

(b) Drain pump ON condition continues for 5 minutes even when it enters the OFF range according to (a) above after turning the drain pump ON, and then stops. The 5-minute delay continues also in the event of anomalous stop.

(c) The drain pump is operated with the 5-minute delay operation when the compressor is changed from ON to OFF.

(d) Even in conditions other than the above (such as heating, fan, stop, cooling thermostat OFF), the drain pump control is performed by the drain detection.

(e) Following settings can be made using the indoor function setting of the wired remote control.

(i) ❄〔Standard (in cooling)〕: Drain pump is run during cooling.

(ii) ❄AND☼〔Operate in standard & heating〕: Drain pump is run during cooling and heating.

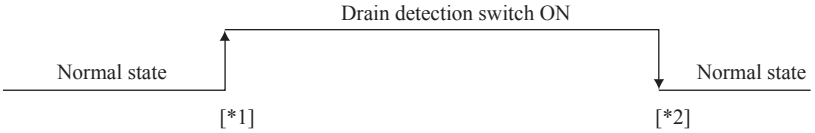
(iii) ❄AND☼AND〓〔Operate in heating & fan〕: Drain pump is run during cooling, heating and fan.

(iv) ❄AND〓〔Operate in standard & fan〕: Drain pump is run during cooling and fan.

Note (1) Values in〔 〕are for the RC-EX3A model.

(12) Drain pump motor (DM) control

(a) Drain detection switch is turned ON or OFF with the float switch (FS) and the timer.



[＊1] Drain detection switch is turned “ON” when the float switch “Open” is detected for 3 seconds continuously in the drain detectable space.

[＊2] Drain detection switch is turned “OFF” when the float switch “Close” is detected for 10 seconds continuously.

(i) It detects always from 30 seconds after turning the power ON.

1) There is no detection of anomalous draining for 10 seconds after turning the drain pump OFF.

2) Turning the drain detection switch “ON” causes to turn ON the drain pump forcibly.

3) Turning the drain detection switch “OFF” releases the forced drain pump ON condition.

(b) Indoor unit performs the control A or B depending on each operating condition.

	Indoor unit operation mode				
	Stop (1)	Cooling	Dry	Fan (2)	Heating
Compressor ON		Control A			
Compressor OFF	Control B				

Notes (1) Including the stop from the cooling, dehumidifying, fan and heating, and the anomalous stop
(2) Including the “Fan” operation according to the mismatch of operation modes

(i) Control A

1) If the float switch detects any anomalous draining condition, the unit stops with the anomalous stop (displays E9) and the drain pump starts. After detecting the anomalous condition, the drain pump motor continues to be ON.

2) It keeps operating while the float switch is detecting the anomalous condition.

(ii) Control B

If the float switch detects any anomalous drain condition, the drain pump motor is turned ON for 5 minutes, and at 10 seconds after the drain pump motor OFF it checks the float switch. If it is normal, the unit is stopped under the normal mode or, if there is any anomalous condition, E9 is displayed and the drain pump motor is turned ON. (The ON condition is maintained during the drain detection.)

(13) Operation check/drain pump test run operation mode

(a) If the power is turned on by the DIP switch (SW7-1) on the indoor unit control PCB when electric power source is supplied, it enters the mode of operation check/drain pump test run. It is ineffective (prohibited) to change the switch after turning power on.

(b) When the communication with the remote control has been established within 60 seconds after turning power on by the DIP switch (SW7-1) ON, it enters the operation check mode. Unless the remote control communication is established, it enters the drain pump test run mode.

Note (1) To select the drain pump test run mode, disconnect the remote control connector (CnB) on the indoor unit PCB to shut down the remote control communication.

(c) Operation check mode

There is no communication with the outdoor unit but it allows performing operation in respective modes by operating the remote control.

(d) Drain pump test run mode

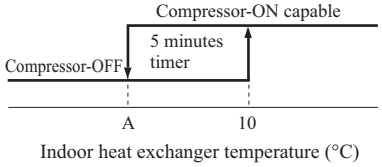
As the drain pump test run is established, the drain pump only operates and during the operation protective functions by the microcomputer of indoor unit become ineffective.

(14) Cooling, dehumidifying frost protection

(a) To prevent frosting during cooling mode or dehumidifying mode operation, the compressor-OFF if the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) drops to 1.0 °C or lower at 4 minutes after the compressor-ON. If the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature is 1.0 °C or lower after 5 minutes, the indoor unit is controlled compressor-OFF. If it becomes 10°C or higher, the control terminates.

• Frost prevention temperature setting can be selected with the indoor unit function setting of the wired remote control.

Item \ Symbol	A
Temperature - Low (Factory default)	1.0
Temperature - High	2.5



• Compressor forced off temperature (FDT&FDTC only)

Hs > 50%

Symbol \ Item	Low	High
A	1.0	2.5

Hs ≦ 50%

Symbol \ Item	Low	High
A	-0.5	1.0

(b) Selection of indoor fan speed

If it enters the frost prevention control during cooling operation (including dehumidifying), the indoor fan speed is switched.

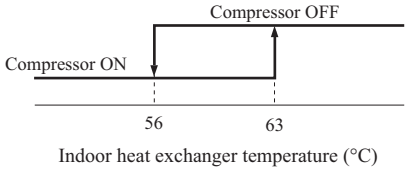
(i) When the indoor return air temperature (Thi-A) is 18°C or higher and the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) detects the compressor frequency drop start temperature A°C+1°C, indoor fan speed is increased by 20min^{-1}.

(ii) If the phenomenon of (i) above is detected again after the acceleration of indoor fan, indoor fan speed is increased further by 20min^{-1}.

Note (1) Indoor fan speed can be increased by up to P-Hi.

(15) Heating overload protection

(a) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted after a 3-minute delay, if a temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 2 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection and if this is detected 5 times consecutively, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop (E8). Anomalous stop occurs also when the indoor heat exchanger temperature at 63°C or higher is detected for 6 minutes continuously.



(b) Indoor fan speed selection

If, after second detection of heating overload protection up to fourth, the indoor fan is set at below Hi when the compressor is turned ON, the indoor fan speed is increased by 1.

(16) Anomalous fan motor

(a) After starting the fan motor, if the fan motor speed is 200 min^{-1} or less is detected for 30 seconds continuously and 4 times within 60 minutes, then fan motor stops with the anomalous stop (E16).

(b) If the fan motor fails to reach at -50 min^{-1}(FDU:-500 min^{-1}) less than the required speed, it stops with the anomalous stop (E20).

(17) Plural unit control – Control of 16 units group by one remote control

(a) Function

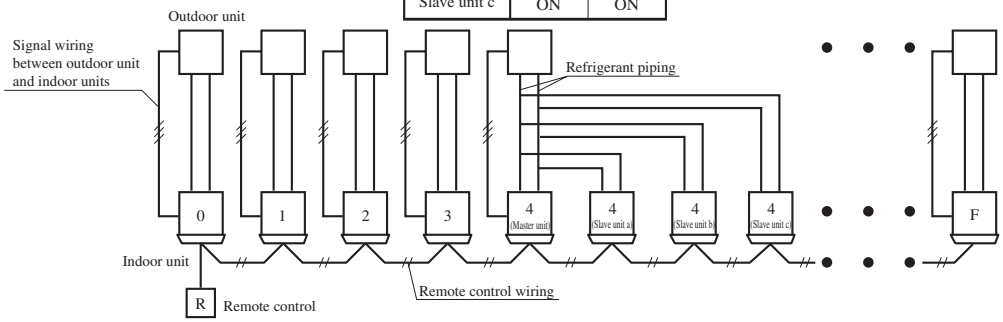
One remote control can control a group of multiple number of unit (Max. 16 indoor units). "Operation mode" which is set by the remote control can operate or stop all units in the group one after another in the order of unit. No.(1). Thermostat and protective function of each unit function independently.

Note (1) Unit No. is set by SW2 on the indoor unit control PCB. Unit No. setting by SW2 is necessary for the indoor unit only. In cases of the twin, triple and double twin specification, it is necessary set for the master and the slave units. This can be selected by SW5. (All are set for the master unit at the shipping from factory.)

SW2: For setting of 0 – 9, A – F
SW5: For setting of master and slave units
(See table shown at right.)

SW5 setting

Unit \ Switch	SW5-1	SW5-2
Master unit	OFF	OFF
Slave unit a	OFF	ON
Slave unit b	ON	OFF
Slave unit c	ON	ON



(2) Unit No. may be set at random unless duplicated, it should be better to set orderly like 0, 1, 2…, F to avoid mistake.

(b) Display to the remote control

(i) Central or each remote control basis, heating preparation

The smallest unit No. among the operating units in the remote mode (or the center mode unless the remote mode is available) is displayed.

(ii) Inspection display, filter sign

Any of unit that starts initially is displayed.

(c) Confirmation of connected units

(i) In case of RC-EX3A remote control

If you touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "IU address" on the TOP screen of remote control, the indoor units which are connected are displayed.

(ii) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Pressing "AIR CON No." button on the remote control displays the indoor unit address. If "▲" "▼" button is pressed at the next, it is displayed orderly starting from the unit of smallest No..

(d) In case of anomaly

If any anomaly occurs on a unit in a group (a protective function operates), that unit stops with the anomalous stop but any other normal units continue to run as they are.

(e) Signal wiring procedure

Signal wiring between indoor and outdoor units should be made on each unit same as the normal wiring. For the group control, connect the remote control wiring to each indoor unit via terminal block for the remote control.

Connect the remote control wiring separately from the power source cable or wires of other electric devices (AC220V or higher).

(18) Fan speed setting control

When sufficient air flow rate cannot be obtained from the indoor unit which is installed at a room with high ceiling, the air flow rate can be increased by changing the fan speed. To change the fan speed, use the indoor unit function "Fan speed setting" on the wired remote control.

Fan speed		Indoor unit air flow rate setting				Series (Wired remote control)
		▮▮▮ - ▮▮ - ▮ - ▯	▮▮▮ - ▮▮ - ▮	▮▮▮ - ▮	▮▮▮ - ▮▮	
Fan speed setting	Standard	P-Hi1 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	Except FDT, FDE (RC-EX3A)
		P-Hi2 - Hi - Me - ULo	Hi - Me - ULo	Hi - ULo	Hi - Me	Only FDT (RC-EX3A)
		P-Hi2 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	Only FDE (RC-EX3A)
		UH - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	All series (RC-E5)
	Setting1	P-Hi1 - P-Hi1 - Hi - Me	P-Hi1 - Hi - Me	P-Hi1 - Me	P-Hi1 - Hi	Except FDT, FDE (RC-EX3A)
		P-Hi2 - P-Hi1 - Hi - Me	P-Hi1 - Hi - Me	P-Hi1 - Me	P-Hi1 - Hi	Only FDT, FDTC (RC-EX3A)
		P-Hi1 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	Only FDE (RC-EX3A)
	Setting2	P-Hi2 - Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Me - Lo	Hi - Lo	Hi - Me	Only FDT, FDE, FDTC (RC-EX3A)
	HIGH SPEED1, 2	UH - UH - Hi - Me	UH - Hi - Me	UH - Me	UH - Hi	All series (RC-E5)

Notes (1) Factory default is Standard.
(2) At the hot-start and heating thermostat OFF, or other, the indoor fan is operated at the low speed of each setting.
(3) This function is not able to be set with wireless remote control or simple remote control (RCH-E3).

(19) Abnormal temperature sensor (return air/indoor heat exchanger) broken wire/short-circuit detection

(a) Broken wire detection

When the return air temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower or the heat exchanger temperature sensor detect -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts but, if it is detected again within 60 minutes after the initial detection for 6 minutes continuously, stops again (the return air temperature sensor: E7, the heat exchanger temperature sensor: E6).

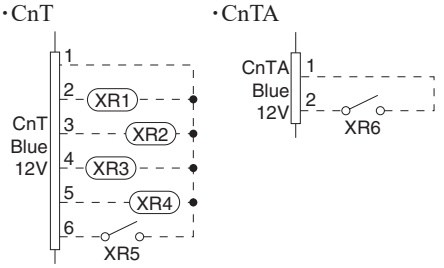
(b) Short-circuit detection

If the heat exchanger temperature sensor detects short-circuit for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON during cooling operation, the compressor stops (E6).

(20) External input/output control (CnT or CnTA)

External input/output connectors are provided on the indoor unit control PCB, and each input/output is possible to be changed by RC-EX3A.

Be sure to connect the wired remote control to the indoor unit. Remote operation with CnT/CnTA only is not possible.



Input/Output	Connector	Factory default setting	RC-EX3A function name
Output	CnT-2 (XR1)	Operation output	External output 1
	CnT-3 (XR2)	Heating output	External output 2
	CnT-4 (XR3)	Compressor ON output	External output 3
	CnT-5 (XR4)	Inspection(Error) output	External output 4
"Input	CnT-6 (XR5)	Remote operation input	External input 1
(Volt-free contact)"	CnTA (XR6)	Remote operation input	External input 2

■ Priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA input.

		CnTA					
		① Operation stop level	② Operation stop pulse	③ Operation permission/prohibition	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse
CnT	① Operation stop level	CnT ①	CnT ①	CnT ① +CnTA ②	CnT ①	CnT ① /CnTA ⑤	CnT ① /CnTA ⑥
	② Operation stop pulse	CnT ②	CnT ②	CnT ② +CnTA ③	CnT ②	CnT ② /CnTA ⑤	CnT ② /CnTA ⑥
	③ Operation permission/prohibition level	CnT ③ >CnTA ①	CnT ③ >CnTA ②	CnT ③ +CnTA ③	CnT ③	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ③ /CnTA ⑥
	④ Operation permission/prohibition pulse	CnT ④	CnT ④	CnT ④ +CnTA ③※	CnT ④	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑤	CnT ④ /CnTA ⑥
	⑤ Cooling/heating selection level	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ③	CnT ⑤ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑤	CnT ⑤
	⑥ Cooling/heating selection pulse	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ①	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ②	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ③	CnT ⑥ /CnTA ④	CnT ⑥	CnT ⑥

Note (1) Following operation commands are accepted when the operation prohibition is set with CnTA as indicated with *.

Individual operation command from remote control, test run command from outdoor unit and operation command from option device, CnT input.

Reference: Explanation on the codes and the combinations of codes in the table above

1. In case of CnT "Number", the CnT "Number" is adopted and CnTA is invalidated.
2. In case of CnTA "Number", the CnTA "Number" is adopted and CnT is invalidated.
3. In case of CnT "Number"/CnTA "Number", the CnT "Number" and the CnTA "Number" become independent functions each other.
4. In case of CnT "Number" + CnTA "Number", the CnT "Number" and the CnTA "Number" become competing functions each other.
5. In case of CnT "Number" > CnTA "Number", the function of CnT "Number" supersedes that of CnTA "Number".
6. In case of CnT "Number" < CnTA "Number", the function of CnTA "Number" supersedes that of CnT "Number".

(The "Number" above means ① - ⑥ in the table.)

(a) Output for external control (remote display)

Indoor unit outputs the following signal for operation status monitoring.

	Output name	Condition
1	Operation output	During operation
2	Heating output	During heating operation
3	Compressor ON output	During compressor operation
4	Inspection(Error) output	When anomalous condition occurs.
5	Cooling output	During cooling operation
6	Fan operation output 1	When indoor unit's fan is operating
7	Fan operation output 2	When indoor unit's fan is operating, and fan speed is higher than Hi speed.
8	Fan operation output 3	When indoor unit's fan is operating, and fan speed is Lower than Me speed.
9	Defrost/oil return output	When indoor unit receive defrost/oil return signal from the outdoor unit.
10	Ventilation output	When "Venti.ON" is selected from remote control
11	Free cooling output	When the ambient temperature is between 10 - 18°C in cooling and fan operation
12	Indoor unit overload alrm output	Refer to "IU overload alarm"
13	Heater output	Refer to "(8) Thermostat operation (b) Heating"

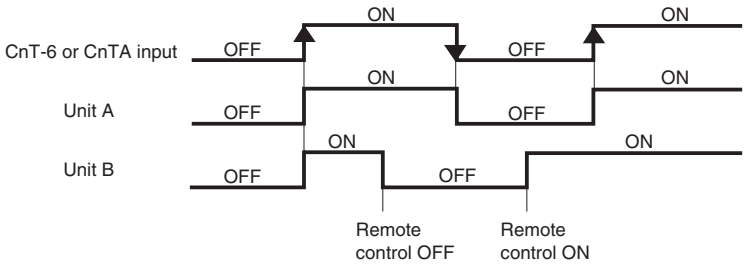
(b) Input for external control

The external input for the indoor unit can be selected from the following input.

	Input name	Content
1	Run/Stop	Refer to [(20) (c) Remote operation input]
2	Premission/Prohibition	Refer to [(21) Operation permission/prohibition]
3	Cooling/Heating	Refer to [(23) Selection of cooling/heating external input function]
4	Emergency stop	Indoor/outdoor units stop the operation, and [E63] is displayed.
5	Setting temperature shift	Set temperature is shifted by +2/-2°C in cooling/heating.
6	Forced thermo-OFF	Unit goes thermo off.
7	Temporary stop	Refer to [(22) Temporary stop input]
8	Silent mode	Outdoor unit silent mode is activated.

(i) In case of "Level input" setting (Factory default)

Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF→ON …… unit ON
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is ON→OFF …… unit OFF
Operation is not inverted.

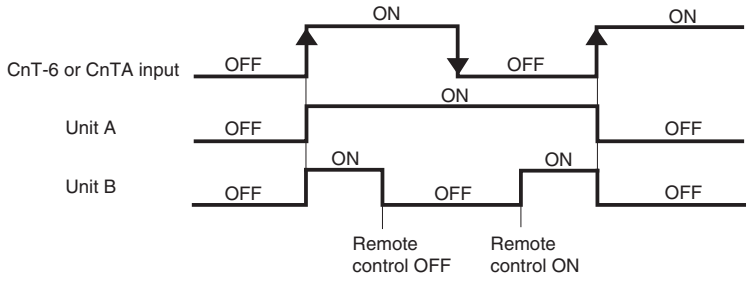


Note (1) The latest operation has priority

It is available to operate/stop by remote control or central control.

(ii) In case of "Pulse input" setting (Local setting)

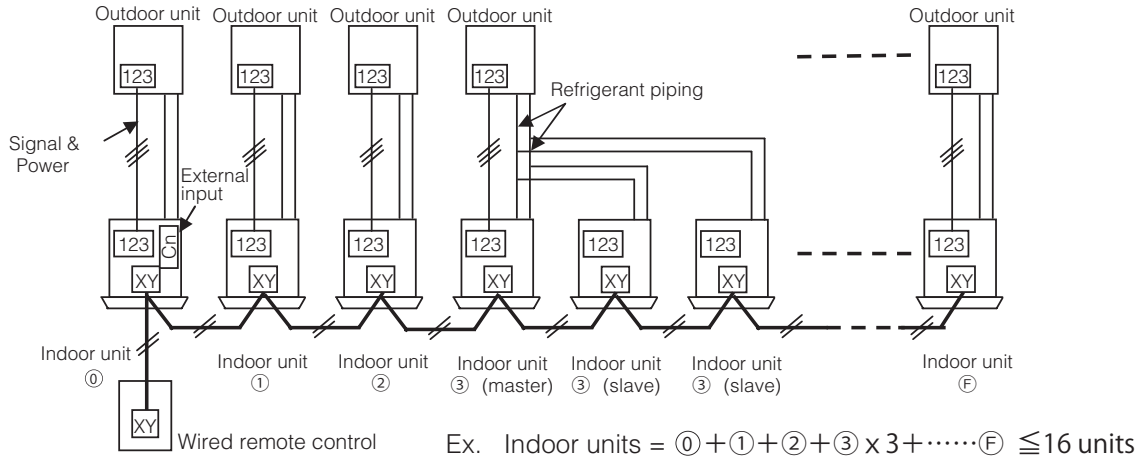
It is effective only when the input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is changed OFF→ON, and at that time unit operation [ON/OFF] is inverted.



(c) Remote operation input

(i) In case of multiple units (Max. 16 indoor units group) are connected to one wired remote control

When the R/C function setting of wired remote control for "External control set" is changed from "Individual (Factory default)" to " For all units", all units connected in one wired remote control system can be controlled by external operation input.



	Individual operation (Factory default)		All units operation (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be operated.	Only the unit directly connected to the remote control can be stopped opeartion.	All units in one remote control system can be operated.	All units in one remote control system can be stopped operation.
	Unit ① only	Unit ① only	Units ① – Ⓕ	Units ① – Ⓕ

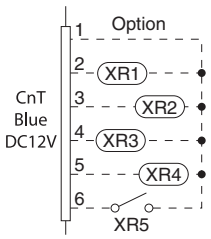
When more than one indoor unit (Max. 16 indoor units) are connected in one wired remote control system:
(1) With the factory default, external input to CnT-6 or CnTA is effective for only the unit ①.
(2) When setting "For all unit" (Local setting), all units in one remote control system can be controlled by external input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the indoor unit ①.
(3) External input to CnT-6 or CnTA on the other indoor unit than the unit ① is not effective.

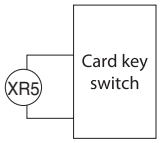
(21) Operation permission/prohibition

(In case of adopting card key switches or commercially available timers)

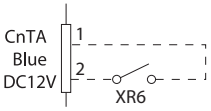
When the indoor function setting of wired remote control for "Operation permission/prohibition" is changed from "Invalid (Factory default)" to " Valid", following control becomes effective.

・CnT





・CnTA



Note (1) CnTA function can be changed by RC-EX3A.

	Normal operation (Factory default)		Operation permission/prohibition mode "Valid" (Local setting)	
CnT-6 or CnTA	ON	OFF	ON	OFF
	Operation	Stop	Operation permission*1	Operation prohibition (Unit stops)

*1 **Only the "LEVEL INPUT" is acceptable for external input**, however when the indoor function setting of "Level input (Factory default)" or "Pulse input" is selected by the function for "External input" of the wired remote control, operation status will be changed as follows.

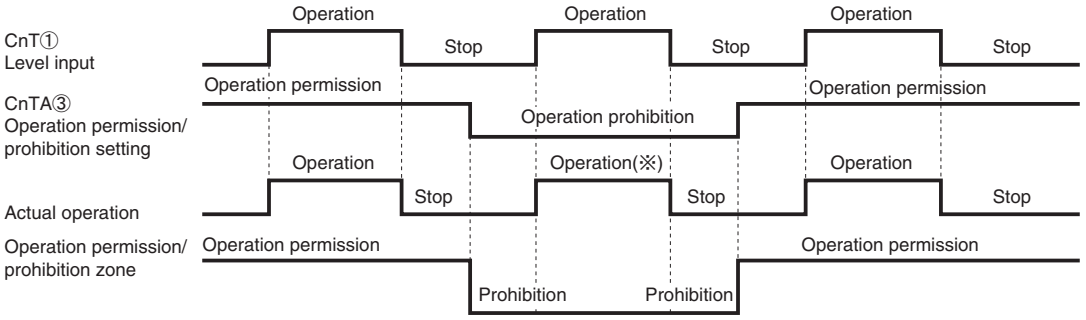
In case of "Level input" setting	In case of "Pulse input" setting
Unit operation from the wired remote control becomes available※1	Unit starts operation ※2

※1) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Level input (Factory default)";
① When card key switch is ON (CnT-6 or CnTA ON: Operation permission), start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.
② When card key switch is OFF (CnT-6 or CnTA OFF: Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes unavailable.

※2) In case that "Operation permission/prohibition mode" setting is "Valid" and "External input" setting is "Pulse input (Local setting)";
① When card key switch is ON (Operation permission), the unit starts operation in conjunction with ON signal, and also start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes available.
② When card key switch is OFF (Operation prohibition), the unit stops operation in conjunction with OFF signal, and start/stop operation of the unit from the wired remote control becomes unavailable.

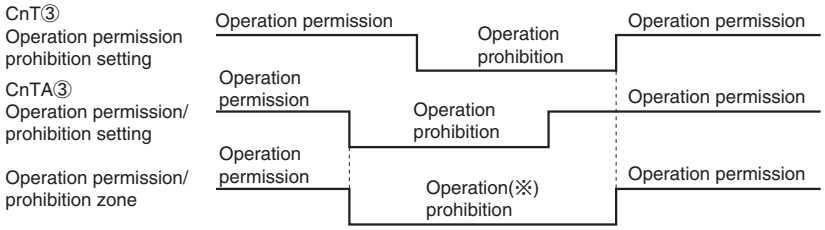
3) This function is invalid only at "Center mode" setting done by central control.

(a) In case of CnT ① Operation stop level > CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



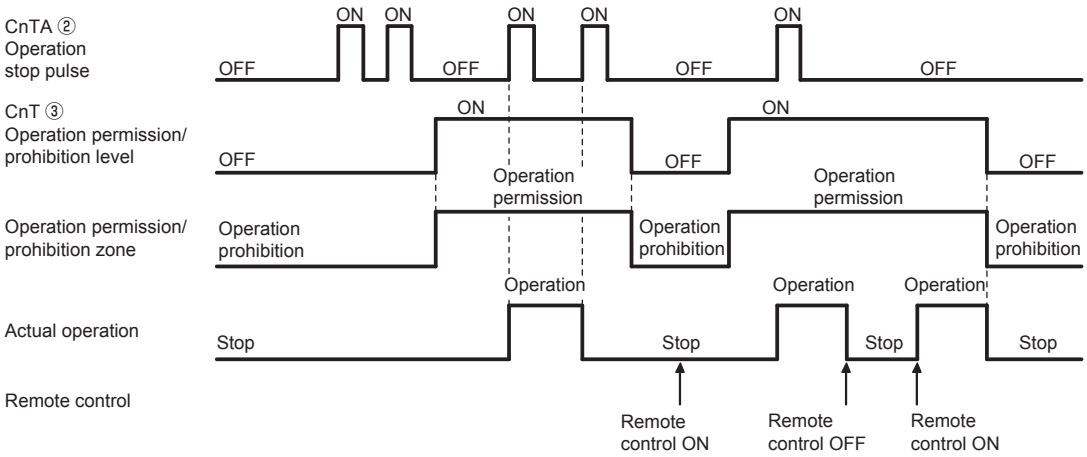
(※) CnT level input supersedes CnTA operation prohibition.

(b) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level



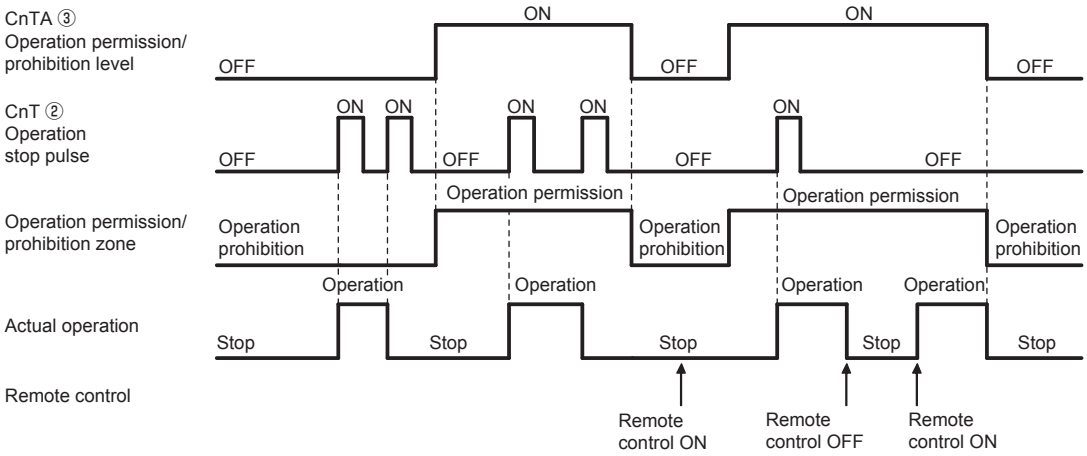
(※) Operation prohibition zone is determined by the OR judgment between CnT operation prohibition zone and CnTA operation prohibition zone.

(c) In case of CnT ③ Operation permission/prohibition level > CnTA ② Operation stop pulse



Note (1) If it is prohibited by CnT, all "Operation" and "Stop" commands are not accepted.

(d) In case of CnT ② Operation stop pulse + CnTA ③ Operation permission/prohibition level

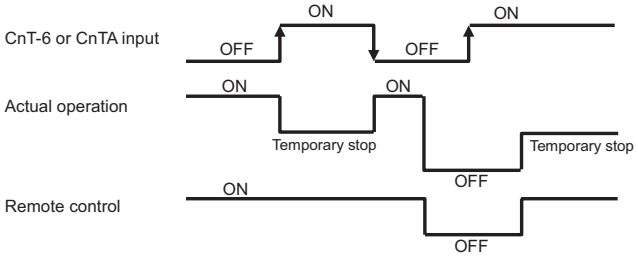


(22) Temporary stop input

In case of temporary stop, operation lamp of remote control lights, but indoor/outdoor unit stop the operation.

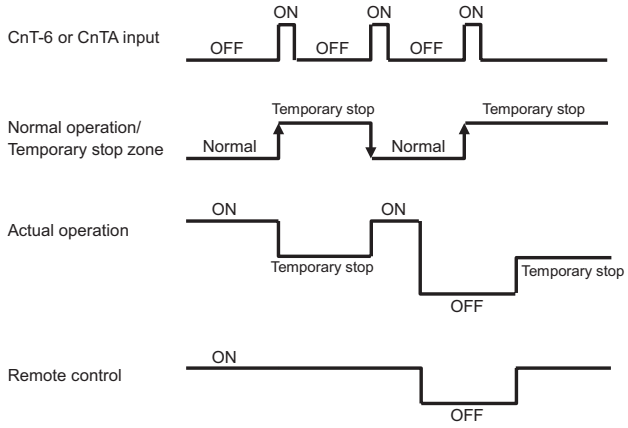
(a) In case of "level input" setting (Factory default)

Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF → ON : Temporary stop
Input signal to CnT-6 or CnTA is OFF → ON : Normal operation



(b) In case of "pulse input" setting (Local setting)

It is effective only when the input signal is changed OFF→ON, and "temporary stop/normal operation" is inverted.



(23) Selection of cooling/heating external input function

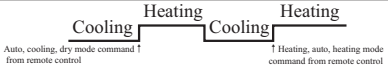
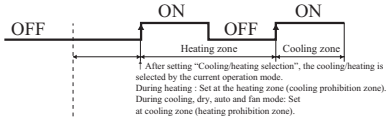
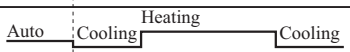
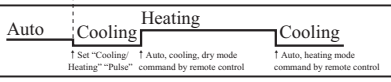
(a) When "External input 1 setting: Cooling/heating" is set by the indoor unit function from remote control, the cooling or heating is selected with CnT-6 or CnTA.

(b) When the external input 1 method selection: Level input is set by the indoor unit function:
- CnT-6 or CnTA: OPEN → Cooling operation mode
- CnT-6 or CnTA: CLOSE → Heating operation mode

(c) When the external input 1 method selection: Pulse input is set by the indoor unit function:
If the external input is changed OPEN → CLOSE, operation modes are inverted (Cooling → Heating or Heating → Cooling).

(d) If the cooling/heating selection signal is given by the external input, the operation mode is transmitted to the remote control.

■ Selection of cooling/heating external input function

External input selection	External input method	Operation	
External input selection Cooling/heating selection	⑤ Level	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	
	⑥ Pulse	External terminal input (CnT or CnTA)	
		Cooling/heating	
		Cooling/heating (Competitive)	

Note (1) Regarding the priority order for combinations of CnT and CnTA, refer to page 20.

(24) Fan control at heating startup

(a) Starting conditions

At the start of heating operation and after the end of hot start control, if the difference of setting temperature and return air temperature is 5°C or higher, this control is performed.

(b) Contents of control

(i) Sampling is made at each minute and, when the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) is 37°C or higher, present number of revolutions of indoor fan speed is increased by $10min^{-1}$.

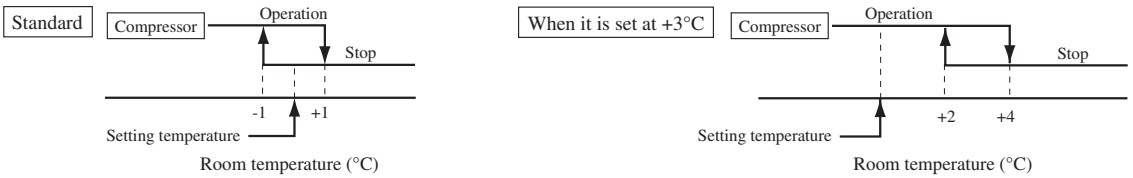
(ii) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature drops below 37°C at next sampling, present number of revolutions of indoor fan speed is reduced by $10min^{-1}$.

(c) Ending conditions

Indoor fan speed is reduced to the setting air flow rate when the compressor OFF is established and at 30 minutes after the start of heating operation.

(25) Room temperature detection temperature compensation during heating

With the standard specification, the compressor is turned ON/OFF with the thermostat setting temperature. When the thermostat is likely to turn OFF earlier because the unit is installed at the ceiling where warm air tends to accumulate, the setting can be changed with the wired remote control indoor unit function "SP OFFSET". The compressor and the heater are turned ON/OFF at one of the setting temperature +3, +2 or +1°C in order to improve the feeling of heating. The setting temperature, however, has the upper limit of 30°C.



(26) Return air temperature compensation

This is the function to compensate the deviation between the detection temperature by the return air temperature sensor and the measured temperature after installing the unit.

(a) It is adjustable in the unit of 0.5°C with the wired remote control indoor unit function "RETURN AIR TEMP".

• +1.0°C, +1.5°C, +2.0°C • -1.0°C, -1.5°C, -2.0°C

(b) Compensated temperature is transmitted to the remote control and the compressor to control them.

Note (1) The detection temperature compensation is effective on the indoor unit temperature sensor only.

(27) High power operation (RC-EX3A only)

It operates at with the set temperature fixed at 16°C for cooling, 30°C for heating and maximum indoor fan speed for 15 minutes maximum.

(28) Energy-saving operation (RC-EX3A only)

It operates with the setting temperature fixed at 28°C for cooling, 22°C for heating or 25°C for auto. When fan control in cooling/heating thermo-OFF setting is "Set fan speed", fan speed during thermo-OFF is changed to "Low". (Maximum capacity is restricted at 80%.)

(29) Warm-up control (RC-EX3A only)

Operation will be started 5 to 60 minutes before use according to the forecast made by the microcomputer which calculates when the operation should be started in order to warm up the indoor temperature near the setting temperature at the setting time of operation start.

(30) Home leave mode (RC-EX3A only)

When the unit is not used for a long period of time, the room temperature is maintained at a moderate level, avoiding extremely hot or cool temperature.

(a) Cooling or heating is operated according to the outdoor temperature (factory setting 35°C for cooling, 0°C for heating) and the setting temperature. (factory setting 33°C for cooling, 10°C for heating)

(b) Setting temperature and indoor fan speed can be set by RC-EX3A.

(31) Auto temperature setting (RC-EX3A only)

Setting temperature is adjusted automatically at the adequate temperature the center setting temperature is 24°C by correcting the outdoor air temperature.

(32) Fan circulator operation (RC-EX3A only)

When the fan is used for circulation, the unit is operated as follows depending on the setting with the remote control.

(a) If the invalid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated continuously during the fan operation. (normal fan mode)

(b) If the valid is selected with the remote control, the fan is operated or stopped when on the difference of the remote control temperature sensor and the return air temperature sensor becomes bigger than 3°C.

(33) The operation judgment is executed every 5 minutes (RC-EX3A only)

Setting temperature Ts is changed according to outdoor temperature.

This control is valid with cooling and heating mode. (Not auto mode)

(a) Operate 5 minutes forcedly.

(b) Setting temperature is adjusted every 10 minutes.

(i) Cooling mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(ii) Heating mode.
Ts = outdoor temperature − offset value

(c) If the return air temperature lower than 18°C in cooling or return air temperature becomes higher than 25°C in heating, unit goes thermostat OFF.

(34) Auto fan speed control (RC-EX3A only)

In order to reach the room temperature to the set temperature as quickly as possible, the air flow rate is increased when the set temperature of thermostat differs largely from the return air temperature. According to temperature difference between set temperature and return air temperature, indoor fan speed are controlled automalically.

・Auto 1: Changes the indoor fan speed within the range of Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

・Auto 2: Changes the indoor fan speed within the range of P-Hi ↔ Hi ↔ Me ↔ Lo.

(35) Indoor unit overload alarm (RC-EX3A only)

If the following condition is satisfied at 30 minutes after starting operation, RC-EX3A shows maintenance code "M07" and the signal is transmitted to the external output (CnT-2-5).

・Cooling, Dry, Auto(Cooling) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature by remote control + Alarm temperature difference

・Heating, Auto(Heating) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature by remote control - Alarm temperature difference

Alarm temperature difference is selectable between 5 to 10°C.

If the following condition is satisfied or unit is stopped, the signal is disappeared.

・Cooling, Dry, Auto(Cooling) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature + Alarm temperature difference -2°C

・Heating, Auto(Heating) : Indoor air temperature = Set room temperature - Alarm temperature difference +2°C

(36) Peak-cut timer (RC-EX3A only)

Power consumption can be reduced by restricting the maximum capacity.

Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %).

・4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum.

・The setting time can be changed by 5-minute interval.

・The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval).

・Holiday setting is available.

(37) Motion sensor control (RC-EX3A and RCN-E2 only)

The sensor determines the presence of people and the amount of activity, and the following controls are done by the motion sensor.

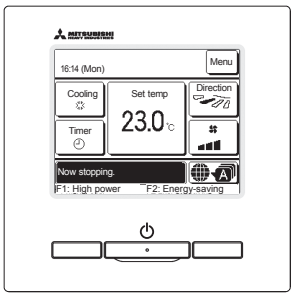
Following settings are necessary to activate motion sensor control.

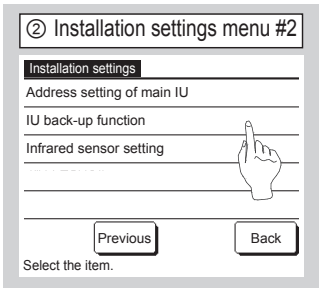
(a) Infrared (motion) sensor setting: Installation setting of remote control
The indoor unit which is set to "Enable" become valid.

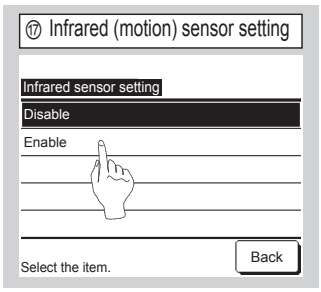
(b) Infrared (motion) sensor control: Energy-saving setting of remote control
The function which is set to "Enable" become valid.

RC-EX3A

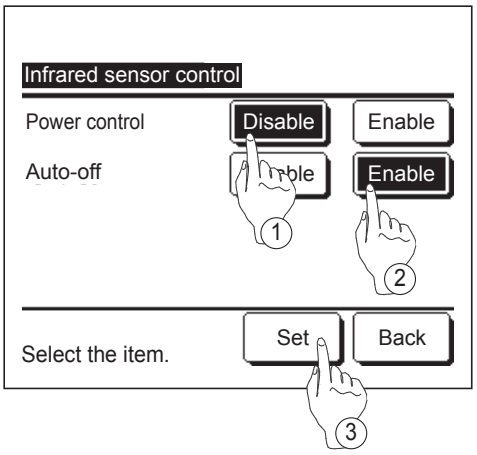
TOP screen **Menu** ⇨ **Service setting** ⇨ **Installation settings** ⇨ **Service password**







TOP screen **Menu** ⇨ **Energy-saving setting** ⇨ **Infrared sensor control** or **Motion sensor control**



The Infrared sensor control screen and contents of the current settings are displayed.

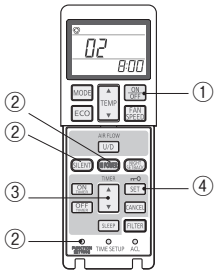
① Enable/disable power control.

② Enable/disable auto-off.

③ After you set each item, tap the **Set** button.
The display returns to the Energy-saving setting menu screen.

RCN-E2

1. Set indoor functions
① Press the ON/OFF button to stop the unit.
② Press the desired one of the buttons shown item **2.** while holding down the FUNCTION SETTING switch.
③ Use the selection buttons, ▲ and ▼, to change the setting.
④ Press the SET button.
The buzzer on the remote control signal receiver beeps twice, and the LED lamp flashes four times at two-second intervals.



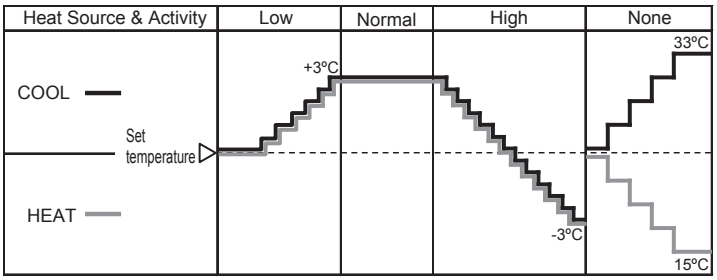
2. Setting details

Button	Number indicator	Function setting
SILENT	00	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor setting (Motion sensor setting) : Enable
HI POWER	00	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Disable
	01	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control only
	02	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Auto OFF only
	03	Infrared sensor control (Motion sensor control) : Power control and Auto OFF

(i) Power saving / comfort control

The set temperature is adjusted according to the presence of people and their amount of activity detected by the infrared (motion) sensor.

MODE:AUTO/COOL/HEAT mode operation



Low	**When the extent of human activity is low**
High	**When the extent of human activity is high**
None	**When there is no one in the room**

- When the “None” continues for 1 hour, the FAN SPEED is set Lo.

Notes (1) When the following operations are set, power saving control will be canceled.

① Energy-saving, Home leave mode, Warm-up control, Cooling operation check.

② When the operation mode is changed DRY or FAN.

(2) Not operable while the air-conditioner is OFF.

(ii) Auto-off control

When no activity is detected for 1 hour, unit will go stand-by mode.※ Unit will re-start operation automatically with the original set temperature by activity detection during the stand-by mode. When stand-by mode continues for 12 hours, unit stops.

※Compressor keeps stopped regardless of the set temperature.

(Ⅱ) SRK series

(1) Unit ON/OFF button

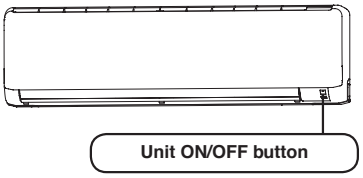
(a) Operation

Push the button once to place the unit in the automatic mode. Push it once more to turn the unit off.

(b) Details of operation

The unit will go into the automatic mode in which it automatically determines, from room temperature (as detected by sensor), whether to go into the COOL, DRY or HEAT modes.

Function / Operation mode	Roon temperature setting	Fan speed	Swing control	Timer switch
Cooling	About 24ºC	Auto	Auto	Continuous
DRY				
Heating				



(2) Auto restart function

(a) Auto restart function records the operational status of the air-conditioner immediately prior to be switched off by a power cut, and then automatically resumes operations after the power has been resto

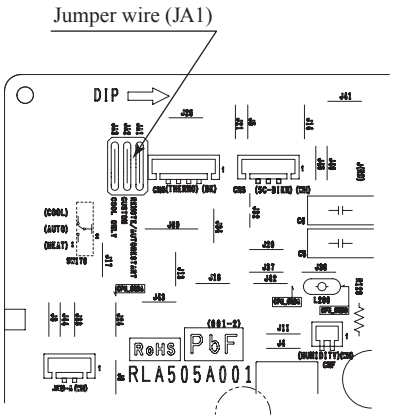
(b) The following settings will be cancelled:

(i) Timer settings

Notes (1) Auto restart function is set at on when the air-conditioner is shipped from the factory. Consult with your dealer if this function needs to be switched off.

(2) When power failure ocurrs, the timer setting is cancelled. Once power is resumed, reset the timer.

(3) If the jumper wire (J1: SRK-ZSX, JA1:SRK-ZR) “AUTO RESTART” is cut, auto restart is disabled. (See the diagram at right)



(3) Auto swing control

Note Even if [Auto Swing] is selected, the louver position with anti draft function is fixed to position 1.

(a) RC-EX3A

(i) Louver control

1) To operate the swing louver when the air-conditioner is operating, press the “Direction” button on the TOP screen of remote control. The wind direction select screen will be displayed.
2) To swing the louver, touch the “Auto swing” button. The lover will move up and down. To fix the swing louver at a position, touch one of [1] - [4] buttons. The swing lover will stop at the selected position.
3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
   The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
   This allows the microcomputer recognizing and inputting the louver motor (LM) position.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating

At the hot start and the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (in order to prevent blowing of cool wind). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver free stop control

If you touch the “Menu” → “Service setting” → “R/C settings” → “Service password” buttons one after another on the TOP screen of remote control, the “Flap control” screen is displayed. If the free stop is selected on this screen, the louver motor stops upon receipt of the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position before the stop.

(b) RC-E5

(i) Louver control

1) Press the “LOUVER” button to operate the swing louver when the air-conditioner is operating.
   “SWING ” is displayed for 3 seconds and then the swing louver moves up and down continuously.
2) To fix the swing louver at a position, press one time the “LOUVER” button while the swing louver is moving so that four stop positions are displayed one after another per second.
   When a desired stop position is displayed, press the “LOUVER” button again. The display stops, changes to show the “STOP 1 ” for 5 seconds and then the swing louver stops.
3) Louver operation at the power on with a unit having the louver 4-position control function
   The louver swings one time automatically (without operating the remote control) at the power on.
   This allows inputting the louver motor (LM) position, which is necessary for the microcomputer to recognize the louver position.

   Note (1) If you press the “LOUVER” button, the swing motion is displayed on the louver position LCD for 10 second. The display changes to the “SWING ” display 3 seconds later.

(ii) Automatic louver level setting during heating

At the hot start with the heating thermostat OFF, regardless whether the auto swing switch is operated or not (auto swing or louver stop), the louver takes the level position (In order to prevent the cold start). The louver position display LCD continues to show the display which has been shown before entering this control.

(iii) Louver free stop control

When the louver-free stop has been selected with the indoor function of wired remote control “ POSITION”, the louver motor stops when it receives the stop signal from the remote control. If the auto swing signal is received from the remote control, the auto swing will start from the position where it was before the stop.

Note (1) When the indoor function of wired remote control “ POSITION” has been switched, switch also the remote control function “ POSITION” in the same way.

(4) Timer operation

(a) RC-EX3A

(i) Sleep timer

Set the time from the start to stop of operation. The time can be selected in the range from 30 to 240 minutes (in the unit of 10-minute).

Note (1) Enable the "Sleep timer" setting from the remote control. If the setting is enabled, the timer operates at every time.

(ii) Set OFF timer by hour

Set the time to stop the unit after operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour).

(iii) Set ON timer by hour

Set the time to start the unit after the stop of operation, in the range from 1 to 12 hours (in the unit of hour). It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

(iv) Set ON timer by clock

Set the time to start operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be switched only once or daily. It is allowed also to set simultaneously the indoor temperature, operation mode, air flow rate and warm-up enabled/disabled.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(v) Set OFF timer by clock

Set the time to stop operation. The time can be set in the unit of 5-minute. This setting can be switched only once or daily.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use this timer.

(vi) Weekly timer

Set the ON or OFF timer for a week. Up to 8 patterns can be set for a day. The day-off setting is provided for holidays and non-business days.

Note (1) It is necessary to set the clock to use the weekly timer.

(vii) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

	Sleep timer	Set OFF timer by hour	Set ON timer by hour	Set OFF timer by clock	Set ON timer by clock	Weekly timer
Sleep timer		×	×	○	○	○
Set OFF timer by hour	×		×	×	×	×
Set ON timer by hour	×	×		×	×	×
Set OFF timer by clock	○	×	×		○	×
Set ON timer by clock	○	×	×	○		×
Weekly timer	○	×	×	×	×	

Note (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(b) RC-E5

(i) Sleep timer

Set the duration of time from the present to the time to turn off the air-conditioner.

It can be selected from 10 steps in the range from "OFF 1 hour later" to "OFF 10 hours later". After the sleep timer setting, the remaining time is displayed with progress of time in the unit of hour.

(ii) OFF timer

Time to turn OFF the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes.

(iii) ON timer

Time to turn ON the air-conditioner can be set in the unit of 10 minutes. Indoor temperature can be set simultaneously.

(iv) Weekly timer

Timer operation (ON timer, OFF timer) can be set up to 4 times a day for each weekday.

(v) **Combination of patterns which can be set for the timer operations**

Item / Item	Sleep timer	OFF timer	ON timer	Weekly timer
Sleep timer		×	○	×
OFF timer	×		○	×
ON timer	○	○		×
Weekly timer	×	×	×	

Notes (1) ○: Allowed ×: Not

(2) Since the ON timer, sleep timer and OFF timer are set in parallel, when the times to turn ON and OFF the air-conditioner are duplicated, the setting of the OFF timer has priority.

(5) Outline of heating or cooling operation

(a) Operation of major functional components in heating mode

	Heating		
	Thermostat ON	**Thermostat OFF**	**Failure**
Compressor	ON	OFF	OFF
Indoor fan	ON	ON(HOT KEEP)	OFF
Outdoor fan	ON	OFF (few minutes ON)	OFF
4-way valve	ON	ON	OFF (3 minutes ON)

(b) Operation of major functional components in cooling mode

	Cooling		
	Thermostat ON	**Thermostat OFF**	**Failure**
Compressor	ON	OFF	OFF
Indoor fan	ON	ON	OFF
Outdoor fan	ON	OFF (few minutes ON)	OFF (few minutes ON)
4-way valve	OFF	OFF	OFF

(6) Indoor fan motor protection

When the air-conditioner is operating and the indoor fan motor is turned ON, if the indoor fan motor has operated at 300 min^{-1} or lower for more than 30 seconds, the unit enters first in the stop mode and then stops the entire system.

(7) Plural unit control – Control of 16 units group by one remote control

(a) Function

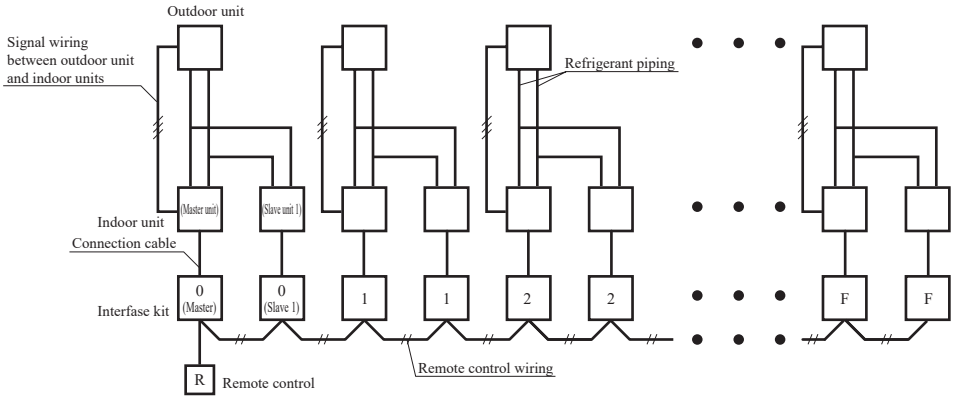
One remote control can control a group of multiple number of unit (Max. 16 indoor units). “Operation mode” which is set by the remote control switch can operate or stop all units in the group one after another in the order of unit No.(1). Thermostat and protective function of each unit function independently.

Notes(1) Unit No. is set by SW1 on the interface PCB. Unit No. setting by SW1 is necessary for the interface only. In cases of the twin specification, it is necessary set for the master and the slave units. This can be selected by SW3. (All are set for the master unit at the shipping from factory.)

SW1: For setting of 0 – 9, A – F
SW3: For setting of master and slave units
(See table shown at right.)

SW3 setting (For interface PCB)

Switch / Unit	SW3-1	SW3-2
Master	OFF	OFF
Slave1	OFF	ON



(2) Unit No. may be set at random unless duplicated, it should be better to set orderly like 0, 1, 2…, F to avoid mistake.

(b) Display to the remote control

(i) Central or each remote control basis, heating preparation
The smallest unit No. among the operating units in the remote mode (or the center mode unless the remote mode is available) is displayed.

(ii) Inspection display, filter sign
Any of unit that starts initially is displayed.

(iii) Confirmation of connected units

1) In case of RC-EX3A remote control
If you touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "IU address" on the TOP screen of remote control, the indoor units which are connected are displayed.

2) In case of RC-E5 remote control
Pressing "AIR CON No." button on the remote control displays the indoor unit address. If "▲" "▼" button is pressed at the next, it is displayed orderly starting from the unit of smallest No..

(c) In case of anomaly

If any anomaly occurs on a unit in a group (a protective function operates), that unit stops with the anomalous stop but any other normal units continue to run as they are.

(d) Signal wiring procedure

Signal wiring between indoor and outdoor units should be made on each unit same as the normal wiring. For the group control, connect with wiring between rooms using terminal blocks (X, Y) of interface kit.
Connect the remote control communication wire separately from the power source cable or wires of other electric devices (AC220V or higher).

(8) Filter sign

As the operation time (Total ON time of ON/OFF switch) accumulates to 180 hours (1), "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed on the remote control. (This is displayed when the unit is in trouble and under the central control, regardless of ON/OFF)

Note (1)Time setting for the filter sign can be made as shown below using the indoor function of wired remote control "FILTER SIGN SET". (It is set at 1 at the shipping from factory.)

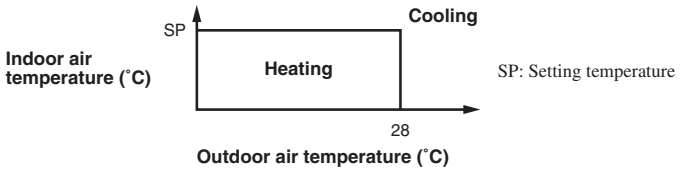
Filter sign setting	Function
Setting 1	Setting time: 180 hrs (Factory default)
Setting 2	Setting time: 600 hrs
Setting 3	Setting time: 1,000 hrs
Setting 4	Setting time: 1,000 hrs (Unit stop) (2)

(2) After the setting time has elapsed, the "FILTER CLEANING" is displayed and, after operating for 24 hours further (counted also during the stop), the unit stops.

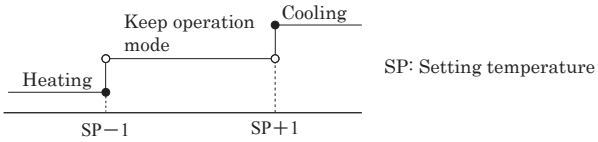
(9) Outline of automatic operation

(a) Determination of operation mode

Operation mode is determined by indoor air temperature and outdoor air temperature as following.



(b) Operation mode is changes when keep cooling and heating thermostat off 20 minutes and be satisfied following conditions. If the setting temperature is changed with the remote control, the operation mode is judged immediately.



Indoor air temperature−Setting temperature (˚C)

※It can not be changed to heating mode if outdoor air temperature is 28℃ or higher.

(c) When the unit is started again within one hour after the stop of automatic operation or when the automatic operation is selected during heating, cooling or dehumidifying operation, the unit is operated in the previous operation mode.

(d) Setting temperature can be adjusted within the following range. There is the relationship as shown below between the signals of the wireless remote control and the setting temperature.

Unit : ℃

		Signals of wireless remote control (Display)												
		18	**19**	**20**	**21**	**22**	**23**	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**
Setting temperature	**Cooling**	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30
	Heating	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30

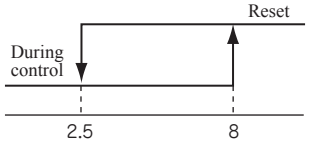
(10) Frost prevention control (During cooling or dehumidifying)

(a) Operating conditions

1) More than 8 minutes after starting the compressor.
2) Indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Th2) is lower than 2.5℃.

(b) Contents of frosting operation

	During this control	Reset
Compressor ON/OFF command	Forced stop	Operation command
Indoor fan motor	Depending on the air flow setting with the remote control	



Indoor heat exchanger temperature (℃)

(c) Resetting condition

Indoor heat exchanger temperature (Th2) is higher than 8℃.

(11) Dew prevention control (During cooling or dehumidifying)

(i) Operating conditions

When the following conditions have been satisfied for more than 30 minutes after starting operation

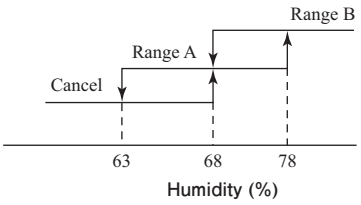
1) Compressor's command speed is 20 rps or higher.
2) Detected value of humidity is 68% or higher.

(ii) Contents of operation

1) Air capacity control

Item \ Model	SRK100ZR-W
Upper limit of compressor's command speed (1)	Range A: As per following table, Range B: 40 rps

Note (1) Ranges A and B are as shown below.



● Condition for range A
Compressor's command speed is controlled according to the indoor unit heat exchanger temperature (Th2) and the indoor unit room temperature (Th1).

Condition	Compressor's command speed
Th2 ≦ Th1−10	・Decreases the compressor's target max speed by 4 rps. ・If the condition is satisfied still 20 seconds later, the speed is decreased further by 4 rps. This process is repeated further so far as the condition is satisfied.〔Lower limit is 20 rps.〕
Th1−10 < Th2 ≦ Th1−6	Compressor's target max. speed or changed value of the same is maintained.
Th1−6 < Th2	Changed compressor's target max. speed is increased at a rate of 1 rps/20 seconds.

2) When this control has continued for more than 30 minutes continuously, the following wind direction control is performed.

When the vertical wind direction is set at other than the vertical swing, the flaps change to the horizontal position.

(iii) Reset conditions

When either of the following conditions is satisfied

1) Compressor's command speed is less than 20 rps.
2) Detected value of humidity is less than 63%.

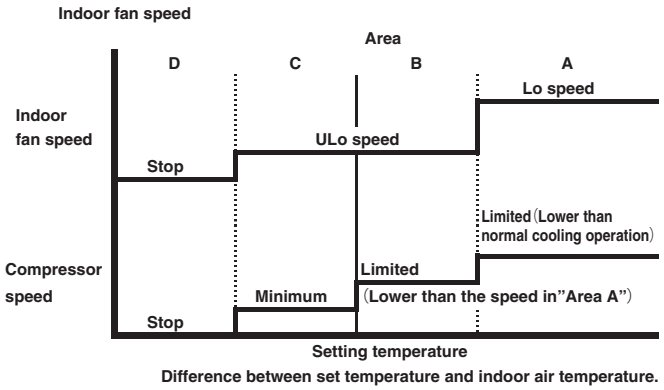
(12) Outline of dehumidifying (DRY) operation

(a) Purpose of DRY mode

The purpose is "Dehumidification", and not to control the humidity to the target condition.
Indoor/outdoor unit control the operation condition to reduce the humidity, and also prevent over cooling.

(b) Outline of control

(i) Indoor fan speed and compressor are controlled by the area which is selected by the temperature difference.



(ii) The indoor unit check the current area by every 5 minutes, and operate by the next checking.

1.4 Operation control function by the outdoor control

Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

(1) Determination of compressor speed (Frequency)

Required frequency

(a) Cooling/dehumidifying operation. Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
Max. required frequency	Usual operation	120	120	120
	Outdoor air temperature ≦ 15°C or indoor return air temperature ≦ 20°C	68	100	100
	Silent mode	50 (68)	70 (100)	80 (100)
Min. required frequency		20	20	20

Note(1) Value in ( ) are for the SW7-3 OFF.

(b) Heating operation. Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
Max. required frequency	Usual operation	120	120	120
	Silent mode	76 (94)	70 (100)	80 (100)
Min. required frequency		24	20〔23〕	20〔23〕

Notes(1) Value in ( ) are for the SW7-3 OFF.
(2) Value in 〔 〕 are for FDU series.

(c) If the indoor fan speed becomes “Me” or “Lo”, Max required frequency goes down accordingly depending on indoor unit model.

(d) Max. required frequency under high outdoor air temperature in cooling mode.
Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
Max. required frequency	Outdoor air temperature is 35°C or higher	106	106	114
	Outdoor air temperature is 42°C or higher	90	90	98

(e) Max. required frequency under high outdoor air temperature in heating mode.
Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Unit: rps

Model		FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
Max. required frequency	Outdoor air temperature is 10°C or higher	120	120	120
	Outdoor air temperature is 18°C or higher	120	120	120

(f) Selection of max. required frequency by heat exchanger temperature.

(i) Maximum required frequency is selected according to the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) during cooling/dehumidifying or according to the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) during heating mode.

(ii) When there are 3 indoor heat exchanger temperatures (Thi-R), whichever the highest applies,
When there are 2 outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R), whichever the higher applies.

Unit: rps

Model			FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
Max. required frequency	Cooling/ dehumidifying	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature is 55°C or higher	120	120	120
	Heating	Indoor heat exchanger temperature is 55°C or higher	120	120	120

(g) When any of the controls from (a) to (f) above may duplicate, whichever the smallest value among duplicated controls is taken as the maximum required frequency.

(h) During heating, it is operated so that the required frequency adds 5 rps every 1 minute until the indoor heat exchanger temperature becomes 40°C or higher.

(2) Compressor start control

(a) Compressor starts upon receipt of the thermostat ON signal from the indoor unit.

(b) However, at initial start of heating mode after turning on the power source breaker, it may enter the standby state for maximum 30 minutes (" PREPARATION" is displayed on the remote control) in order to prevent the oil loss in the compressor.

If the heating operation is selected from the remote control when the outdoor unit is in the standby state, " PREPARATION" is displayed for 3 seconds on the remote control.

(3) Compressor soft start control

(a) Compressor protection start I

[Control condition]

Normally, the compressor operation frequency is raised in this start pattern.

[Control contents]

(i) Starts with the compressor's target frequency at **A** rps.
However, when the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 35°C or higher during cooling/dehumidifying or the indoor return air temperature (Thi-A) is 25°C or higher during heating, it starts at **C** rps.

(ii) At 30 seconds after the start of compressor, its target frequency changes to **B** rps and the compressor is operated for 2 - 4 minutes with its operation frequency fixed at **B** rps.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
FDC200-280	Cooling/Dehumidifying	55	55	30
	Heating	55	55	30

(b) Compressor protection start III

[Control condition]

Number of compressor starts is only 1 counted after the power source breaker ON.

[Control contents]

Operates by selecting one of following start patterns according to the operation mode and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

(i) Low frequency operation control during cooling/dehumidifying.

[Control condition]

Upon establishing the conditions of compressor protection start III, the low frequency operation control is performed during cooling/dehumidifying.

[Control contents]

1) Starts with the compressor's target frequency at **A** rps. When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 35°C or higher, it starts at **C** rps.
2) At 30 seconds after the compressor start, the compressor's target frequency is changed to **B** rps and the compressor's operation frequency is fixed for 10 minutes.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
FDC200-280	Cooling/Dehumidifying	55	30	30

(ii) Low frequency operation control during heating.

[Control condition]

When the conditions of compressor protection start III are established and one of following conditions a), b) is satisfied, the low frequncy operation control is performed during heating.

a) At 30 minutes or more after turning the power source breaker on
b) When compressor under dome sensor temperature (Tho-C) is 4°C or higher and the difference between compressor under dome sensor temperature and outdoor air sensor temperature (Tho-C-Tho-A) is 4°C or higher.

[Control contents]

a) Starts the compressor with its target frequency at **A** rps. However, when the indoor return air temperature (Thi-A) is 25°C or higher, it starts at **C** rps.
b) At 30 seconds after the start of compressor, the compressor's target frequency is changed to **B** rps and the compressor's operation frequency is fixed for 10 minutes.

Model	Operation mode	**A** rps	**B** rps	**C** rps
FDC200-280	Heating	55	30	30

(4) Outdoor fan control

(a) Outdoor fan speed and fan motor revolution

Unit: min^{-1}

Model	Mode	Fan motor revolution						
FDC200, 250		Speed ①	Speed ②	Speed ③	Speed ④	Speed ⑤	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑦
	Cooling/Dehumidifying	200	370	600	750	850	900	950
	Heating	200	370	600	820	850	910	950
FDC280		Speed ①	Speed ②	Speed ③	Speed ④	Speed ⑤	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑦
	Cooling/Dehumidifying	200	370	560	650	750	850	900
	Heating	200	370	560	830	850	910	950

(b) Fan speed control during Cooling/Defumidifying operation

Fan speeds are selected depending on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Note (1) It is detected by Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the higher.

【FDC200, 250】

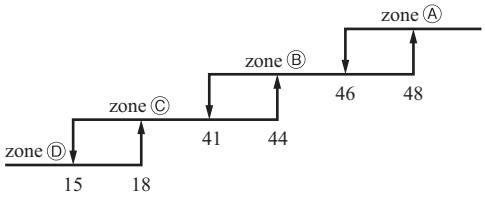
	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ	zone Ⓓ
zone ⓐ	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑥	Speed ④
zone ⓑ	Speed ⑤	Speed ⑤	Speed ※①(⑤)	Speed ③
zone ⓒ	Speed ④	Speed ④	Speed ④	Speed ②
zone ⓓ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③(④)	Speed ①

Note (1) Value in ( ) are for FDU series.

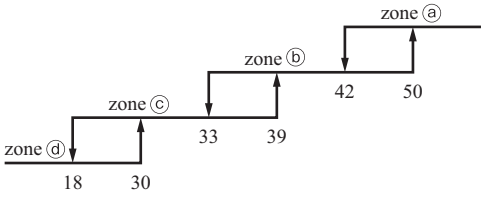
• Silent mode only

	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ	zone Ⓓ
zone ⓐ	Speed ⑤	Speed ⑤	Speed ④(⑤)	Speed ④
zone ⓑ	Speed ④	Speed ④	Speed ③(④)	Speed ③
zone ⓒ	Speed ④	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ②
zone ⓓ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ②	Speed ①

Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the model FDC200 only.

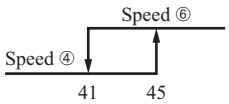


Outdoor air temperature (˚C)



Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (˚C)

※1 When not using FDC250 and FDU indoor type : Fan speed ⑥
When not using FDC200 and FDU indoor type : As shown below



Compressor speed (rps)

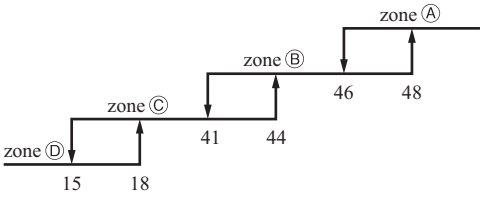
【FDC280】

	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ	zone Ⓓ
zone ⓐ	Speed ⑦	Speed ⑦	Speed ⑦	Speed ⑤
zone ⓑ	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑤	Speed ③
zone ⓒ	Speed ⑥	Speed ⑥	Speed ④	Speed ②
zone ⓓ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ①

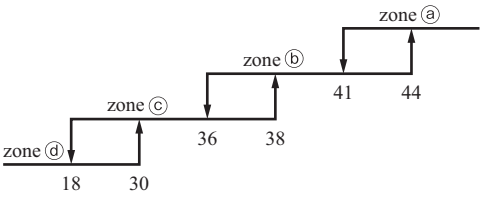
Note (1) Value in ( ) are for FDU series.

• Silent mode only

	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ	zone Ⓓ
zone ⓐ	Speed ⑥	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③
zone ⓑ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③
zone ⓒ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ②
zone ⓓ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ①



Outdoor air temperature (˚C)



Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (˚C)

(c) Fan speed control during heating operation

Fan speeds are selected depending on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A).

Note (1) It is detected by Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the lower.

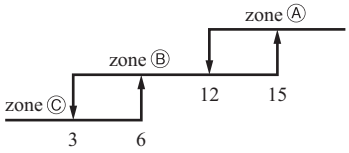
【FDC200, 250】

	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ
zone ⓐ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ④
zone ⓑ	Speed ③	Speed ④	Speed ⑤
zone ⓒ	Speed ④	Speed ⑦	Speed ※②

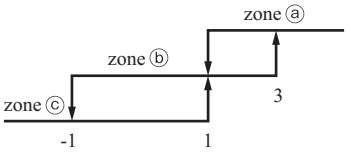
• Silent mode only

	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ
zone ⓐ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ③
zone ⓑ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ④
zone ⓒ	Speed ③(④)	Speed ⑤	Speed ⑥

Notes (1) Value in ( ) is for the model FDC200 only.

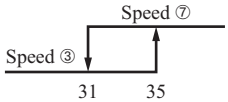


Outdoor air temperature (˚C)



Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (˚C)

※2 When using FDC250 : Speed ⑦
When using FDC200 and FDU indoor type : Speed ⑦
When not using FDC200 and FDU indoor type : As shown below

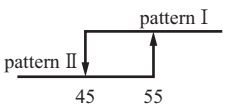


Compressor speed (rps)

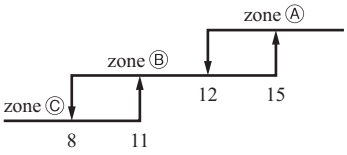
【FDC280】

	zone Ⓐ	zone Ⓑ	zone Ⓒ
zone ⓐ	Speed ③	Speed ③	Speed ④(③)
zone ⓑ	Speed ③	Speed ④	Speed ⑦(④)
zone ⓒ	Speed ④	Speed ⑥(⑤)	Speed ⑦(⑥)

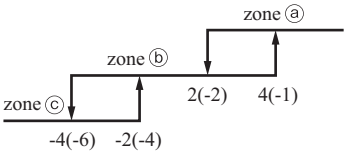
Note (1) Value in ( ) are for the pattern Ⅱ.



Compressor speed (rps)



Outdoor air temperature (˚C)



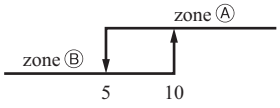
Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (˚C)

Note (2) Value in ( ) are for the pattern Ⅱ.

(d) Outdoor fan control at cooling low outdoor air temperature

(i) When all the following conditions are established after the start of compressor, the following control is implemented. If the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is in the zone Ⓑ in the cooling/dehumidifying mode, it has elapsed 20 seconds from the start of outdoor fan and the outdoor fan is at the speed ①, the outdoor fan speed is controlled according to the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R1, R2).

Note (1) It is detected with Tho-R1 or R2, whichever the higher.



(ii) The outdoor heat exchanger temperature is detected always and, when the number of revolutions of the outdoor fan speed has been increased or decreased, there is no change of fan speed for 30 seconds.

(iii) Range of the outdoor fan speed under this control is as follows.

1) Lower limit: 130min^{-1}

※1:The fan stops if the outdoor air temperature is less than -5°C and 130min^{-1} is continuously operated for 30 seconds and outdoor heat exchanger temperature (either Tho-R1 or Tho-R2, whichever is higher) is 28°C or lower. If the outdoor air temperature is 0°C or higher or the heat exchanger temperature is 33°C or higher, the fan will resume operation at 130min^{-1}.

2) Upper limit: 500min^{-1}

(iv) As any of the following conditions is established, this control terminates.

1) When the outdoor air temperature is in the zone Ⓐ and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature at 29°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.

2) When the outdoor fan speed is 500min^{-1} and the outdoor heat exchanger temperature at 29°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.

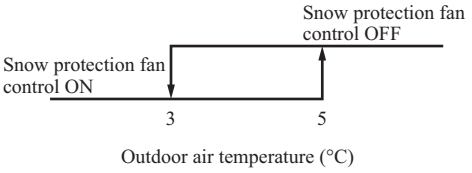
3) When the outdoor heat changer temperature at 44°C or higher is established for 40 seconds or more continuously.

(e) Caution at the outdoor fan start control

When the outdoor fan is running at 400min^{-1} or more before operating the compressor, it may operate with the compressor only, without starting up the outdoor fan. This is normal.

(f) Snow protection fan control

If the DIP switch (SW3-2) on the outdoor unit control PCB is turned ON, the outdoor fan is operated for 30 seconds at speed ④ once in every 10 minutes depending on the outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) in the stop mode or anomalous stop mode.



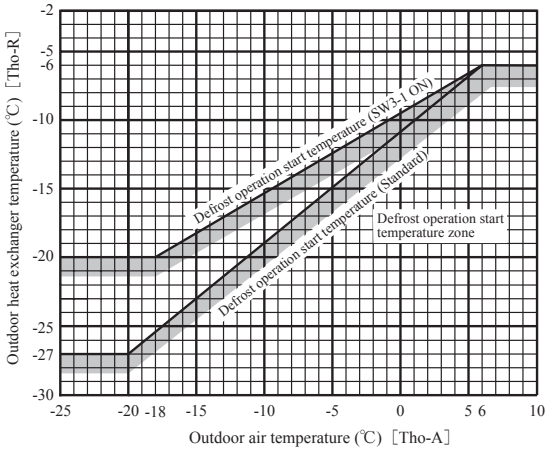
(5) Defrost operation

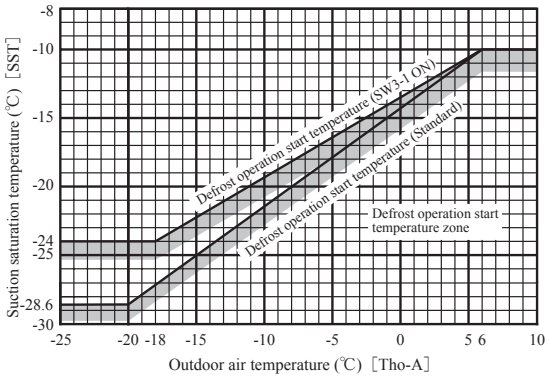
(a) Starting conditions

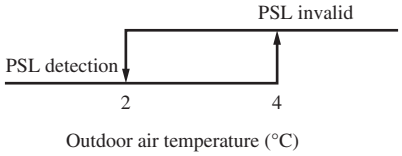
If all of the following defrost conditions A or conditions B are satisfied, the defrost operation starts.

(i) Defrost conditions A

1) Cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrost operation has elapsed 37 minutes, and the cumulative compressor operation time after the start of heating operation (remote control ON) has elapsed 30 minutes.
2) After 5 minutes from the compressor ON
3) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor fan
4) After satisfying all above conditions, if temperatures of the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Tho-R1, R2) and the outdoor air temperature sensor (Tho-A) become lower than the defrost operation start temperature as shown by the right figure for 55 seconds continuously, or the suction gas saturation temperature (SST) and the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A), which are obtained from the value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) stay for 3 minutes within the range below the defrost operation start temperature as shown by the right figure. However, it excludes for 10 minutes after the start of compressor and the outdoor air temperature is as shown by the lower figure.







(ii) Defrost conditions B

1) When previous defrost ending condition is the time out of defrost operation and it is in the heating operation after the cumulative compressor operation time after the end of defrost operation has become 30 minutes.
2) After 5 minutes from the start of compressor.
3) After 5 minutes from the start of outdoor fan.

(iii) Defrost condition C

After 12 minutes from the start of compressor with SW4-4 ON

(b) Ending conditions

When any of the following conditions is satisfied, the heating operation starts.

(i) When it has elapsed 10 minutes and 20 seconds after the start of defrost operation.

(ii) When the outdoor heat exchanger temperatures (Tho-R1, R2), whichever the lower, becomes 12°C or higher for 10 seconds continuously

(c) Switching of defrost control with SW3-1

(i) If SW3-1 on the outdoor unit control PCB is turned to ON, it becomes easier to enter the defrost operation. Use this when installing a unit at snowing regions.

(ii) Control contents

1) It allows entering the defrost operation under the defrost condition A when the cumulative heating operation time becomes 30 minutes. It is 37 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (Factory default).
2) It allows entering the defrost operation under the defrost condition B when the cumulative heating operation time becomes 25 minutes. It is 30 minutes at SW3-1 OFF (Factory default).
3) It allows the defrost operation with the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) and suction pressure saturation temperature (SST) being higher than normal.

(6) Protective control/anomalous stop control by compressor's number of revolutions

(a) Compressor discharge pipe temperature protection

(i) Discharge pipe temperature control (Solenoid valve SV1 control(At heating mode))

The solenoid valve SV1 opens to suppress the rise of discharge pipe temperature.

1) SV1 open condition

In case the following conditions and other certain conditions are satisfied.

- Discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) is 100°C or higher.
- Low pressure is 0.7MPa or lower.

2) SV1 close condition

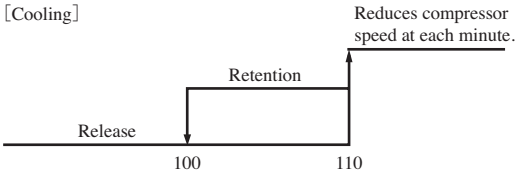
In case any of the following conditions are satisfied.

- Discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) is less than 50°C.
- Low pressure is more than 0.8MPa.

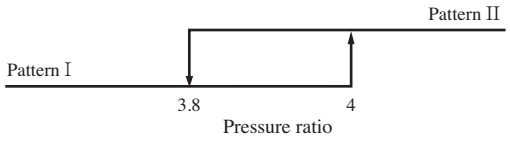
(ii) Protective control

As the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of discharge pipe temperature.

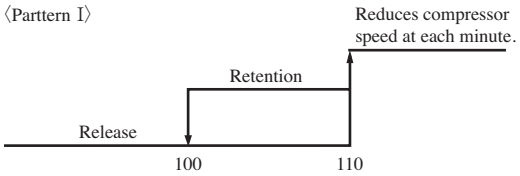
［Cooling］



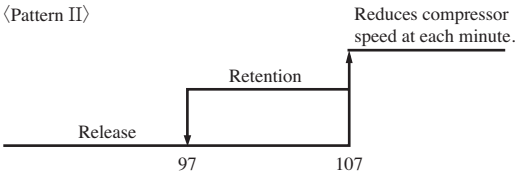
［Heating］



〈Parttern I〉

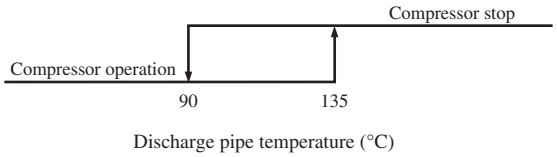


〈Pattern II〉



(iii) Anomalous stop control

1) If the discharge pipe temperature (detected with Tho-D) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
2) When it is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or after continuous 30 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E36 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



(iv) Reset of anomalous stop mode

As it drops to the reset value of 90°C or lower for 45 minutes continuously, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

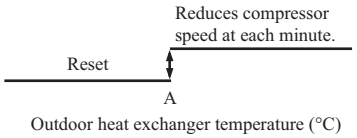
(b) Cooling high pressure protection

(i) Protective control 1 (Compressor speed control)

1) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the control value A.
Value A is changed from 59°C to 53°C by number of 63H1 operations.

2) When the outdoor air temperature (Tho-A) is 40°C or higher.

3) If outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) is less than the control value A continuously for 6minutes, protective control finishes.



Control value A
59-53°C

(ii) High pressure control 1 (Electric expantion valve EEVC control 1)
The electric expantion valve EEVC opens to suppress the rise of high pressure.

1) Operation condition
In case the following conditions are all satisfied.
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature | Tho-R1 - Tho-R2 | is 8°C or higher (In case outdoor temperature is more than 42°C), 10°C or higher (In case outdoor temperature is 42°C or lower).
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (either Tho-R1 or Tho-R2, whichever is higher) is 54°C or higher.
- Under-dome temperature - suction saturation temperature (SST) is 30°C or higher.

2) Ending condition
In case any of the following conditions are satisfied.
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature | Tho-R1 - Tho-R2 | is 4°C or lower (In case outdoor temperature is more than 42°C), 6°C or lower (In case outdoor temperature is 42°C or lower).
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (either Tho-R1 or Tho-R2, whichever is higher) is 50°C or lower.
- Under-dome temperature - suction saturation temperature (SST) is 8°C or lower (In case outdoor temperature is more than 42°C), 10°C or lower (In case outdoor temperature is 42°C or lower).

(iii) High pressure control 2 (Electric expantion valve EEVC control 2)
The electric expantion valve EEVC opens 30 pulse every 60 seconds to suppress the rise of high pressure.

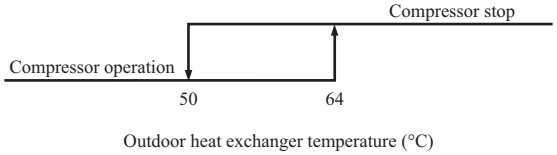
1) Operation condition
In case the following conditions are all satisfied.
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (either Tho-R1 or Tho-R2, whichever is higher) is 58°C or higher.
- Under-dome temperature - suction saturation temperature (SST) is 15°C or higher.
- Outdoor temperature is 46°C or higher.

2) Ending condition
In case any of the following conditions are satisfied.
- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature (either Tho-R1 or Tho-R2, whichever is higher) is 50°C or lower.
- Under-dome temperature - suction saturation temperature (SST) is 8°C or lower.
- Outdoor temperature is 43°C or lower.

(iv) Anomalous stop control

1) As the outdoor heat exchanger temperature (Tho-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.

2) If it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or 64°C or higher continues for 30 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E35 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.



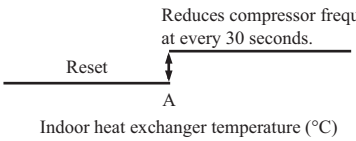
(v) Reset of anomalous stop mode
As it reaches the reset value of 50°C or lower, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(c) Heating high pressure protection

(i) Protective control

1) As the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to suppress the rise of high pressure.

2) Control value A is changed from 57°C to 51°C by number of 63H1 operations.



Model	Control value A (°C)
FDC200-280	57-51

3) If indoor heat exchanger temperature(Thi-R) is less than the control value A continuously for 6minutes, protective control finishes.

(ii) Anomalous stop control

Operation control function by the indoor unit control - See the heating overload protection, page 18.

(d) Anomaly detection control by the high pressure switch (63H1)

(i) If the pressure rises and operates the high pressure switch (opens at 4.15MPa/closes at 3.15MPa), the compressor stops.

(ii) Under any of the following conditions, E40 is displayed and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

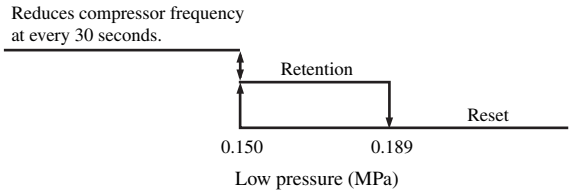
1) When it occurs 5 times within 60 minutes that pressure rises and the compressor is stopped by 63H1.

2) When 63H1 has been in the open state for 30 minutes continuously, including the stop of compressor.

(e) Low pressure control

(i) Protective control

1) If the value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) exceeds the setting value, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to restrain the drop of pressure.



2) If low pressure sensor (PSL) is 0.189MPa or higher, protective control finishes.

(ii) Anomalous stop control

1) When a value detected by the low pressure sensor (PSL) satisfies any of the following conditions, the compressor stops for its protection.

a) When the low pressure drops to 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously.

b) At 10 minutes after the start of compressor, the suction superheat becomes 30°C or more for 60 seconds continuously and the low pressure becomes 0.15MPa or lower.

2) E49 is displayed under any of the following conditions and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

a) When the low pressure drops 5 times within 60 minutes and the compressor stops under any of the above conditions.

b) When a value detected with the low pressure sensor becomes 0.079MPa or under for 5 minutes, including the stop of compressor.

3) However, when the control condition 1). a) is established during the compressor protection start III, E49 is displayed at initial stop and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

4) If low pressure sensor (PSL) is 0.227MPa or higher and 3 minutes took after the compressor stops, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(f) Compressor pressure ratio protection control

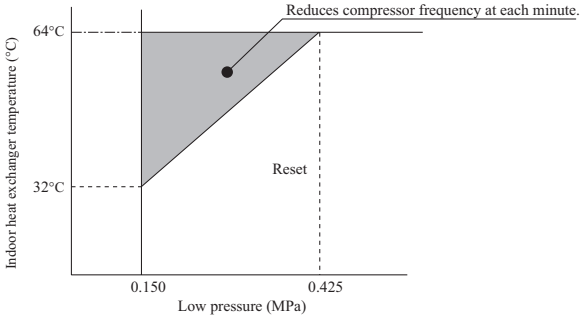
(i) During heating operation, if the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) and low pressure sensor (PSL) exceed the setting values at 10 minutes after the start of compressor, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to protect the compressor.

(ii) This control is not performed during the outdoor fan ON and for 10 minutes from the start of outdoor fan.

(iii) This control is not performed during defrost operation and at 10 minutes after the reset of defrost operation.

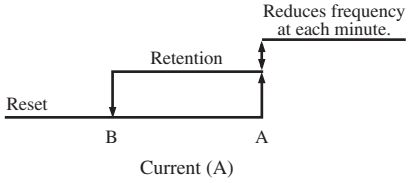
(iv) When there are 3 indoor heat exchanger temperatures (Thi-R), the highest temperature is detected.

(v) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) and low pressure sensor (PSL) is without "Reduces compressor frequency at each minute" range in the following figure continuously for 6minutes, protective control finishes.



(g) Over-current protection current safe controls I, II

Detecting the outdoor inverter input (primary) current and the output (secondary) current, if the current values exceed setting values, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to protect the inverter.

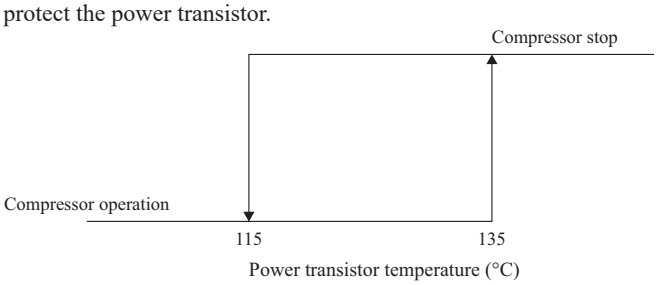


Model		Cooling		Heating	
		Control value A	Reset value B	Control value A	Reset value B
Primary current side	FDC200	16.0	15.0	16.0	15.0
	FDC250, 280	17-17.5	16-16.5	17-17.5	16-16.5
Secandary current side	FDC200	15.5	14.5	15.5	14.5
	FDC250, 280	17-18.5	16-17.5	17-18.5	16-17.5

(h) Power transistor temperature protection

(i) Anomalous stop control

If the power transistor temperature exceeds the setting value, the protective switch in the power transistor trips and stops the compressor to protect the power transistor.



(ii) Anomalous inverter PCB

1) If the power transistor detects anomaly 5 times within 60 minutes with compressor stop, E41 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
2) If the power transistor detects any anomaly for 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E51 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
3) 3 minutes after the compressor stops, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(i) Anomalous power transistor current

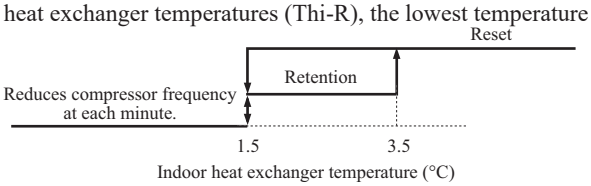
(i) Prevents over-current on the inverter. If the current value in the power transistor exceeds the setting value, the compressor stops.
(ii) If the current value in the power transistor exceeds the specified value and the compressor stops 4 times within 30 minutes, E42 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
(iii) 3 minutes after the compressor stops, it becomes possible to restart.

(j) Anomalous inverter communication

(i) When the answerback signal from the inverter cannot be received continuously for 15 seconds, the compressor stops.
(ii) If the power transistor defects anomalies 4 times within 15 minutes, including the stop of compressor, E45 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.
3 minutes after the compressor stops, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(k) Anti-frost control by the compressor frequency control

(i) If the indoor heat exchanger temperature (detected with Thi-R) exceeds the setting value at 4 minutes after the start of compressor, the compressor speed (frequency) is controlled to initiate the anti-frost control of indoor heat exchanger.
(ii) When there are 3 indoor heat exchanger temperatures (Thi-R), the lowest temperature is detected.



(iii) Regarding the anti-frost control by the operation stop, refer to the operation control function by the indoor control and the cooling, dehumidifying frost prevention of page 18.

(l) Dewing prevention control

[Control condition]

During cooling and dehumidifying operation, if all the following conditions are established, the compressor speed (frequency) is reduced to prevent dewing and water splash.

(i) Cooling electronic expansion valve aperture (EEVC) is 500 pulses.

(ii) Suction superheat is more than 10°C.

(iii) Compressor speed (frequency) is **A** rps.

[Control contents]

(i) The compressor speed (frequency) is reduced at each 1 minute until EEVC aperture is 460 or lower.

(ii) This control takes A rps as its lower limit of compressor speed.

(iii) If cooling electronic expansion valve aperture (EEVC) is less than 460 pulses continuously for 6minutes, protective control finishes.

(m) Broken wire detection on temperature sensor and low pressure sensor

(i) Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, outdoor air temperature sensor and low pressure sensor

If the following is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON or 20 seconds after power on, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrost operation, it is not detected.

- Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor: -50°C or lower
- Outdoor air temperature sensor: -45°C or lower
- Low pressure sensor: 0V or under or 4.0V or more

(ii) Discharge pipe temperature sensor, suction pipe temperature sensor, compressor under dome temperature sensor

If the following is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes and 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After a delay of 3 minutes, it restarts but, if the same is detected repeatedly 3 times within 40 minutes, the compressor stops with the anomalous stop.

Note (1) During defrost operation, it is not detected.

- Discharge pipe temperature sensor: -10°C or lower
- Suction pipe temperature sensor: -50°C or lower
- Compressor under dome temperature sensor : -50°C or lower

(n) Fan motor error

(i) If compressor moves and the fan of revolution 100min^{-1} or less is detected for 30 seconds continuously , the compressor stops.

(ii) If the above (i) is detected 5 times within 60 minutes from first detection of the above (i), it enters the anomalous stop mode with E48 displayed on the remote control.

(o) Anomalous stop by the compressor start stop

(i) When a compressor startup failure is received from the inverter PCB, the compressor stops temporarily and restarts 3-minute later.

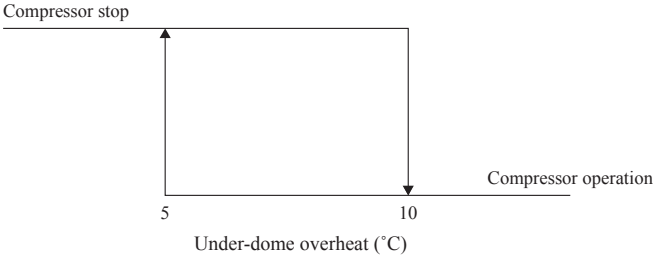
(ii) If the above (i) is detected 5 times, the compressor stops and E59 is displayed on the remote control.

(iii) 3 minutes after the compressor stops, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(p) Anomaly liquid flooding

(i) Anomalous stop control

1) If the under-dome overheat exceeds the setting value continuously for 15 minutes (first anomalous stop) or 30 minutes (after the second anomalous stop), the compressor stops.



2) When it occurs 3 times within 90 minutes, E44 is displayed on the remote control and it enters the anomalous stop mode.

(ii) Reset of anomalous stop mode

3 minutes after the compressor stops, it becomes possible to restart from the remote control.

(7) Silent mode

(a) As "Silent mode start" signal is received from the remote control, it operates by dropping the outdoor fan speed and the compressor speed (frequency).

(b) For details, refer to items (1) and (4) above.

(8) Test run

(a) It is possible to operate from the outdoor unit using the DIP switch on the outdoor unit control PCB.

SW3-3	ON	SW3-4	OFF	Cooling test run
			ON	Heating test run
	OFF	Normal and end of test run		

Make sure to turn SW3-3 to OFF after the end of operation.

(b) Test run control

(i) Operation is performed at required compressor speed (frequency), which is determined for each model.

(ii) Each protective control and error detection control are effective.

(iii) If SW3-4 is switched during test run, the compressor is stopped once by the stop control and the cooling/heating operation is switched.

(iv) Setting and display of remote control during test run

Item / Mode	Contents of remote control setting/display
Cooling test run	Setting temperature of cooling is 5°C.
Heating test run	Setting temperature of heating (preparation) is 30°C.

(9) Pump-down control

Turning ON the pump-down switch SW1 for 2 seconds during the operation stop or anomalous stop (excluding the thermostat OFF) or SW4-1 is off, the pump-down operation is performed. (This is invalid when the indoor unit is operating. This is effective even when the indoor unit is stopped by the anomalous stop or the power source is turned OFF.)

(a) Control contents

(i) Close the service valve at the liquid side. (It is left open at the gas side.)

(ii) Compressor is started with the target speed (frequency) at 55 rps in the cooling mode.

(iii) Red and green lamps (LED) keeps flashing on the outdoor unit control PCB.

(iv) Each of protection and error detection controls, excluding the low pressure control, anti-frost control and dewing prevention control, is effective.

(v) Outdoor fan is controlled as usual.

(vi) Electronic expansion valve is fully opened.

(b) Control ending conditions

Stop control is initiated depending on any of the following conditions.

(i) Low pressure of 0.087MPa or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously.

1) Red LED: Light, Green LED: keeps flashing, Remote control: Displays stop.
2) It is possible to restart when the low pressure is more than 0.087MPa.
3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.

(ii) Stop by the error detection control

1) Red LED: keeps flashing, Green LED: keeps flashing
2) Restart is prohibited. To return to normal operation, reset the power source.
3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.

(iii) When the cumulative operation time of compressor under the pump-down control becomes 5 minutes

1) Red LED: stays OFF, Green LED: keeps flashing, Remote control: Stop
2) It is possible to pump-down again.
3) Electronic expansion valve (cooling/heating) is kept fully open.

Note (1) After the stop of compressor, close the service valve at the gas side.

Caution: Since pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications with the indoor unit, the indoor unit and the remote control display "Transmission error – E5". This is normal.

(10) Base heater ON/OFF output control (Option)

(i) Base heater ON conditions

When all of following conditions are satisfied, the base heater is turned ON.

· Outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) is 1ºC or lower.

· In the heating mode

· When the compressor is turned ON

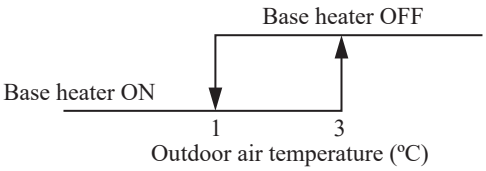
(ii) Base heater OFF conditions

When either one of following conditions is satisfied, the base heater is turned OFF.

· Outdoor air temperature (detected with Tho-A) is 3ºC or higher.

· When the compressor stop has been detected for 30 minutes continuously

· In the cooling or dehumidifying mode



2. MAINTENANCE DATA

2.1 Diagnosing of microcomputer circuit

(1) Selfdiagnosis function

(a) Check indicator table

Whether a failure exists or not on the indoor unit and outdoor unit can be know by the contents of remote control error code, indoor/outdoor unit green LED (power pilot lamp and microcomputer normality pilot lamp) or red LED (check pilot lamp).

(i) Indoor unit

1) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

Remote control		Indoor unit control PCB		Outdoor unit control PCB		Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Red LED	Green LED (1)				
No-indication	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	—	• **Normal operation**	—	—
		Stays OFF	Stays OFF	2-time flash	Stays OFF	Indoor unit power source	• Power OFF, broken wire/blown fuse, broken transformer wire	Repair	72, 73
		* 3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires	• Poor connection, breakage of remote control wire * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF.	Repair	74
						Remote control	• Defective remote control PCB	Replacement of remote control	
WAIT or INSPECT I/U		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• Poor connection, breakage of indoor-outdoor units connection wire	Repair	75-78
						Remote control	• Improper setting of master and slave by remote control		
E 1		Stays OFF	* Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires (Noise)	• **Poor connection of remote control signal wire (White)** * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF • **Intrusion of noise in remote control wire**	Repair	80
						Remote control indoor unit control PCB	*• Defective remote control or indoor unit control PCB (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of remote control or PCB	
E5		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• **Poor connection of wire between indoor-outdoor units during operation (disconnection, loose connection)** • **Anomalous communication between indoor-outdoor units by noise, etc.**	Repair	81
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	(Noise)	• **CPU-runaway on outdoor unit control PCB**	Power reset or Repair	
						Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Occurrence of defective outdoor unit control PCB on the way of power source (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
		2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Outdoor unit control PCB	• **Defective outdoor unit control PCB on the way of power source**	Replacement	
						Fuse	• **Blown fuse**		
E6		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature sensor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	82
						Indoor unit control PCB	*• **Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E7		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor return air temperature sensor	• **Defective indoor return air temperature sensor** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature sensor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	83
						Indoor unit control PCB	*• **Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E8	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• **Heating over-load** (Anomalously high indoor heat exchanger temperature)	Repair	84
						Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• **Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (short-circuit)**	Replacement of temperature sensor	
						Indoor unit control PCB	*• **Defective indoor unit control PCB** (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E9		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Drain trouble	• **Defective drain pump (DM), broken drain pump wire**, disconnected connector	Replacement, repair of DM	85
						Float switch	• **Anomalous float switch operation** (malfunction)	Repair	
						Indoor unit control PCB	*• **Defective indoor unit control PCB** (Defective float switch input circuit) *• **Defective indoor unit control PCB** (Defective DM drive output circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
						Option	• **Defective option parts** (At option anomalous input setting)	Repair	
E 10		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Number of connected indoor units	• **When multi-unit control by remote control is performed, the number of units is over**	Repair	86
E 11		Stays OFF	Keeps flshing	Stays OFF	Keeps flshing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of indoor units	Repair	87
E 14		3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor unit No. setting	•No master is assigned to slaves.	Repair	88
						Rcmote control wires	•Anomalous remote control wire connection, broken wire between master and slave units		
E 16		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor fan motor	• **Defective indoor fan motor**	Replacement, repair	89-91
						Indoor unit power PCB	• **Defective indoor unit power PCB**	Replacement	
E 18		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Address setting error	• Address setting error of master and slave indoor units	Repair	92
E 19		1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor unit control PCB	• **Indoor unit operation check error**	Repair	93
E20		1(2)-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor fan motor	• Indoor motor rotation speed anomaly	Replacement, repair	94-96
						Indoor unit power PCB	• Defective indoor unit power PCB	Replacement	
E28		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control temperature sensor	• Broken wire of remote control temperature sensor	Repair	97

Notes (1) **Normal indicator lamp (Indoor, outdoor units: Green) extinguishes (or lights continuously) only when CPU is anomalous. It keeps flashing in any trouble other than anomalous CPU.**

(2) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

2) SRK series

Remote control		Indoor unit display		Outdoor unit control PCB		Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	RUN light	TIMER light	Red LED	Green LED				
No-indication	Stays OFF	ON	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	—	**•Normal operation**	—	—
		—	—	2-time flash	Stays OFF	Indoor unit power source	•Power OFF, broken wire/blown fuse, broken transformer wire	Repair	119-8
		—	—	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires	•Poor connection, breakage of remote control wire * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF.	Repair	119-9
						Remote control	• Defective remote control PCB	Replacement of remote control	
		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Limit switch, air inlet panel	**•Limit switch operate** **•Defective limit switch** (Poor contact of limit switch connector) **•Set is defective air inlet panel**	Replacement, repair	119-10
						Indoor unit control PCB	**•Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective limit switch input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
WAIT or INSPECT I/U		—	—	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	• Poor connection, breakage of indoor-outdoor units connection wire	Repair	119-11 — 119-14
						Remote control	• Improper setting of master and slave by remote control		
E1		—	—	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control wires (Noise)	**•Poor connection of remote control signal wire (White)** * For wire breaking at power ON, the LED is OFF **•Intrusion of noise in remote control wire**	Repair	119-16
						Remote control indoor unit control PCB	*• Defective remote control or indoor unit control PCB (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of remote control or PCB	
E5		ON	6-time flash	2-time flash	Keeps flashing	Indoor-outdoor units connection wire	**•Poor connection of wire between indoor-outdoor units during operation (disconnection, loose connection)** **•Anomalous communication between indoor-outdoor units by noise, etc.**	Repair	119-17
		ON	6-time flash	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	(Noise)	**•CPU-runaway on outdoor unit control PCB**	Power reset or Repair	
						Outdoor unit control PCB	*•Occurrence of defective outdoor unit control PCB on the way of power source (defective communication circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
		ON	6-time flash	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Outdoor unit control PCB	**•Defective outdoor unit control PCB on the way of power source**	Replacement	
						Fuse	**•Blown fuse**		
E6	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	ON	Stays OFF	6-time flash	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor 1	**•Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor 1** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature sensor 1 connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor 1	119-18
						Indoor unit control PCB	**•Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
		3-time flash	ON	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor 2	**•Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor 2** (defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) • Poor contact of temperature sensor 2 connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor 2	
						Indoor unit control PCB	**•Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
No-indication		2-time flash	ON	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor room temperature sensor	**•Defective indoor room temperature sensor**(defective element, broken wire, short-circuit) •Poor contact of temperature sensor connector	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	119-19
						Indoor unit control PCB	**•Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?**	Replacement of PCB	
E10		—	—	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Number of connected indoor units	**•When multi-unit control by remote control is performed, the number of units is over**	Repair	119-20
E14		3-time flash	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Indoor unit No. setting	•No master is assigned to slaves.	Repair	119-21
						Rcmote control wires	•Anomalous remote control wire connection, broken wire between master and slave units		
E16		6-time flash	ON	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Fan motor	**•Defective fan motor**	Replacement, repair	119-22
						Indoor unit control PCB	**•Defective indoor unit control PCB**	Replacement	
E28		—	—	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Remote control temperature sensor	• Broken wire of remote control temperature sensor	Repair	119-23

Note (1) *mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(ii) Outdoor unit

1) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

Remote control		Indoor control PCB		Outdoor control PCB		Outdoor inventer PCB	Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Red LED	Green LED (1)	Yellow LED				
E35		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• Higher outdoor heat exchanger temperature	Repair	98
							Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	Replacement of temperature sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E36		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Higher discharge temperature	Repair	99
							Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E37		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	100
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E38		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor air temperature sensor	• Defective outdoor air temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	101
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E39		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	102
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E40		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Rising high pressure (Operation of 63H1) • Service valve closing operation	Repair	103
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective 63H input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E41		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Inverter PCB or radiator fin	• Power transistor overheat	Replacement of PCB or Repair	104
E42		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	9-time flash	Outdoor control PCB compressor	• Current cut (Anomalous compressor over-current)	Replacement of PCB	105・106
							Installation or operating condition	• Service valve closing operation	Repair	
E44		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Outdoor control PCB	• Liquid flooding error	Replacement of PCB	107・108
E45		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor control PCB	• Anomalous outdoor control PCB communication	Service valve opening check	109
							Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB communication	Replacement of PCB	
E48		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor fan motor	• Anomalous outdoor fan motor	Replacement, repair	110
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective motor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E49		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Low pressure error • Service valve closing operation	Repair	111・112
							Low pressure sensor	• Anomalous low pressure, broken wire of low pressure sensor or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of sensor	
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E51		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB	Replacement of PCB	113
E53		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Suction pipe temperature sensor	• Defective suction pipe temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature sensor	114
							Outdoor control PCB	*• Defective outdoor PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E54		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Low pressure sensor	• Defective low pressure sensor	Replacement of sensor	115
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E55		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Compressor under dome temperature sensor	• Defective compressor under dome temperature sensor (Model FDC250 only)	Replacement of temperature sensor	116
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)? (Model FDC250 only)	Replacement of control PCB	
E57		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Operation status	• Shortage in refrigerant quantity	Repair	117
							Installation status	• Service valve closing operation	Service valve opening check	
E59		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	5-time flash	Keeps flashing	4-time flash	Compressor inverter PCB	• Anomalous compressor startup	Replacement	118・119

Note (1) * mark in the description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

2) SRK series

FDC200VSA-W

Remote control		Indoor unit display		Outdoor unit control PCB		Outdoor inverter PCB	Location of trouble	Description of trouble	Repair method	Reference page
Error code	Red LED	RUN light	TIMER light	Red LED	Green LED	Yellow LED				
E35	Keeps flashing	ON	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	Keeps flashing	Installation or operating condition	• Higher outdoor heat exchanger temperature	Repair	119-24
							Outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor	Replacement of temperature thermistor	
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E36		ON	5-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Higher discharge temperature	Repair	119-25
							temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E37		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor heat exchanger temperature thermistor	• Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	119-26
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E38		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor air temperature thermistor	• Defective outdoor air temperature sensor broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	119-27
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E39		Keeps flashing	4-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Discharge pipe temperature sensor	• Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	119-28
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective temperature sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E40		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Rising high pressure (Operation of 63H1) • Service valve closing operation	Repair	119-29
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective 63H input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E41		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Inverter PCB or radiator fin	• Power transistor overheat	Replacement of PCB or Repair	119-30
E42		ON	1-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	9-time flash	Outdoor unit control PCB compressor	• Current cut (Anomalous compressor over-current)	Replacement of PCB	119-31 • 119-32
							Installation or operating condition	• Service valve closing operation	Repair	
E44		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor control PCB	• Liquid flooding error	Replacement of PCB	119-33 • 119-34
E45		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor unit control PCB	• Anomalous outdoor unit control PCB communication	Replacement of PCB	119-35
							Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB communication		
E48		ON	7-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Outdoor fan motor	• Anomalous outdoor fan motor	Replacement, repair	119-36
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective motor input circuit)?	Replacement of PCB	
E49		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Installation or operating condition	• Low pressure error • Service valve closing operation	Repair	119-37 • 119-38
							Low pressure sensor	• Anomalous low pressure, broken wire of low pressure sensor or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of sensor	
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E51		ON	4-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing	8-time flash	Inverter PCB	• Anomalous inverter PCB	Replacement of PCB	119-39
E53		Keeps flashing	5-time flash	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Suction pipe temperature sensor	• Defective suction pipe temperature sensor, broken wire or poor connector connection	Replacement, repair of temperature thermistor	119-40
							Outdoor unit control PCB	*• Defective outdoor unit PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E54		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Low pressure sensor	• Defective low pressure sensor	Replacement of sensor	119-41
							Outdoor unit control PCB	• Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E55		—	—	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Compressor under-dome temperature sensor	• Defective compressor under-dome temperature sensor	Replacement of temperature sensor	119-42
							Outdoor control PCB	• Defective outdoor control PCB (Defective sensor input circuit)?	Replacement of control PCB	
E57		7-time flash	ON	1-time flash	Keeps flashing		Operation status	• Shortage in refrigerant quantity	Repair	119-43
							Installation status	• Service valve closing operation	Service valve opening check	
E59		—	—	5-time flash	Keeps flashing	4-time flash	Compressor, inverter PCB	•Anomalous compressor startup	Replacement	119-44 • 119-45

Note (1) * mark in the Description of trouble means that, in ordinary diagnosis, it cannot identify the cause definitely, and, if the trouble is repaired by replacing the part, it is judged consequently that the replaced part was defective.

(iii) Option control in-use

1) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

		Indoor unit control PCB		Outdoor unit control PCB		Description of trouble	Repair method
Error code	Red LED	Red LED	Green LED	Red LED	Green LED		
E75	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	• Communication error (Defective communication circuit on the main unit of SC-SL2NA-E or SC-SL4-AE/BE) ete.	Replacement

2) SRK series

		Indoor unit display panel		Outdoor unit control PCB		Description of trouble	Repair method
Error code	Red LED	RUN light	TIMER light	Red LED	Green LED		
E75	Keeps flashing	–	–	Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	• Communication error (Defective communication circuit on the main unit of SL2NA-E or SC-SL4-AE/BE) ete.	Replacement

(iv) Display sequence of error codes or inspection indicator lamps

■ **Occurrence of one kind of error**

Displays are shown respectively according to errors.

■ **Occurrence of plural kinds of error**

Section	Category of display
Error code on remote control Red LED on indoor unit control PCB Red LED on outdoor unit control PCB	• Displays the error of higher priority (When plural errors are persisting) E1>E5>·····>E10>E37>·····E59 • Displays the present errors. (When a new error has occurred after the former error was reset.)

■ **Error detecting timing**

Section	Error description	Error code	Error detecting timing
Indoor	Drain trouble (Float switch activated)	E9	Whenever float switch is activated after 30 seconds had past since power ON.
	Communication error at initial operation	"WAIT"	No communication between indoor and outdoor units is established at initial operation.
	Remote control communication circuit error	E1	Communication between indoor unit and remote control is interrupted for more than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Communication error during operation	E5	Communication between indoor and outdoor units is interrupted for more than 2 minutes continuously after initial communication was established.
	Excessive number of connected indoor units by controlling with one remote control	E10	Whenever excessively connected indoor units is detected after power ON.
	Return air temperature sensor anomaly	E7	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	E6	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 60 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or 70°C or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously
Outdoor	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	E38	-45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.
	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	E37	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature. Or -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON.
	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	E39	-10°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly	E53	-50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous temperature.
	Low pressure sensor anomaly	E54	0V or lower or 4.0V or higher is detected for 5 seconds continuously 3 times within 40 minutes after initial detection of this anomalous pressure.

■ **Information of maintenance**

Remote control display	Maintenance Content	Content
M07	Indoor unit overload alarm	Indoor unit overload alarm setting (Alarm setting temperature (Talm) can be set at 5–10°C.) Cooling : (Return temperature) - (Setting temperature) > Talm. Release below Talm–2°C. Heating : (Setting temperature) - (Return temperature) > Talm. Release below Talm−2°C.
M09	Drain motor overcurrent detection	Overcurrentt of the drain motor is detected. Check the operation of the drain pump.

■ **Error log and reset**

Error indicator	Memorized error log	Reset
Remote control display	• Higher priority error is memorized.	• Stop the unit by pressing the ON/OFF switch of remote control. • If the unit has recovered from anomaly, it can be operated.
Red LED on indoor unit control PCB	• Not memorized.	
Red LED on outdoor unit control PCB	• Memorizes a mode of higher priority.	

■ **Resetting the error log**

1) RC-EX3A

• Resetting the memorized error log in the remote control

You touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Error display" → "Error history" on the TOP screen of remote control.And if you touch "Delete" → "Yes" button,all error log and anomaly data memorized in the remote control are deleted.

• Resetting the memorized error log in the indoor unit

You touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Error display" → "Error anomaly data" on the TOP screen of remote control.

The remote control transmits error log erase command to the indoor unit when "Yes" button is pressed on the erase anomaly data screen.

Receiving the command, the indoor unit erase the log and answer the status of no error.

2) RC-E5

• Resetting the memorized error log in the remote control

Holding down "CHECK" button, press "TIMER" button to reset the error log memorized in the remote control.

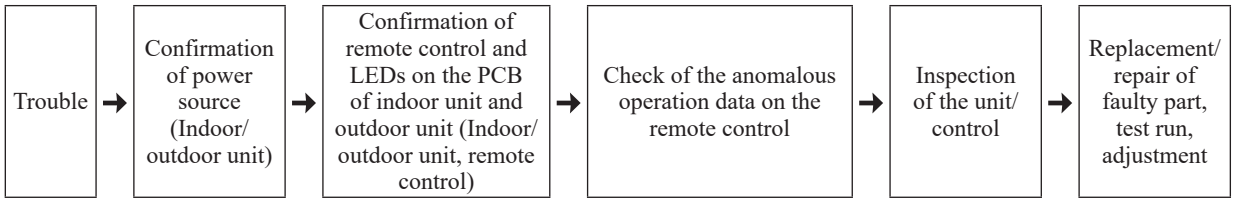
• Resetting the memorized error log in the indoor unit

The remote control transmits error log erase command to the indoor unit when "VENTI" button is pressed while holding down "CHECK" button.

Receiving the command, the indoor unit erase the log and answer the status of no error.

(2) Troubleshooting procedure

When any trouble has occurred, inspect as follows. Details of respective inspection method will be described on later pages.



(3) Troubleshooting at the indoor unit

(a) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

With the troubleshooting, find out any defective part by checking the voltage (AC, DC), resistance, etc. at respective connectors at around the indoor unit PCB, according to the inspection display or operation status of unit (the compressor does not run, fan does not run, the 4-way valve does not switch, etc.), and replace or repair in the unit of following part.

(i) Replacement part related to indoor unit PCB's

Control PCB, power source PCB, temperature sensor (return air, indoor heat exchanger), remote control switch, limit switch, transformer and fuse

Note (1) With regard to parts of high voltage circuits and refrigeration cycle, judge it according to ordinary inspection methods.

(ii) Instruction of how to replace indoor unit control PCB

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the replacement in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, WARNING and CAUTION.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.

⚠ WARNING	Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
⚠ CAUTION	Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.

- After completing the replacement, do commissioning to confirm there are no anomaly.

⚠ WARNING

- Replacement should be performed by the specialist.
  If you replace the PCB by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as electric shock or fire.
- Replace the PCB correctly according to these instructions.
  Improper replacement may cause electric shock or fire.
- Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.
  Replacement during the applying the current would cause the electric shock, unit failure or improper running.
  It would cause the damage of connected equipment such as fan motor,etc.
- Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- Check the connection of wiring to PCB correctly before turning on the power, after replacement.
  Defectiveness of replacement may cause electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

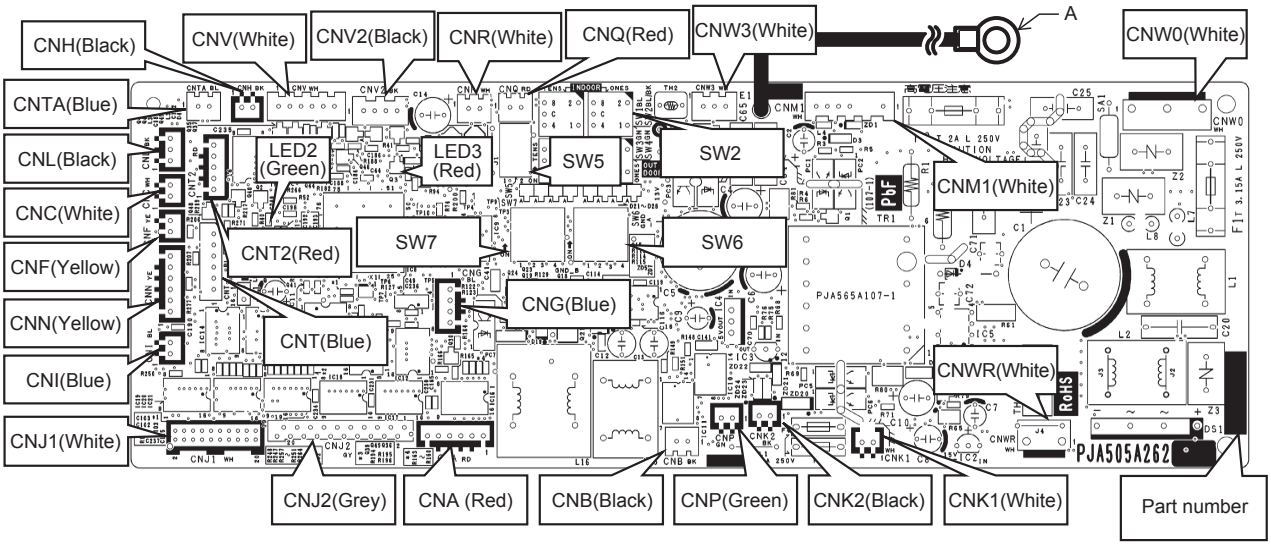
- In connecting connector onto the PCB, connect not to deform the PCB. It may cause breakage or malfunction.
- Insert connecter securely, and hook stopper. It may cause fire or improper running.
- Bundle the cables together so as not to be pinched or be tensioned. It may cause malfunction or electric shock for disconnection or deformation.

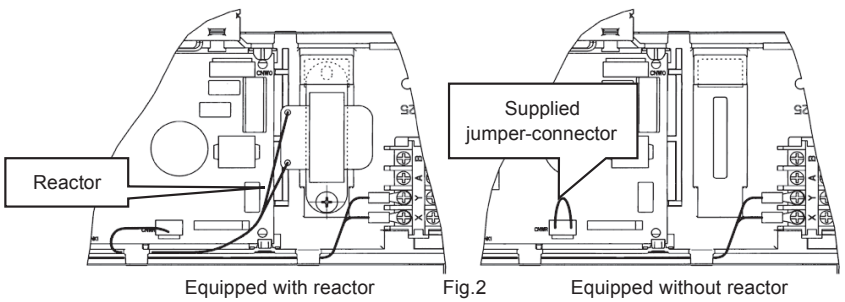
1) Model FDT series

a) Replace the control PCB

i) Unscrew terminal (Arrow A) of the "E1" wiring (yellow/green) that is connected to PCB.
ii) Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
iii) Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
iv) Switch setting must be same setting as that of the removed PCB.
v) Reconnect the all wirngs to the PCB, that was removed in ii).
vi) Rescrew the terminal (Arrow A) of the "E1" wiring, that was removed in i).
vii) When there is no wire to connect to CNWR, connect the supplied jumper-connector. (Refer to Fig.2) If nothing is connected to CNWR, it doesn't work even when power is turned on.

b) Control PCB (※Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.)





Equipped with reactor Fig.2 Equipped without reactor

PSC012D050A

2) Model FDTC series

PSC012D050 C

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

i) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

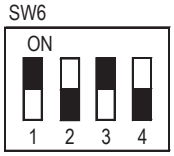
Item	Switch	Content of control			
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control			
Master / Slave setting		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
	SW5-1	—	—	○	○
	SW5-2	—	○	—	○
Test run	SW7-1	—	Normal		
		○	Operation check/drain pump motor test run		

○:ON —:OFF

ii) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
50VH	○	—	○	—
60VH	○	○	○	—



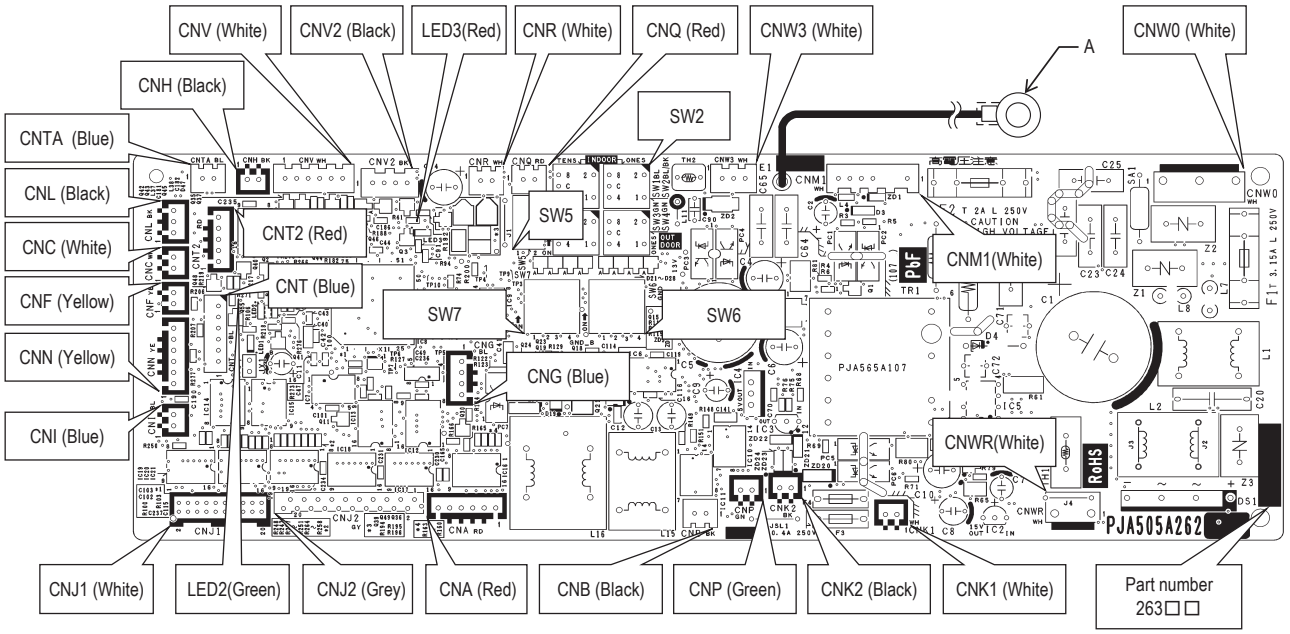
Example setting for 50VH

iii) Replace the PCB

① Unscrew terminal (Arrow A) of the "E1" wiring (yellow/green) that is connected to PCB.
② Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
③ Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
④ Switch setting must be same setting as that of the removed PCB.
⑤ Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
⑥ Screw back the terminal(Arrow A) of the "E1" wiring, that was removed in ①.

iv) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



3) Models FDU, FDUM, FDE series

PSB012D990 Ⓓ
PSB012D990B Ⓓ

a) Control PCB

Replace and set up the PCB according to this instruction.

i) Set to an appropriate address and function using switch on PCB.

Select the same setting with the removed PCB.

Item	Switch	Content of control			
Address	SW2	Plural indoor units control by 1 remote control			
Master /Slave setting		Master	Slave1	Slave2	Slave3
	SW5-1	—	—	○	○
	SW5-2	—	○	—	○
Test run	SW7-1	—	Normal		
		○	Operation check/drain motor test run		

○:ON —:OFF

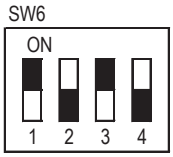
ii) Set to an appropriate capacity using the model selector switch(SW6).

Select the same capacity with the PCB removed from the unit.

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
50VH	○	—	○	—
60VH	○	○	○	—
71VH	○	—	—	○

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
100VH	○	○	—	○
125VH	—	—	○	○
140VH	○	—	○	○

SW6	-1	-2	-3	-4
200VH	—	○	○	○
250VH	○	○	○	○
280VH	○	○	○	○



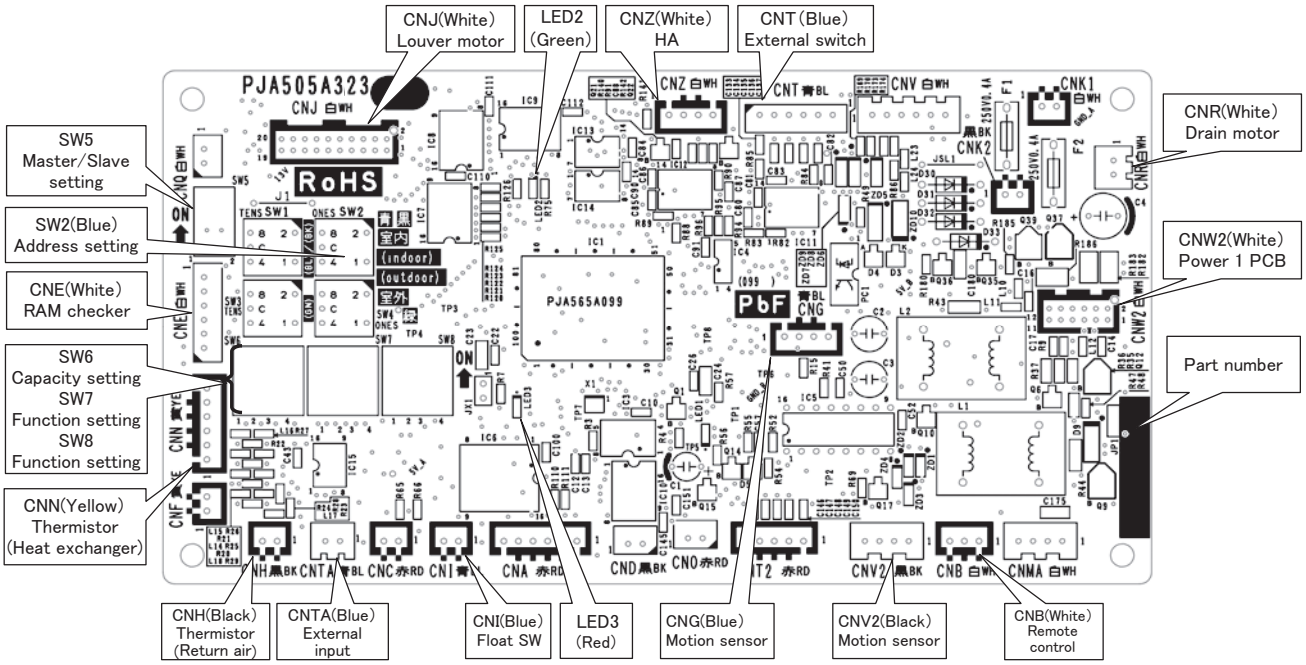
Example setting for 50VH

iii) Replace the PCB

① Exchange PCB after detaching all connectors connected with the PCB.
② Fix the PCB so as not to pitch the wiring.
③ Connect connectors to the PCB. Match the wiring connector to the connector color on the PCB and connect it.

iv) Control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



b) Power PCB
FDU series

PSC012D035

This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

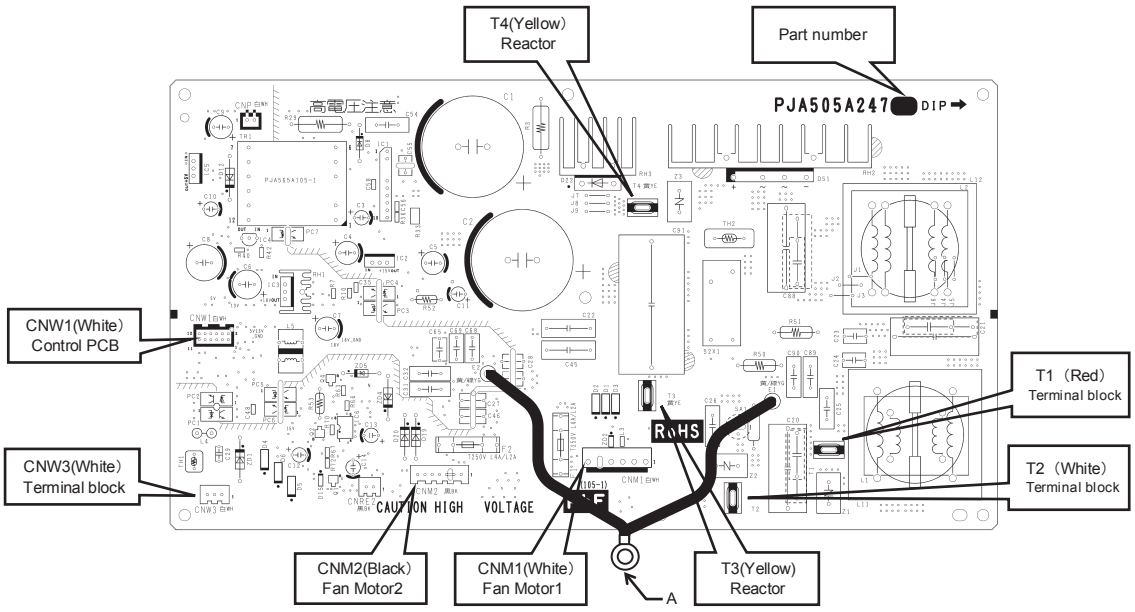
i) Replace the PCB

①. Unscrew terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring(yellow/green) that is connected to PCB.
②. Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
③. Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
④. Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
⑤. Screw back the terminal(Arrow A) of the "E2" wiring, that was removed in ①.

ii) Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.

• Models FDU200VH, 250VH, 280VH



FDUM, FDE series

This PCB is a general PCB. Replace the PCB according to this instruction.

i) Replace the PCB

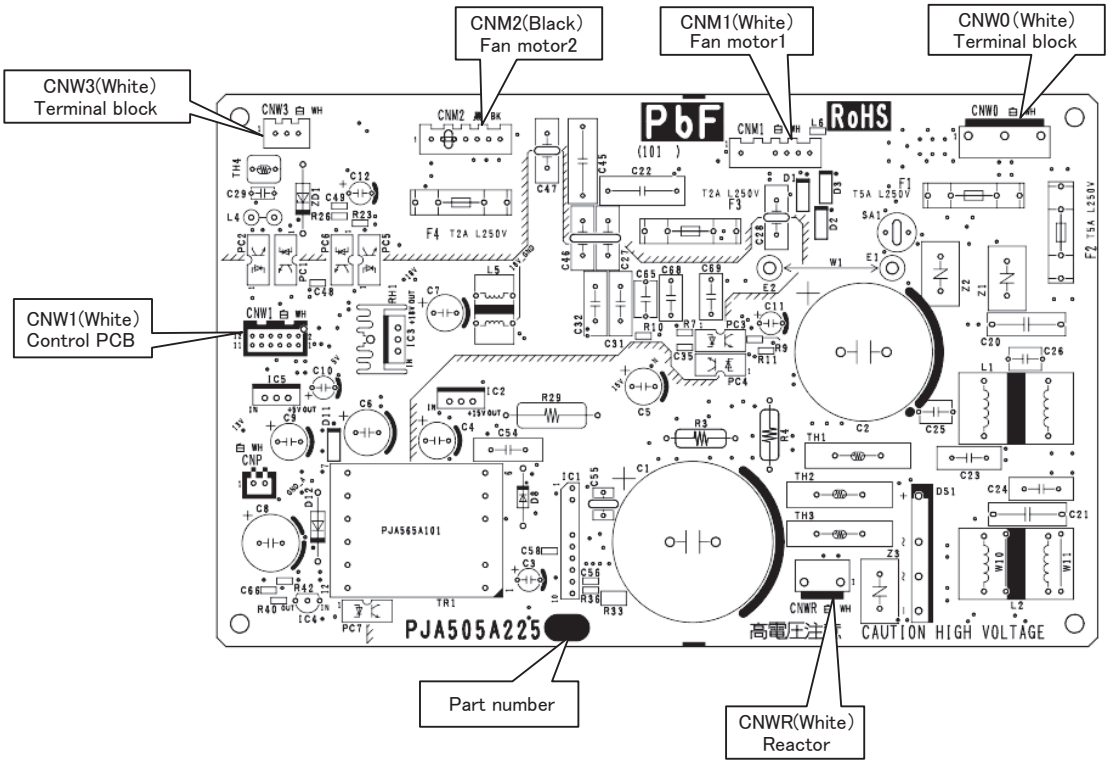
① Unscrew terminal of the wiring(yellow/green) connected to terminal block (CNWO) from the box.
② Replace the PCB only after all the wirings connected to the connector are removed.
③ Fix the board such that it will not pinch any of the wires.
④ Reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Wiring connector color should match with the color of connector of the PCB.
⑤ Screw back the terminal of wiring, that was removed in ①.

ii) Power PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.

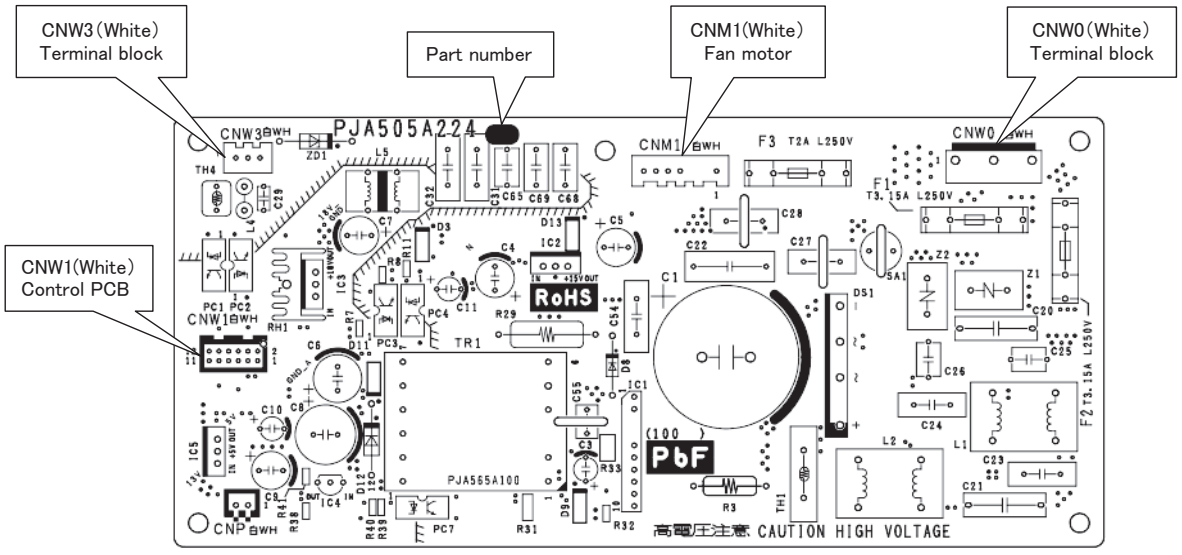
• Models FDUM71VH, 100VH, 125VH, 140VH

PSB012D993



• Models FDE50-140VH

PSB012D992 Ⓒ



c) Motor control PCB (FDU200VH, 250VH, 280VH)

PSC012D036

① Replace the PCB

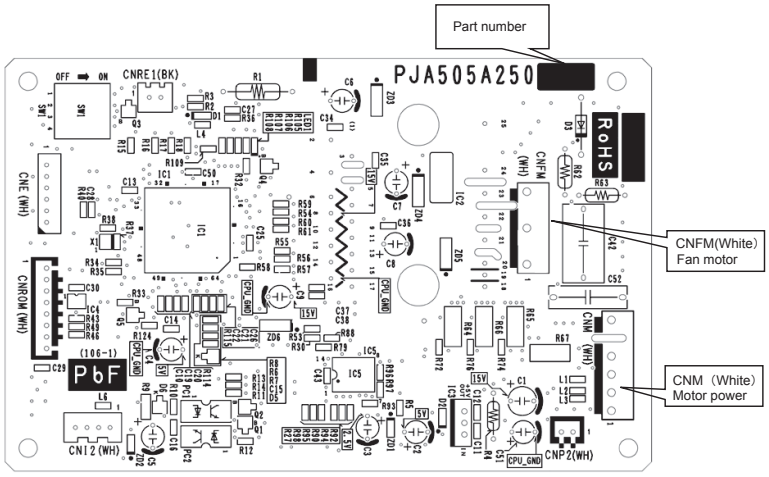
i) Take off the connection of connector and remove the screw of power transistor then remove the PCB. Wipe off the silicon grease neatly on the control's radiation heat fins.

ii) Before installing the power transistor on the new PCB, **apply uniformly a bundled of silicon grease** first on the surface of power transistor. Make sure it is applied to prevent **damage on power transistor,** and install the PCB not to pinch the wirings.

iii) Tighten the screw of power transistor and reconnect the wirings to the PCB. Confirm the connection and don't use soldering in the connection. **Tighten properly the power transistor with a screw and make sure there is no slack. Power transistor can be damage** if not properly tighten. (Recommended power transistor tightening torque:0.59-0.78N·m)

② Fan motor control PCB

Parts mounting are different by the kind of PCB.



●DIP switch setting list

• FDT, FDTC, FDUM, FDE series

Switch	Description		Default setting		Remark
SW2	Address No. setting at plural indoor units control by 1 R/C		0		0-F
SW5-1	Master/Slave setting	Master*/Slave	OFF		See table 2.
SW5-2			OFF		
SW6-1	Model selection		As per model		See table 1.
SW6-2					
SW6-3					
SW6-4					
SW7-1	Test run, drain pump motor	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW7-2	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW7-3	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW7-4	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW8-1	Anti-freeze control	Valid/Invalid*	OFF	Invalid	
SW8-2	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW8-3	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
SW8-4	Reserved		OFF		Keep OFF
JSL1	Superlink terminal spare	Normal*/switch to spare	With		

Note(1) : SW8 : FDE only　　* Default setting

Table 1: Indoor unit model selection with SW6-1-SW6-4

Switch	50VH	60VH	71VH	100VH	125VH	140VH
SW6-1	ON	ON	ON	ON	OFF	ON
SW6-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON	OFF	OFF
SW6-3	ON	ON	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
SW6-4	OFF	OFF	ON	ON	ON	ON

Table 2: Indoor unit Master/Slave setting with SW5-1,SW5-2

Switch	SW5-1	SW5-2
Master	OFF	OFF
Slave1	OFF	ON
Slave2	ON	OFF
Slave3	ON	ON

• FDU

Switches	Description		Default setting		Remark
SW2	Address No. setting at plural indoor units control by 1 R/C		0		0-F
SW6-1	Model selection		As per model		See table 3.
SW6-2					
SW6-3					
SW6-4					
SW7-1	Test run, Drain pump motor	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Normal	
SW7-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW7-3	Powerful mode	Valid*/Invalid	ON	Valid	
SW7-4	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-1	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-2	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-3	Reserved		OFF		keep OFF
SW8-4	Setting of the external static pressure	Normal*/Range expand	OFF	Normal	
JSL1	Superlink terminal spare	Normal*/switch to spare	With		

* Default setting

Table 3: Indoor unit model selection with SW6-1-SW6-4

	200VH	250VH	280VH
SW6-1	OFF	ON	ON
SW6-2	ON	ON	ON
SW6-3	ON	ON	ON
SW6-4	ON	ON	ON

(b) SRK series

(i) Cautions

1) If you are disassembling and checking an air-conditioner, be sure to turn off the power before beginning. When working on indoor units, let the unit sit for about 1 minute after turning off the power before you begin work.
2) When taking out printed circuit boards, be sure to do so without exerting force on the circuit boards or package components.
3) When disconnecting and connecting connectors, take hold of the connector housing and do not pull on the lead wires.

(ii) Items to check before troubleshooting

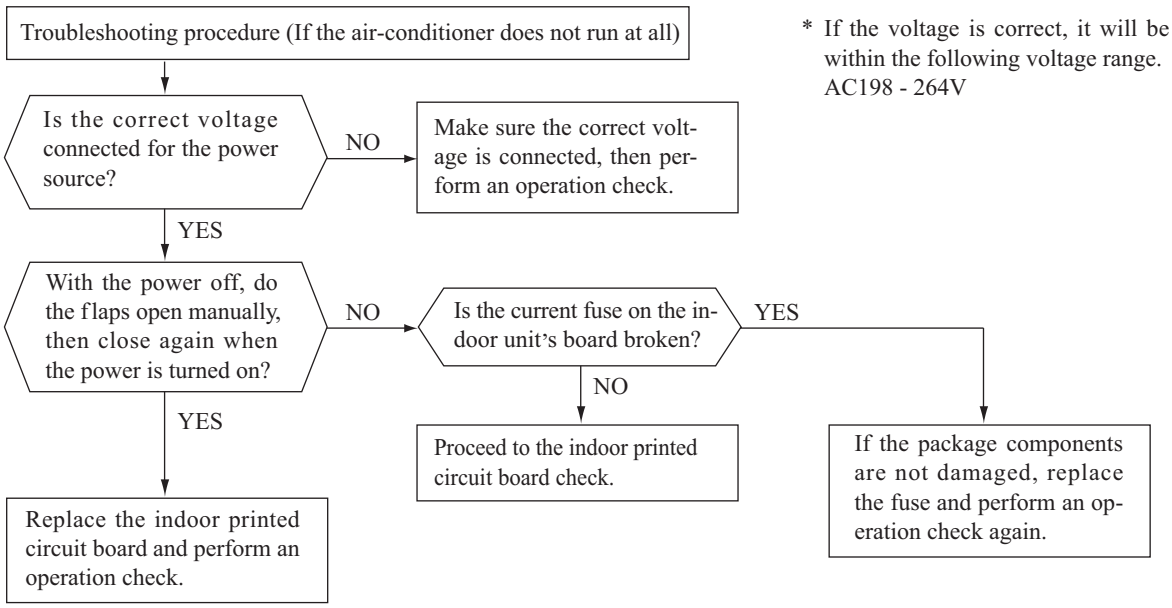
1) Is the air-conditioner running? Is it displaying any self-diagnosis information?
2) Is a power source with the correct voltage connected?
3) Are the control lines connecting the indoor and outdoor units wired correctly and connected securely?
4) Is the outdoor unit's service valve open?

(iii) Troubleshooting procedure (If the air-conditioner does not run at all)

If the air-conditioner does not run at all, diagnose the trouble using the following troubleshooting procedure.

Important When all the following conditions are satisfied, we say that the air-conditioner will not run at all.

1) The RUN light does not light up.
2) The flaps do not open.

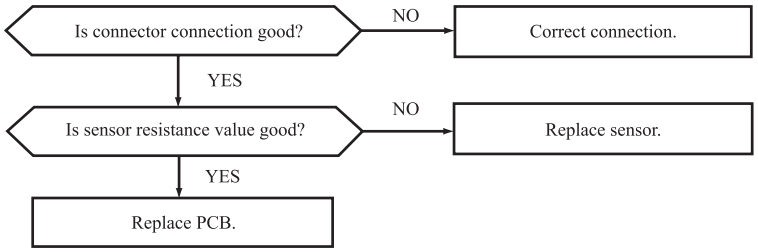


* If the voltage is correct, it will be within the following voltage range.
AC198 - 264V

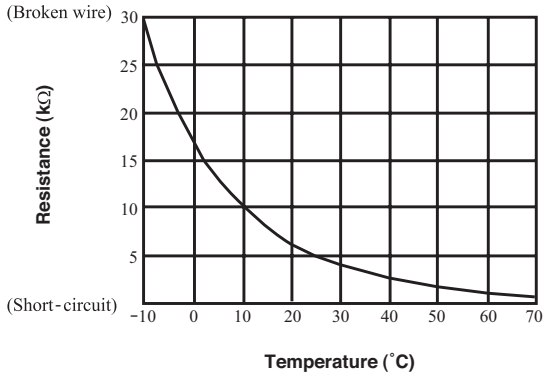
(iv) Inspection procedures corresponding to detail of trouble

Sensor error

[Broken sensor wire, connector poor connection]

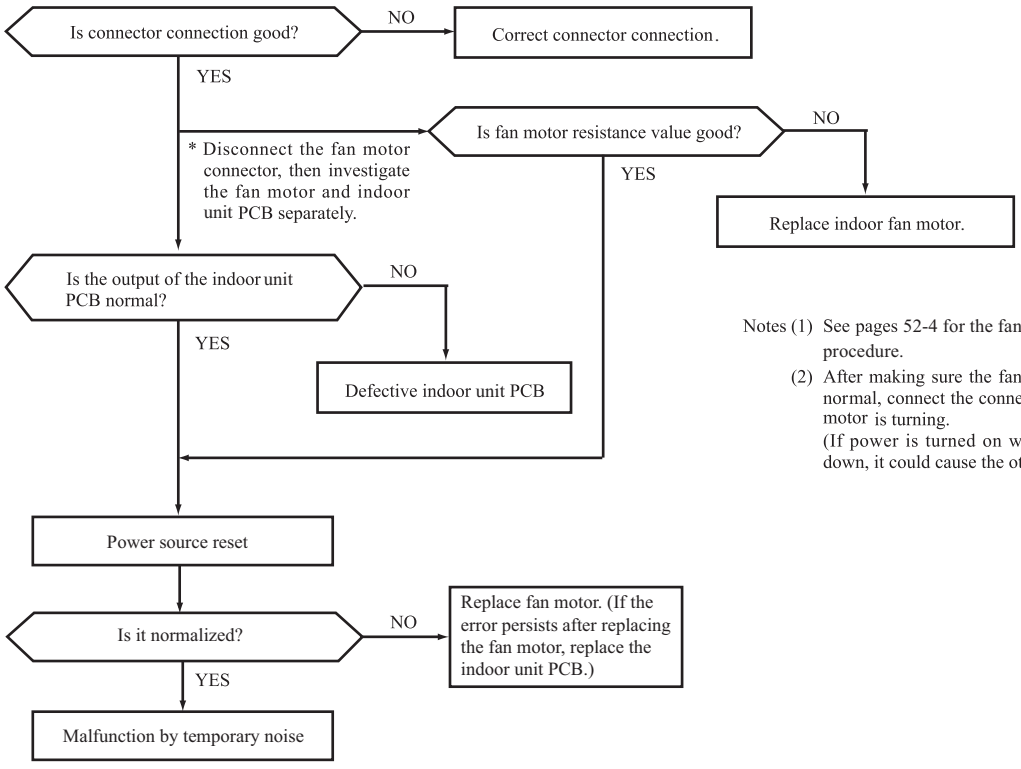


◆ **Sensor temperature characteristics (Room temperature, indoor heat exchanger temperature)**



Indoor fan motor error

[Defective fan motor, connector poor connection, defective indoor unit PCB]

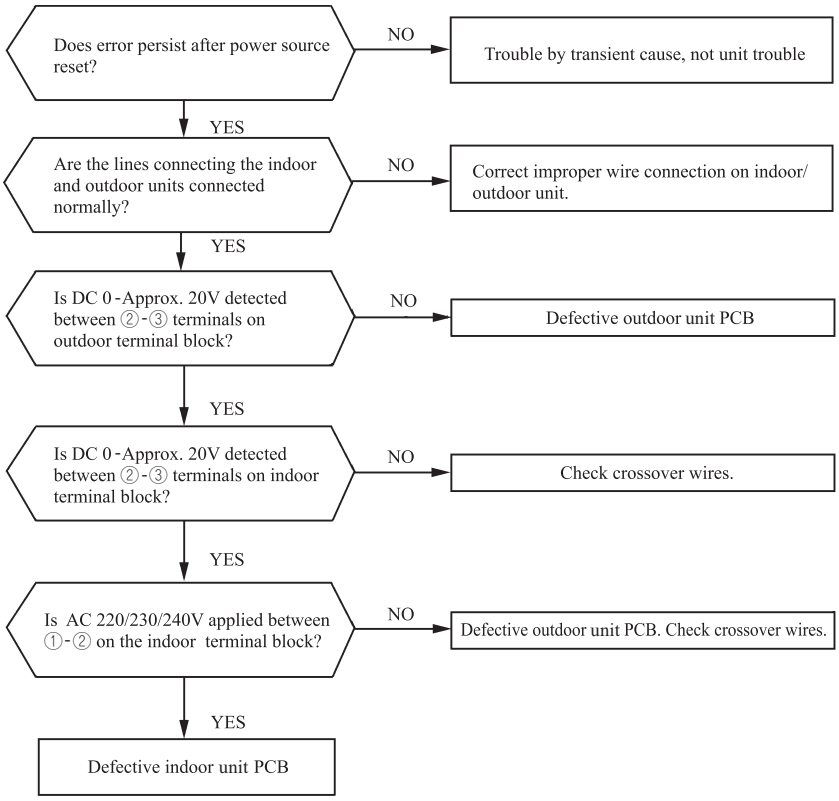


Notes (1) See pages 52-4 for the fan motor and indoor unit PCB check procedure.

(2) After making sure the fan motor and indoor unit PCB are normal, connect the connectors and confirm that the fan motor is turning.
(If power is turned on while one or the other is broken down, it could cause the other to break down also.)

Error of signal transmission

[Wiring error including power cable, defective indoor/ outdoor unit PCB]



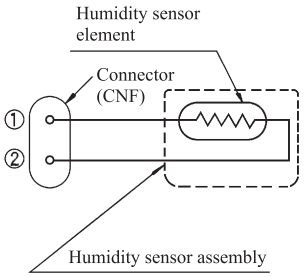
(v) Phenomenon observed after short-circuit, wire breakage on sensor

Sensor	Operation mode	Phenomenon	
		Short-circuit	Disconnected wire
Room temperature sensor	Cooling	Release of continuous compressor operation command.	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.
	Heating	Continuous compressor operation command is not released.	Release of continuous compressor operation command.
Heat exchanger temperature sensor	Cooling	Freezing cycle system protection trips and stops the compressor.	Continiuous compressor operation command is not released. (Anti-frosting)
	Heating	High pressure control mode (Compressor stop command)	Hot keep (Indoor fan stop)
Humidity sensor	Cooling	Refer to the table below.	Refer to the table below.
	Heating	Normal system operation is possible.	

■ Humidity sensor operation

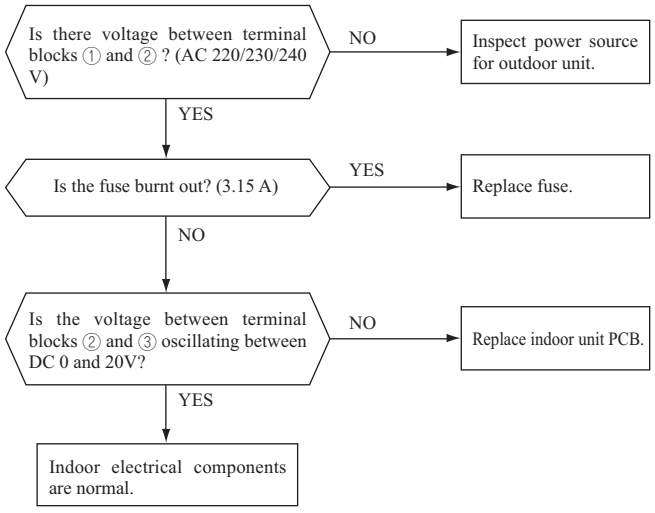
Failure mode		Control input circuit reading	Air-conditioning system operation
Disconnected wire	① Disconnected wire	Humidity reading is 0%.	Anti-condensation control is not done.
	② Disconnected wire		
	①② Disconnected wire		
Short-circuit	① and ② are short-circuited.	Humidity reading is 100%.	Anti-condensation control keep doing.

Remark: Do not perform a continuity check of the humidity sensor with a tester. If DC current is applied, it could damage the sensor.



(vi) Checking the indoor electrical equipment

1) Indoor unit PCB check procedure



2) Indoor fan motor check procedure

This is a diagnostic procedure for determining if the indoor fan motor or the indoor unit PCB is broken down.

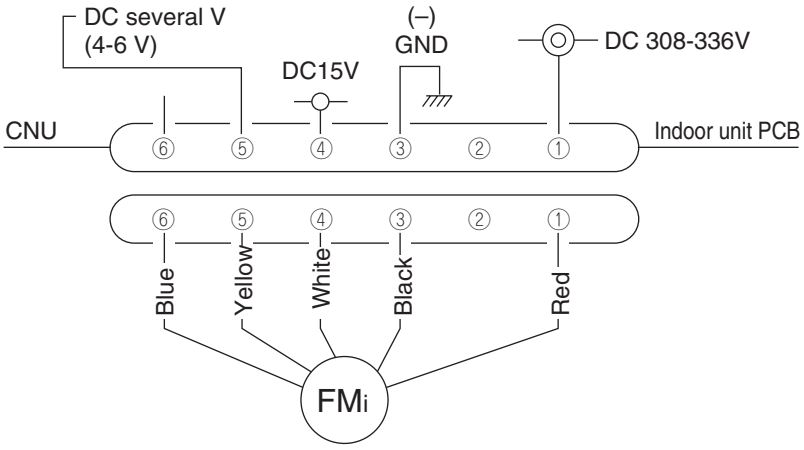
a) Indoor unit PCB output check

i) Turn off the power.

ii) Remove the front panel, then disconnect the fan motor lead wire connector.

iii) Turn on the power. If the unit operates when the ON/OFF button is pressed, if trouble is detected after the voltages in the following figure are output for approximately 30 seconds, it means that the indoor unit PCB is normal and the fan motor is broken down.

If the voltages in the following figure are not output at connector pins No. ①, ④ and ⑤, the indoor unit PCB has failed and the fan motor is normal.



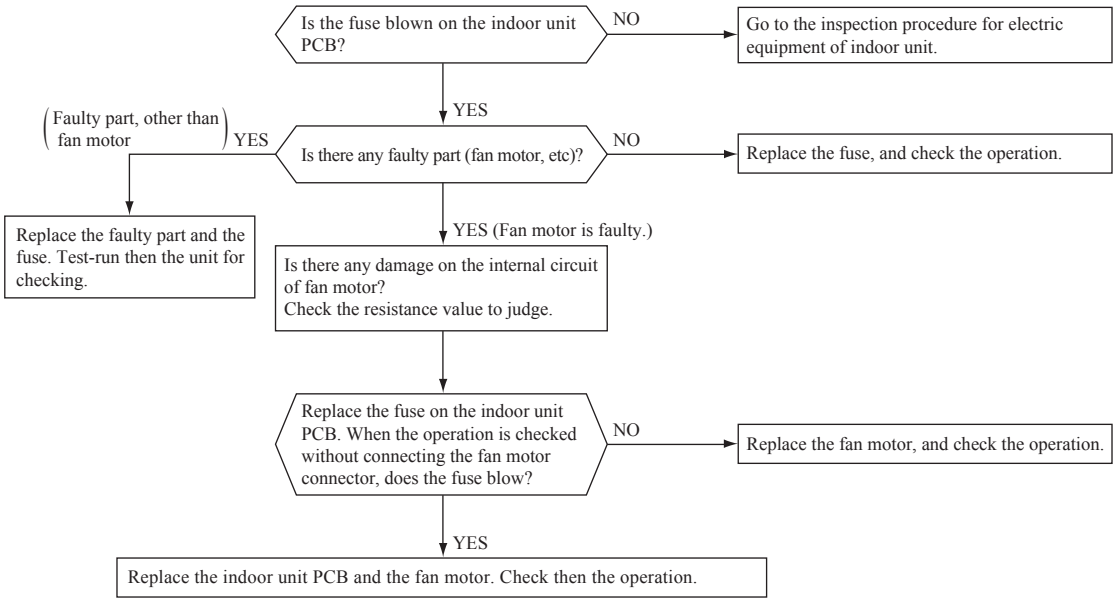
Measuring point	Voltage range when normal
① - ③	DC 308 - 336V
④ - ③	DC 15V
⑤ - ③	DC several V (4 - 6V)

b) Fan motor resistance check

Measuring point	Resistance when normal
① - ③ (Red - Black)	20 MΩ or higher
④ - ③ (White - Black)	20 kΩ or higher

Notes (1) Remove the fan motor and measure it without power connected to it.
(2) If the measured value is below the value when the motor is normal, it means that the fan motor is faulty.

(vii) Inspection procedure for blown fuse on the indoor unit PCB



(4) Troubleshooting at the outdoor unit

When troubleshooting the outdoor unit, firstly assess the overview of malfunction and try to presume the cause and the faulty part by checking the error code dispalyed on the remote control and flashing pattern of indicator lamps (Red LED and Green LED), and then proceed further inspection and remedy it.

Self-diagnosis system by microcomputor on indoor unit and outdoor unit PCB can assist to find the cause of malfunction smoothly by making a diagnosis of not only the anomaly of microcomputer, but also the anomaly in power source system, installation space, overload resulting from improper charging amount of refrigerant and etc.

Unless the power is reset, the error log is saved in memory and the inspection indicator lamps on outdoor unit PCB keep flashing after automatical recovering from malfunction.

After automatical recovering from malfunction, if any another error mode which has a higher priority than the previous error saved in memory occurs, it is overwritten in memory and is displayed.

[Reset of power source]

Be sure to avoid electrical shock, when replacing or checking the outdoor unit control PCB, because some voltage is still retained in the electrolytic capacitor on the PCB even after shutting down the power source to the outdoor unit.

Be sure to start repairing work, after confirming that the red LED or green LED on the PCB has been extiguished for more than 10 seconds after more than 3 minutes had been passed since power shut down, and reconfirming that voltage has been discharged sufficiently by measuring the voltage (DC) between both terminals of electrolytic capacitor (C58) (Measurment of voltage may be disturbed by the moisture-proof coating. In such case, remove the coating and measure it by taking care of avoiding electrical shock)

(a) Module of part to be replaced for outdoor unit control

Outdoor unit control PCB, Inverter PCB, Temperature sensor (of outdoor heat exchanger, discharge pipe, outdoor air, IPM, suction pipe and under dome), Fuses (for power source and control PCB), Noise filter, Capacitor and Reactor.

(b) Replacement procedure of outdoor control PCB

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠WARNING	Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.
⚠CAUTION	Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

• Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

PCA012D110

Exchange the control PCB according to the following procedure.

1. Exchange the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
2. Measurement was done on both ends of connector (CNA1) during measurement, **the voltage (DC) might charged the electrolytic capacitor, be sure that the voltage is discharged sufficiently (10V of less)**. (Refer to Fig.2)
3. Disconnect the connectors from the control PCB. (Refer to Fig.1)
4. Disconnect the white or blue wiring passing through CT1 on the PCB before exchanging the PCB.
5. Match the setting switches (SW3-5, 7, JSW1) with the former PCB.
6. Tighten up a screw after passing white of blue wiring through CT1 of the changed.
7. Please connect the connectors with the same place. (Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted**.)

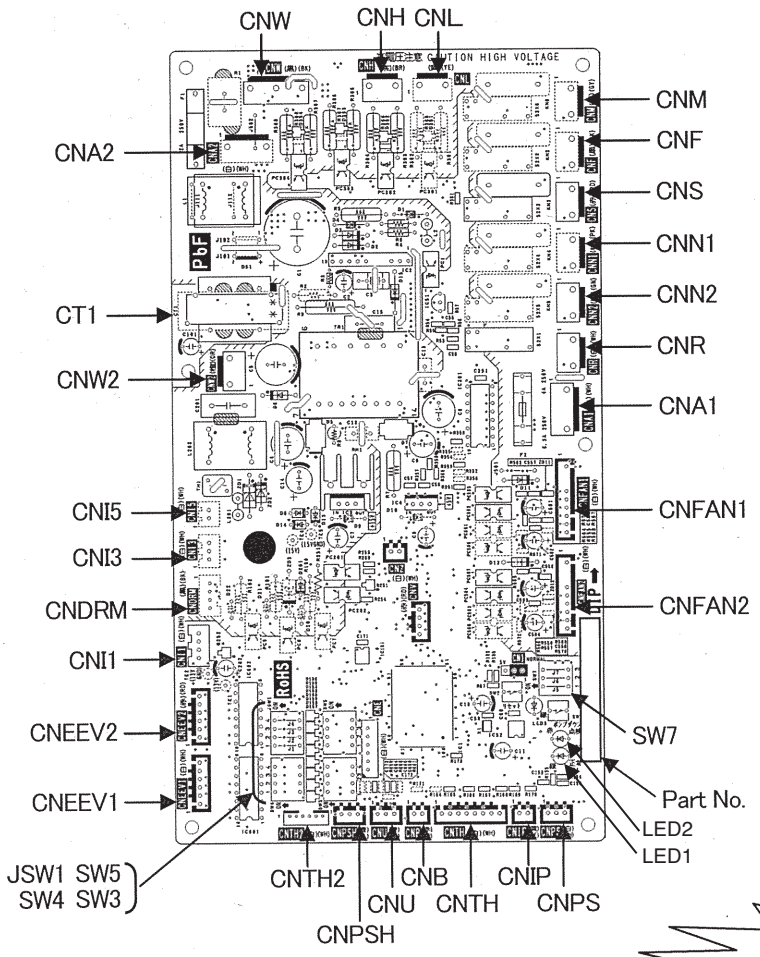
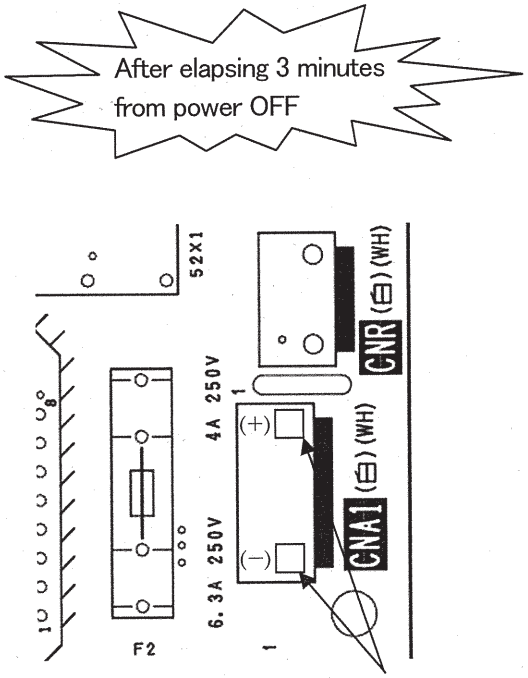
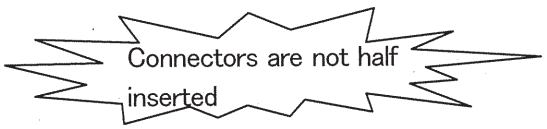


Fig. 1 Parts arrangement view



Voltage measurement parts
CNA1 (Between 1 pin and 4 pin)

Fig. 2 Enlarged view of parts arrangement



(c) Outdoor inverter PCB replacement procedure

Precautions for Safety

- Since the following precaution is the important contents for safety, be sure to observe them. WARNING and CAUTION are described as follows:

⚠ WARNING Indicates an imminently hazardous situation which will result in death or serious injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which may result in minor or moderate injury if proper safety procedures and instructions are not adhered to.

⚠ WARNING

- Securely replace the PCB according to this procedure. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.
- Be sure to check that the power source for the outdoor unit is turned OFF before replacing the PCB. The PCB replacement under current-carrying will cause an electric shock or fire.
- After finishing the PCB replacement, check that wiring is correctly connected with the PCB before power distribution. If the PCB is incorrectly replaced, it will cause an electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- Band the wiring so as not to tense because it will cause an electric shock.

Replace the inverter PCB according to the following procedure.

PCB012D057A D

• Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

Replace the inverter PCB (Fig.1) according to the following procedure.

1) Replace the PCB **after elapsing 3 minutes from power OFF**.
2) In the situation that harnesses are connected to control PCB, **be sure to measure voltage (DC) of two places ((A), (B))** and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig.2)
3) Remove the harnesses from bands, clips and connectors on the control PCB. Then, remove the appointed screws (4 places) of a control. (Refer toFig.3)
4) Open main layer and **measure voltage (DC) of aplace (C)** and check that **the voltage is discharged sufficiently**. (Refer to Fig.4)
5) Disconnect connectors from the inverter PCB (Refer to Fig.1), remove a snubber capacitor (Refer to Fig.4) and harnesses ("P", "N" ,"U", "V" and "W"), and exchange the inverter PCB then. In the situation of being opening main layer, do not press the control from above. It will cause the product deformation or injury.
6) Match the setting of switches (JSW10, 11) of new PCB with former PCB.
7) After exchanging the inverter PCB, install the snubber capacitor to power transistor (Refer to Fig.5), and reconnect the connectors and the harnesses as before. (Confirm the **connectors are not half inserted**.)
   Be careful not to pinch the wiring at the time of closing main layer. The wiring is damaged, and it will cause a short circuit or fire.

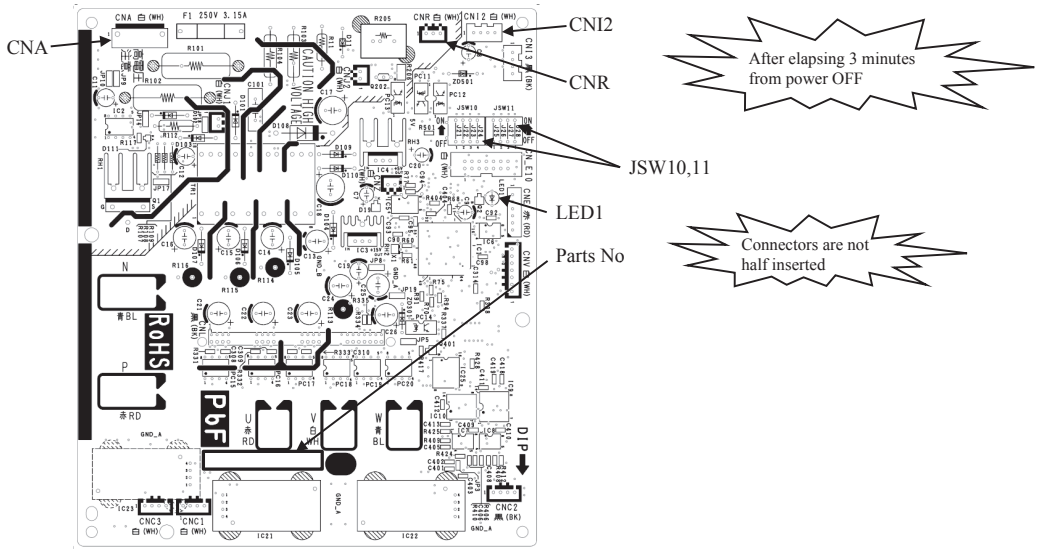


Fig.1 Parts arrangement view of inverter PCB

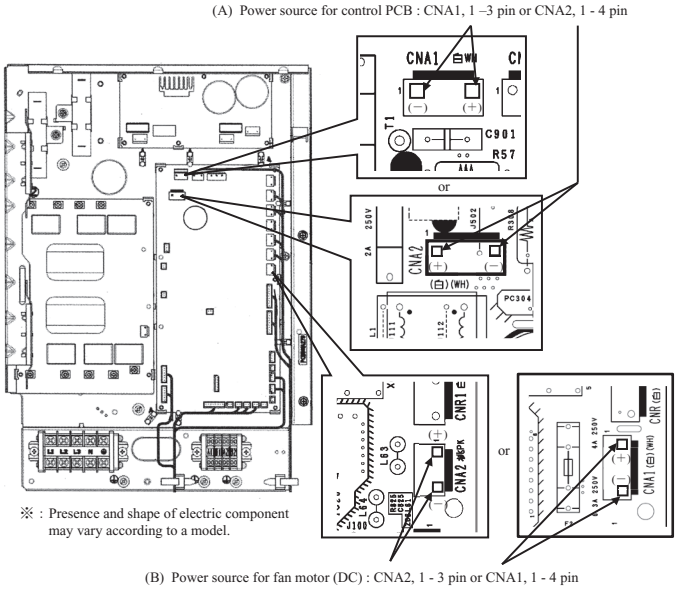


Fig.2 Voltage measurement points

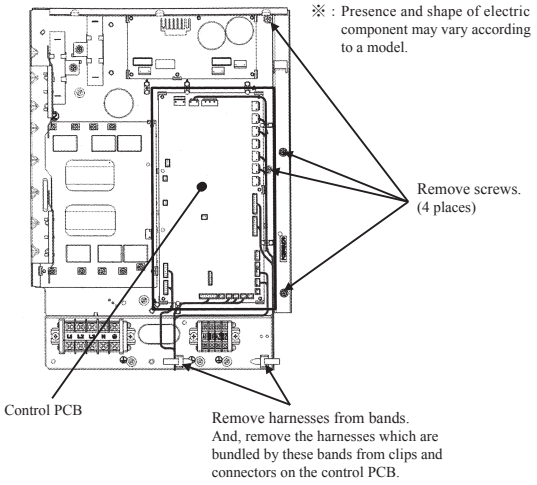


Fig.3 Target places which are removed harnesses and screws

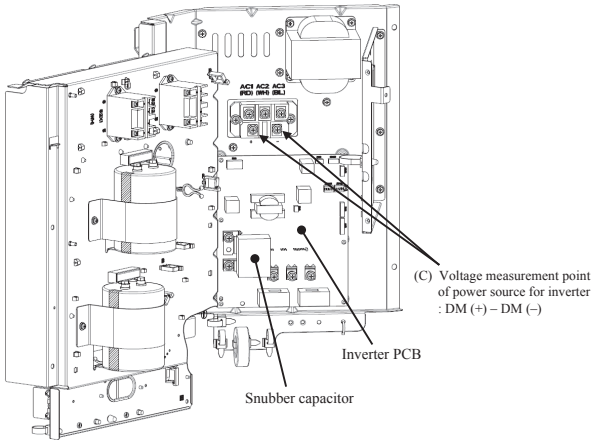
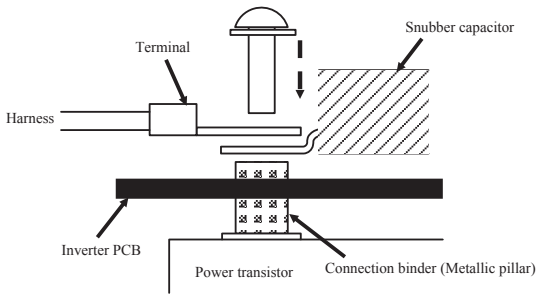


Fig.4 Installation place of inverter PCB



Procedure on tightening harness (Snubber capacitor) and power transistor with screw.
A metallic connection binder is set in each hole of the inverter PCB of "P", "N", "U", "V", and "W" beforehand.
Then tighten the harness (Snubber capacitor) and the power transistor with the screw together.
(Set the harness wires to be fixed to "U" and "W" with screws in respective holes after passing them through IC21 and 22.)
(Connect the snubber capacitor with "P" and "N".)

Fig.5 Installation method to power transistor

Moedls FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

(1) Control PCB

Switch	Description		Default setting	Remark
SW1	(See table 1)		OFF	
JSW1-1	Model selection		As per model	See table 2
JSW1-2				
JSW1-3				
JSW1-4	No function		OFF	
SW3-1	Defrost condition	Normal*/Cold region	OFF	Refer to page 34.
SW3-2	Snow protection control	Normal*/Snow protection	OFF	Refer to page 33.
SW3-3	Test run SW	Normal*/Test run	OFF	Refer to page 40.
SW3-4	Test run mode	Cooling*/Heating	OFF	Refer to page 40.
SW4-1	SW1 function selection		OFF	See table1
SW4-2	Reserve		OFF	
SW4-3	Reserve		OFF	
SW4-4	Forced defrost	Normal*/Valid	OFF	
SW5-1	Existing pipe system setting	Normal*/Valid	OFF	
SW5-3	Reserve		OFF	
SW5-4	Reserve		OFF	
SW7-1	Anti-frost control	Normal*/Valid	ON	
SW7-2	Reserve		ON	
SW7-3	Silent mode selection	Capacity priority/Silent priority*	ON	Refer to page 40.

* Default setting

Table 1: SW1 fuction selection

0: OFF 1:ON

SW4-1	SW1 function	Remark
0	Pump down operation	Refer to page 40.
1	Reset cumulative time of compressor operation	Reset of operation time after replacing a compressor

Table 2: Outdoor unit model selection with JSW1-1-JSW1-4

Switch	FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
JSW1-1	ON	OFF	ON
JSW1-2	ON	OFF	OFF
JSW1-3	ON	ON	ON

(2) Inverter PCB

Switch	FDC200	FDC250	FDC280
JSW10-1	OFF	OFF	OFF
JSW10-2	ON	ON	ON
JSW10-3	OFF	OFF	OFF
JSW10-4	OFF *	OFF *	OFF *
JSW11-1	OFF	OFF	OFF
JSW11-2	OFF	OFF	OFF
JSW11-3	ON	ON	ON
JSW11-4	OFF	OFF	OFF

* When checking inverter PCB of FDC200, 250, 280 models with inverter checker, turn JSW10-4 ON.
(Regarding the checking method of inverter PCB with inverter checker, refer to page 61 for details)

(5) Check of anomalous operation data with the remote control

(a) In case of RC-EX3A remote control

[Operating procedure]

① On the TOP screen, touch the buttons in the order of "Menu" → "Service setting" → "Service & Maintenance" → "Service password" → "Set" → "Error display" → "Error history".

② When only one indoor unit is connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1. When there is any anomaly: "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly

Contents of display

・Error code

・Number and data item

2. When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, and this mode is terminated.

③ When two or more indoor units are connected to the remote control, followings will be displayed.

1. When there is any anomaly: If the unit having anomaly is selected on the "Select IU" screen, "Loading. Wait a while" is displayed, followed by the operation data at the occurrence of anomaly.

Contents of display

・Indoor unit No.

・Error code

・Number and data item

2. When there is no anomaly: "No anomaly" is displayed, ant this mode is terminated.

Note (1) When the number of connected units cannot be shown in a page, select "Next".

④ If you press [RUN/STOP] button, the display returns to the TOP screen.

◎ **If you touch "Back" button on the way of setting, the display returns to the last precious screen.**

Note (1) When two remote controls are used to control indoor units, the check of anomaly operation data can be made on the master remote control only. (It cannot be operated from the slave remote control.)

■ Anomaly operation data (Corresponding data may not be provided depending on models. Such items will not be displayed.)

Number		Data Item
01	❄	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR__℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Temperature Sensor)
05	THI-R1__℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2__℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3__℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND ___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER ___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV ____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN ___H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
13	SUPPLY AIR___℃	(Supply Air Temperature)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM__℃	(Comp Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN ___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

●Details of compressor protection status No. 33
Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

No.	Contents of display	Reference page
"0"	Normal	
"1"	Discharge pipe temperature protection control	P.35, (6).(a).(i)
"2"	Discharge pipe temperature anomaly	P.35, (6).(a).(ii)
"3"	Current safe control of inverter primary current	P.38, (6).(g)
"4"	High pressure protection control	P.36, (6).(b).(i), P.37, (6).(c).(i)
"5"	High pressure anomaly	P.36, (6).(b).(ii)
"6"	Low pressure protection control	P.37, (6).(e).(i)
"7"	Low pressure anomaly	P.37, (6).(e).(ii)
"8"	Anti-frost prevention control	P.38, (6).(k)
"9"	Current cut	P.38, (6).(g)
"10"	Power transistor protection control	P.38, (6).(h)
"11"	Power transistor anomaly (Overheat)	P.38, (6).(i)
"12"	Compression ratio control	P.37, (6).(f)
"13"	Spare	
"14"	Dewing prevention control	P.39, (6).(1)
"15"	Current safe control of inverter secondary current	P.38, (6).(g)
"16"	Stop by compressor rotor lock	
"17"	Stop by compressor startup failure	P.39, (6).(o)
"18"	Active filter anomaly	

Note(1) Operation data display on the remote control.
・Data is dispalyed until canceling the protection control.
・In case of multiple protections controlled, only the younger No. is displayed.
Note(2) Common item.
① In heating mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "4" is displayed.
② In cooling and dehumidifying mode.
During protection control by the command signal for reducing compressor frequency from indoor unit, No. "8" is displayed.

(b) In case of RC-E5 remote control

Operation data can be checked with remote control unit operation.

① Press the CHECK button.
The display change " OPER DATA ▼ "

② Press the (SET) button while " OPER DATA ▼ " is displayed.

③ When only one indoor unit is connected to remote control, " DATA LOADING " is displayed (blinking indication during data loading).
Next, operation data of the indoor unit will be displayed. Skip to step ⑦.

④ When plural indoor units is connected, the smallest address number of indoor unit among all connected indoor unit is displayed.
[Example]:
" SELECT I/U " (blinking 1 seconds) → " I/U000 ▲ " blinking.

⑤ Select the indoor unit number you would like to have data displayed with the ▲ ▼ button.

⑥ Determine the indoor unit number with the (SET) button.
(The indoor unit number changes from blinking indication to continuous indication)
" I/U000 " (The address of selected indoor unit is blinking for 2 seconds.)
↓
" DATA LOADING " (A blinking indication appears while data loaded.)
Next, the operation data of the indoor unit is indicated.

Number		Data Item
01	※	(Operation Mode)
02	SET TEMP___℃	(Set Temperature)
03	RETURN AIR___℃	(Return Air Temperature)
04	SENSOR___℃	(Remote Control Temperature Sensor)
05	THI-R1___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor / U Bend)
06	THI-R2___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Capillary)
07	THI-R3___℃	(Indoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor /Gas Header)
08	I/U FANSPEED___	(Indoor Unit Fan Speed)
09	DEMAND___Hz	(Frequency Requirements)
10	ANSWER___Hz	(Response Frequency)
11	I/U EEV____P	(Pulse of Indoor Unit Expansion Value)
12	TOTAL I/U RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Indoor Unit)
21	OUTDOOR___℃	(Outdoor Air Temperature)
22	THO-R1___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
23	THO-R2___℃	(Outdoor Heat Exchanger Temperature Sensor)
24	COMP___Hz	(Compressor Frequency)
25	HP___MPa	(High Pressure)
26	LP____MPa	(Low Pressure)
27	Td___℃	(Discharge Pipe Temperature)
28	COMP BOTTOM___℃	(Compressor Bottom Temperature)
29	CT___AMP	(Current)
30	TARGET SH___℃	(Target Super Heat)
31	SH___℃	(Super Heat)
32	TDSH___℃	(Discharge Pipe Super Heat)
33	PROTECTION No.__	(Protection State No. of The Compressor)
34	O/U FANSPEED___	(Outdoor Unit Fan Speed)
35	63H1	(63H1 On/Off)
36	DEFROST	(Defrost Control On/Off)
37	TOTAL COMP RUN___H	(Total Running Hours of The Compressor)
38	O/U EEV1____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVC)
39	O/U EEV2____P	(Pulse of The Outdoor Unit Expansion Valve EEVH)

⑦ Upon operation of the ▲ ▼ button, the current operation data is displayed in order from data number 01.
The items displayed are in the above table.
*Depending on models, the items that do not have corresponding data are not displayed.

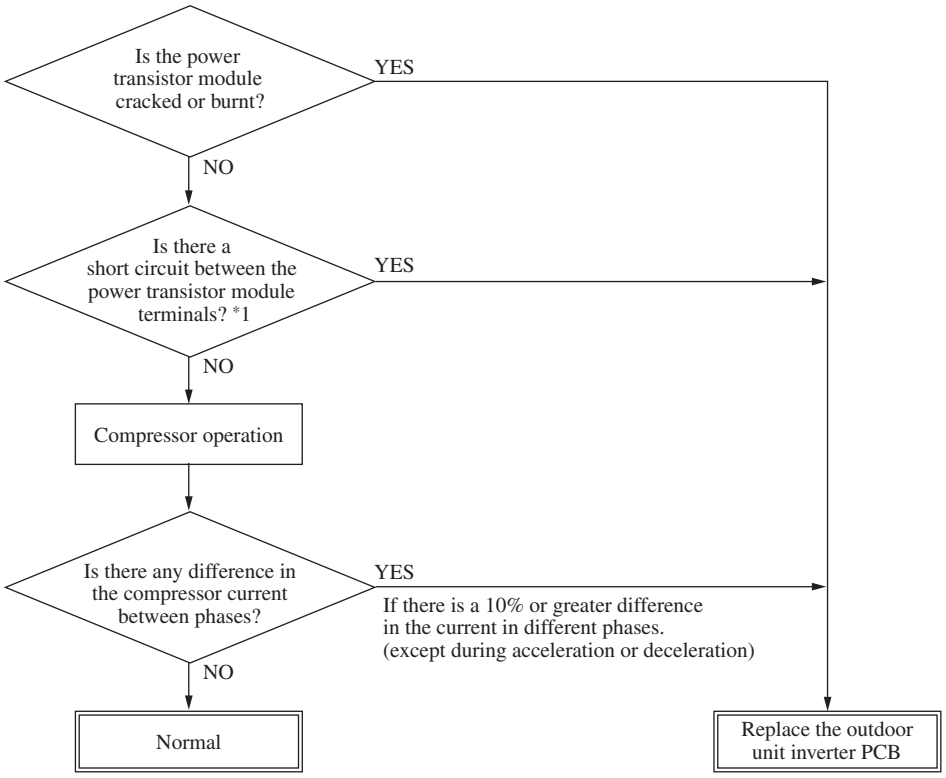
⑧ To display the data of a different indoor unit, press the AIR CON No. button, which allows you to go back to the indoor unit selection screen.

⑨ Pressing the ⏻ON/OFF button will stop displaying data.
Pressing the (RESET) button during remote control unit operation will undo your last operation and allow you to go back to the previous screen.

⊙If two (2) remote controls are connected to one (1) inside unit, only the master control is available for trial operation and confirmation of operation data. (The slave remote control is not available.)

●Details of compressor protection status No. 33
Refer to page 58.

(6) Power transistor module (Including the driver PCB) inspection procedure



*1 Power transistor module terminal short circuit check procedure

Disconnect the compressor wiring, then conduct a short circuit check.

P-U, P-V, P-W

N-U, N-V, N-W

Check between the P-N terminals.

Bring the tester probes in contact with the following places on each te rminal.

P: Power transistor P terminal,

N: Power transistor N terminal,

U: End of red harness to compressor

V: End of white harness to compressor

W: End of black or blue harness to compressor

Check for a power transistor short-circuit.

- When you do not have a diagnostic checker for judging if the inverter is defective, measure between the terminals of the power transistor parts, judge whether the power transistor is defective or not.
- Disconnect the compressor, then measure with the control incorporated.

Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

Tester		Normal value (Ω)
Terminal (+)	Terminal (-)	Models FDC200, 250, 280
P	N	Scores of M
N	P	Approx. 8.9M
P	U	Scores of M
P	V	
P	W	
N	U	Approx. 4.6M
N	V	
N	W	
U	P	Approx. 4.8M
V	P	
W	P	
U	N	Scores of M
V	N	
W	N	

If the measured values range from 0 - several kW, there is a possibility that the elements are damaged, so replace the power transistor parts.

(7) Inverter checker for diagnosis of inverter output
Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

●Checking method

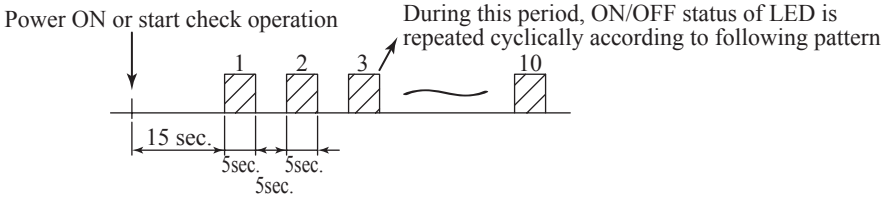
(i) Setup procedure of checker.

1) Power OFF (Turn off the breaker).
2) Remove the terminal cover of compressor and disconnect the wires (U, V, W) from compressor.
3) Connect the wires U (Red) , V (White) and W (Black) of checker to the terminal of disconnected wires (U, V, W) from compressor respectively.

(ii) Operation for judgment.

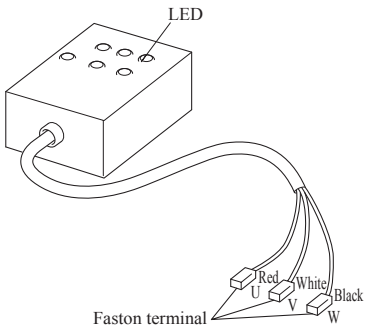
1) Power ON after JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB was turned ON.
2) After 15 seconds since power has turned ON, LED start ON/OFF for 5 seconds cyclically and it repeats 10 times.
3) Check ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.
4) Judge the PCB by ON/OFF status of 6 LED's on the checker.

ON/OFF status of LED	If all of LED are ON/OFF according to following pattern	If all of LED stay OFF or some of LED are ON/OFF
Inverter PCB	Normal	Anomalous

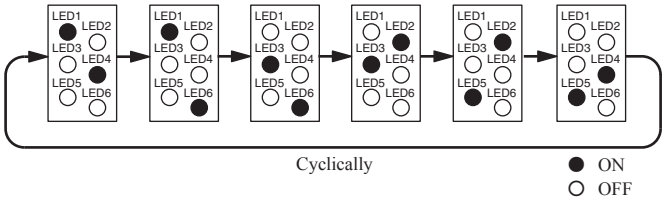


5) Be sure to turn off JSW10-4 on outdoor inverter PCB, after finishing the check operation.

〈**Inverter checker**〉

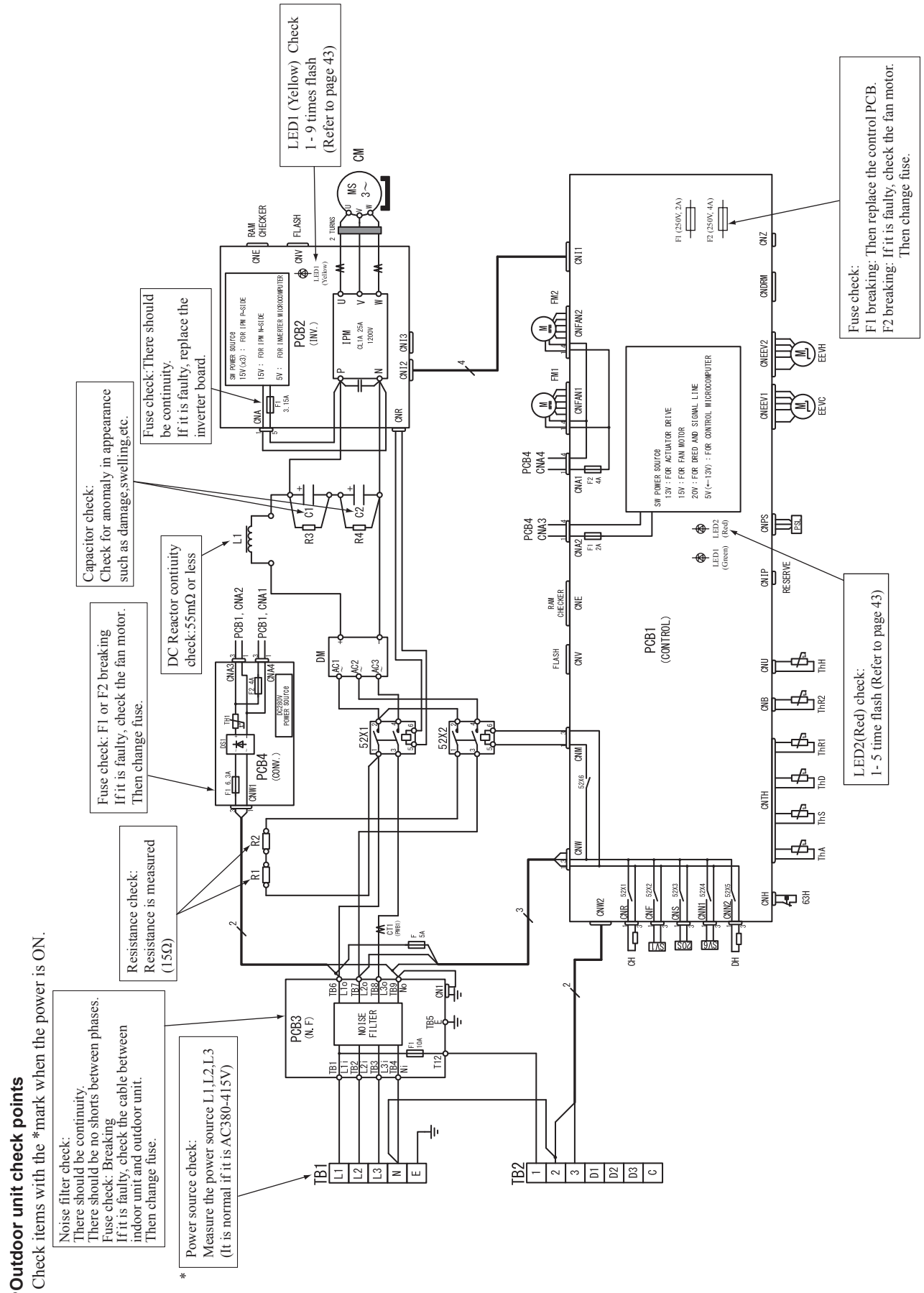


LED ON/OFF pattern



Connect to the terminal of the wires which are disconnected from compressor.

(8) Outdoor unit control failure diagnosis circuit diagram
Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W



2.2 Troubleshooting flow

(1) List of troubles

(a) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

Models FDC200, 250, 280VSA-W

Remote control display	Description of trouble	Reference page
None	Operates but does not cool.	64
None	Operates but does not heat.	65 · 66
None	Earth leakage breaker activated	67
None	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)	68
None	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)	69
None	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)	70
None	Louver motor failure (FDT, FDTC, FDE series)	71
None	Power source system error (Power source to indoor unit control PCB)	72 · 73
None	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)	74
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)	75
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)	76
WAIT	Communication error at initial operation	77 · 78
None	No display	79
E1	Remote control communication circuit error	80
E5	Communication error during operation	81
E6	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	82
E7	Return air temperature sensor anomaly	83
E8	Heating overload operation	84
E9	Drain trouble	85
E10	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control	86
E11	Address setting error of indoor units	87
E14	Communication error between master and slave indoor units (Except for single type)	88
E16	Indoor fan motor anomaly (Except for FDU series)	89
E16	Indoor fan motor anomaly (FDU series)	90 · 91
E18	Address setting error of master and slave indoor units (Except for single type)	92
E19	Indoor unit operation check, drain pump motor check setting error	93
E20	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (Except for FDU series)	94
E20	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (FDU series)	95 · 96
E28	Remote control temperature sensor anomaly	97
E35	Cooling overload operation	98
E36	Discharge pipe temperature error	99
E37	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	100
E38	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	101
E39	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	102
E40	High pressure error (63H1 activated)	103
E41	Power transistor overheat	104
E42	Current cut	105 · 106
E44	Liquid back error	107 · 108
E45	Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB	109
E48	Outdoor fan motor anomaly	110
E49	Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly	111 · 112
E51	Inverter or power transistor anomaly	113
E53	Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly	114
E54	Low pressure sensor anomaly	115
E55	Compressor under-dome temperature sensor anomaly	116
E57	Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure	117
E59	Compressor startup failure	118 · 119

(b) SRK series

Model FDC200VSA-W

Remote control display	Description of trouble	Reference page
None	Operates but does not cool.	119-1
None	Operates but does not heat.	119-2
None	Earth leakage breaker activated	119-3
None	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)	119-4
None	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)	119-5
None	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)	119-6
None	Louver motor failure	119-7
None	Power source system error (Power source to indoor control PCB)	119-8
None	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)	119-9
None	Limit switch anomaly	119-10
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)	119-11
INSPECT I/U	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)	119-12
WAIT	Communication error at initial operation	119-13·119-14
None	No display	119-15
E1	Remote control communication circuit error	119-16
E5	Communication error during operation	119-17
E6	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	119-18
None	Room temperature sensor anomaly	119-19
E10	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control	119-20
E14	Communication error between master and slave indoor units	119-21
E16	Indoor fan motor anomaly	119-22
E28	Remote control temperature sensor anomaly	119-23
E35	Cooling overload operation	119-24
E36	Discharge pipe temperature error	119-25
E37	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly	119-26
E38	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly	119-27
E39	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly	119-28
E40	High pressure error (63H1 activated)	119-29
E41	Power transistor overheat	119-30
E42	Current cut	119-31·119-32
E44	Liquid back error	119-33·119-34
E45	Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB	119-35
E48	Outdoor fan motor anomaly	119-36
E49	Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly	119-37·119-38
E51	Inverter or power transistor anomaly	119-39
E53	Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly	119-40
E54	Low pressure sensor anomaly	119-41
E55	Compressor under-dome temperature sensor anomaly	119-42
E57	Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure	119-43
E59	Compressor startup failure	119-44·119-45

(2) Troubleshooting

(a) FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Operates but does not cool.
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

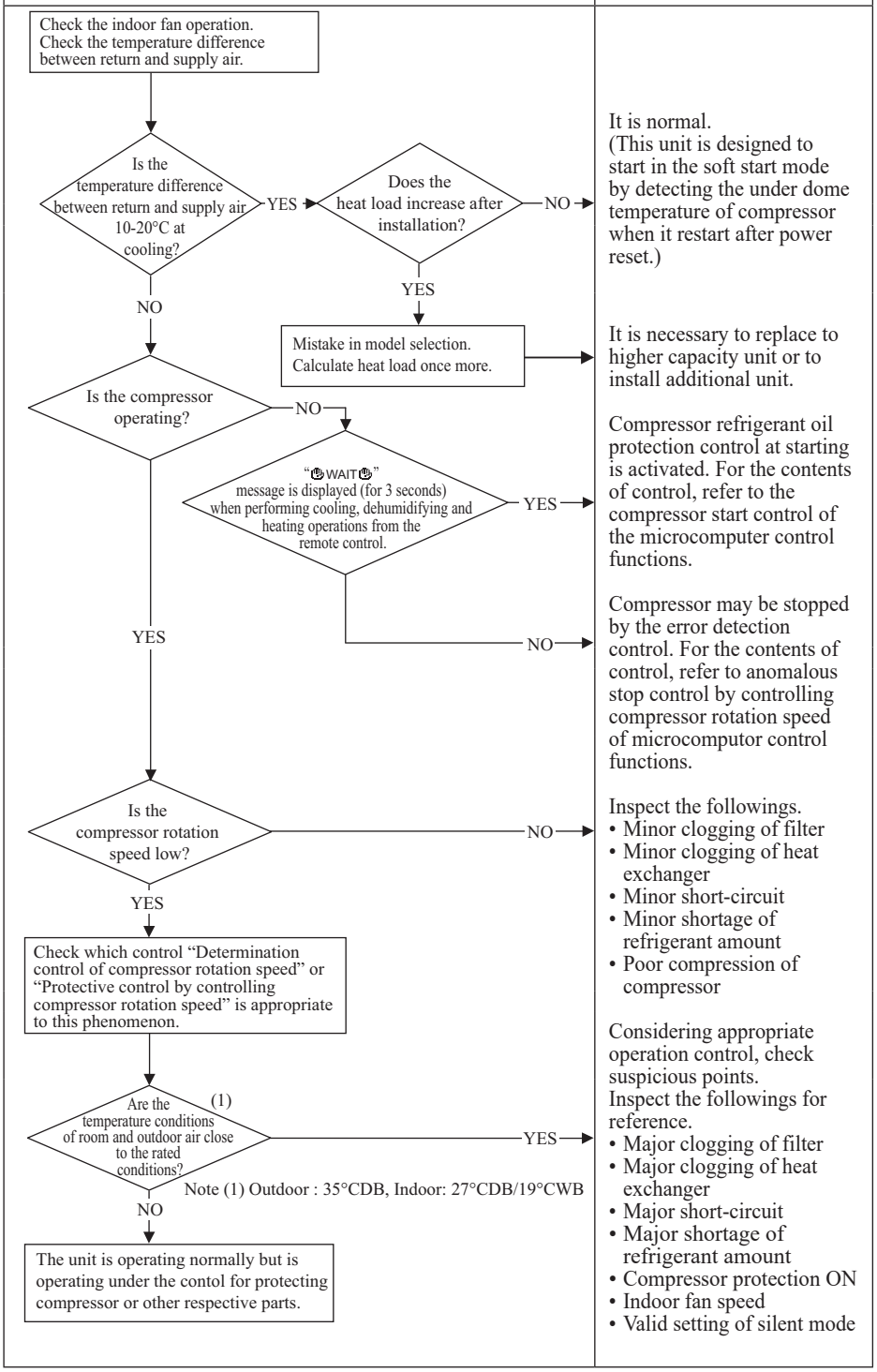
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF

Content

Operates but does not heat. (1/2)

1.Applicable model

All models

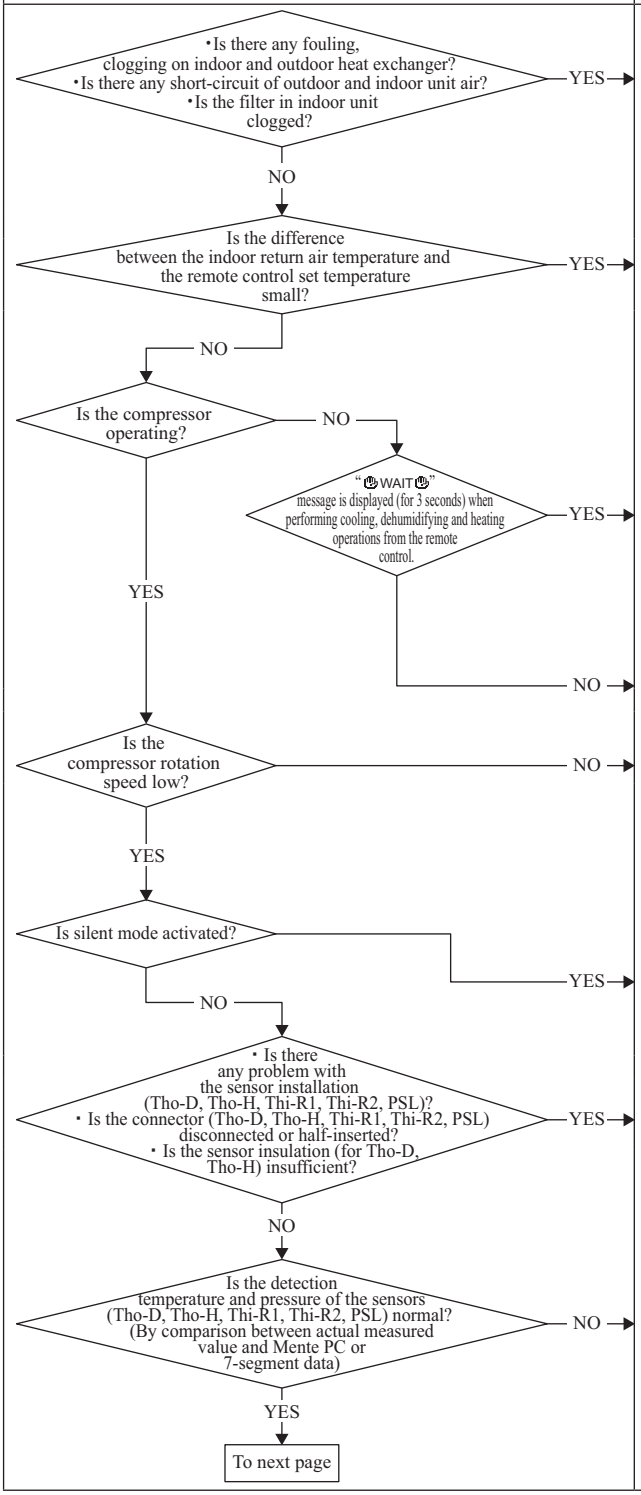
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Faulty 4-way valve operation
- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty body of EEVH, EEVC
- Faulty coil of EEVH, EEVC
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty coil of SV1
- Faulty temperature sensor (Tho-D, Tho-H, Thi-R1, Thi-R2)
- Faulty pressure sensor PSL
- Insufficient amount of refrigerant

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF

Content

Operates but does not heat. (2/2)

1.Applicable model

All models

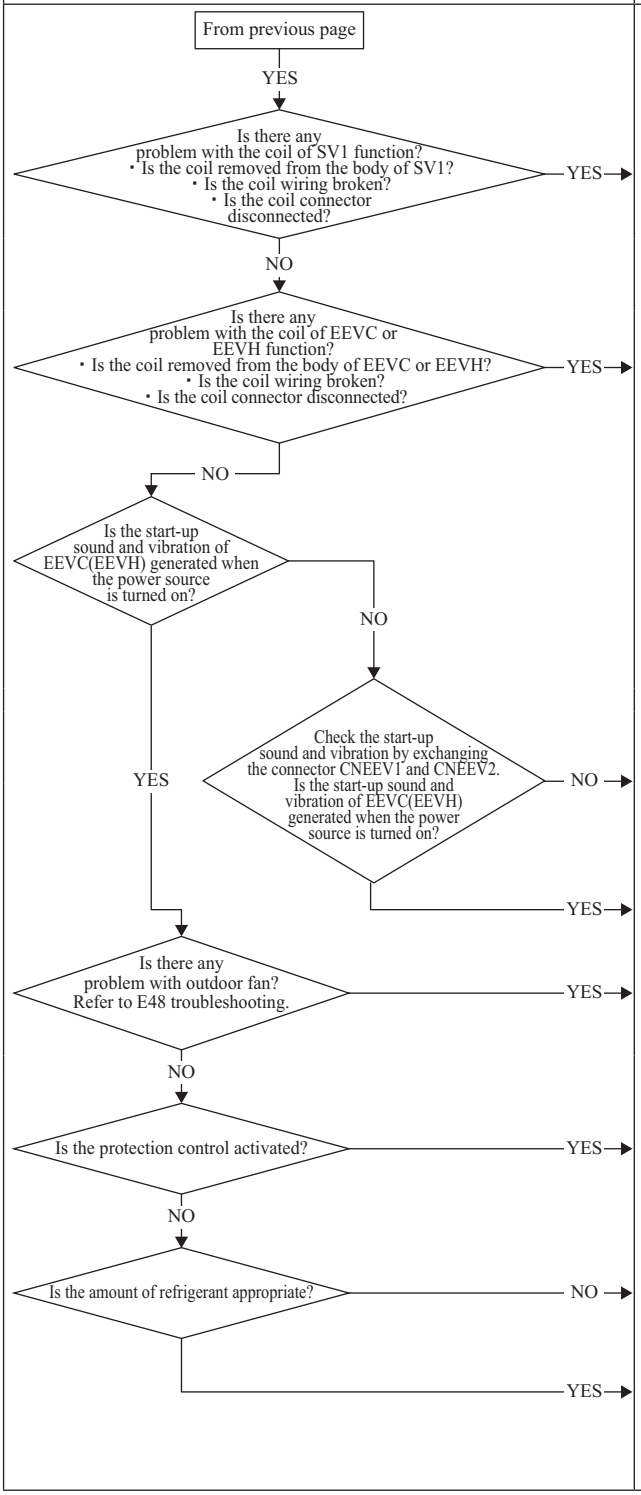
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Faulty 4-way valve operation
- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty body of EEVH, EEVC
- Faulty coil of EEVH, EEVC
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty coil of SV1
- Faulty temperature sensor (Tho-D, Tho-H, Thi-R1, Thi-R2)
- Faulty pressure sensor PSL
- Insufficient amount of refrigerant

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	Earth leakage breaker activated
	Outdoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

• Defective compressor
• Noise

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are OK the insulation resistance and resistance between terminals(1) of compressor? (1) See page 105. — NO	Replace compressor.*
YES → Is insulation of respective harnesses OK? Is any harness bitten between pannel and casing or etc? — NO	Secure insulation resistance.
YES → Check the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker.	

Check of the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker

① Run an independent grounding wire from the grounding screw of outdoor unit to the grounding terminal on the distribution panel. (Do not connect to another grounding wire.)
② In order to prevent malfunction of the earth leakage breaker itself, confirm that it is conformed to higher harmonic regulation.

* Insulation resistance of compressor
• Immediately after installation or when the unit has been left for long time without power source, the insulation resistance may drop to a few MΩ because of refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
When the earth breaker is activated at lower insulation resistance, check the following points.
① 6 hours after power ON, check if the insulation resistance recovers to normal.
When power ON, crankcase heater heat up compressor and evaporate the refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
② Check if the earth leakage breaker is conformed to higher harmonic regulation or not.
Since the unit is equipped with inverter, it is necessary to use components conformed to higher harmonic regulation in order to prevent malfunction of earth leakage breaker.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

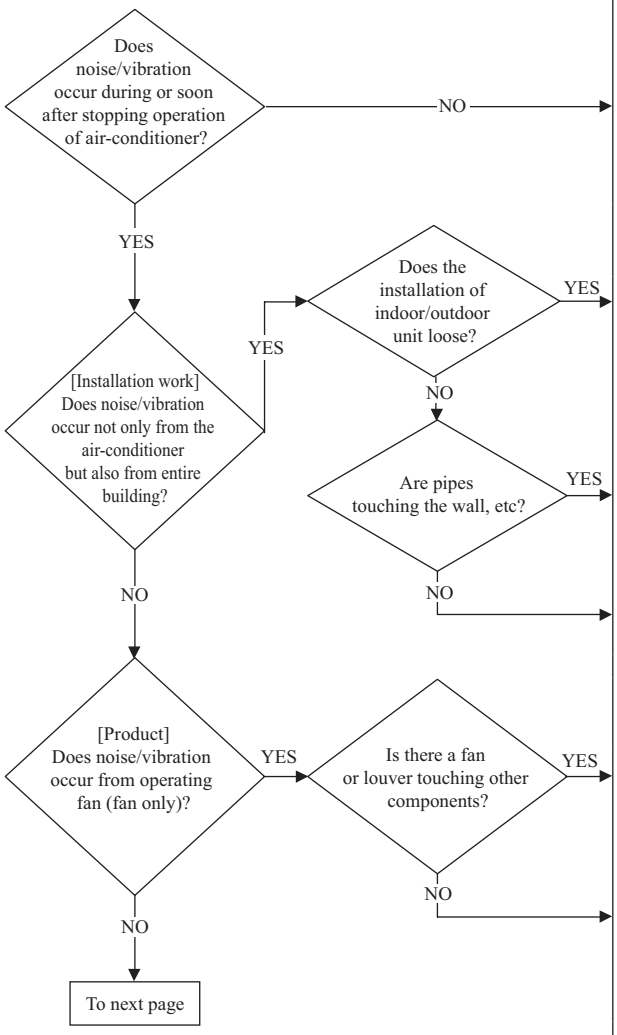
① Improper installation work
- Improper anti-vibration work at installation
- Insufficient strength of mounting face

② Defective product
- Before/after shipping from factory

③ Improper adjustment during commissioning
- Excess/shortage of refrigerant, etc.

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis



Countermeasure

If excessive noise/vibration persists when sufficient time has elapsed after stopping the unit, it is considered that the air-conditioner is not the source.

Check the installed condition carefully, and correct the position or insert rubber cushions or others into the gap, if necessary.

Prevent the vibration from transmitting to wall and etc by fixing pipes on the wall or wrapping rubber cushion around the pipe which goes through the hole in the wall or applying other appropriate means.

Strength of ceiling wall, floor, etc. may be insufficient. Review the installing position or reinforce it.

Check for leaning of installed unit or anomalous mounting of fan, louver or motor and specify the contacting point and correct it.

When the heat exchanger or filter is clogged, clean them. In case that the unit is installed at the site where background noise is very low, small noise from indoor unit can be heard, but it is normal. Before installation, check for background noise. If backgound nois is very low, convince client prior to installation.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

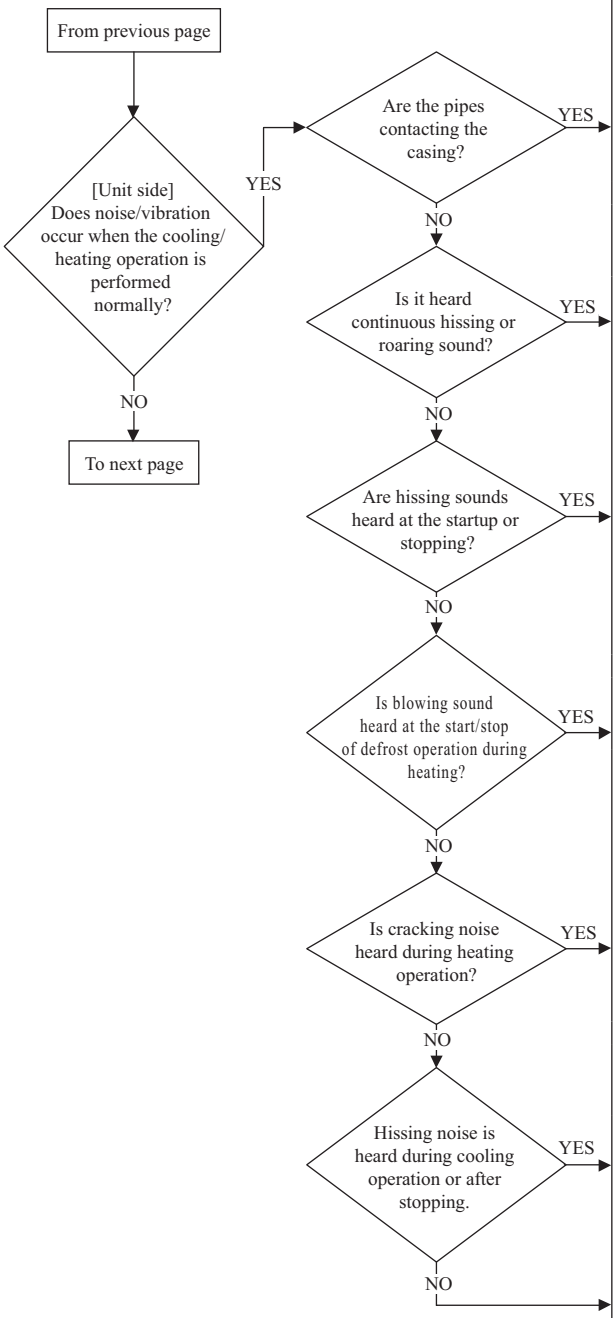
1. Applicable model

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are the pipes contacting the casing? YES	Rearrange the piping to avoid contact with the casing.
Is it heard continuous hissing or roaring sound? YES	It is noise/vibration that is generated when the refrigerant gas or liquid flow through inside of piping of air-conditioner. It is likely to occur particularly during cooling or defrost operation in the heating mode. It is normal.
Are hissing sounds heard at the startup or stopping? YES	The noise/vibration occurs when the refrigerant starts or stops flowing. It is normal.
Is blowing sound heard at the start/stop of defrost operation during heating? YES	When the defrost operation starts or stops during heating, the refrigerant flow is reversed due to switching 4-way valve. This causes a large change in pressure which produces a blowing sound. It may accompany also the hissing sounds as mentioned above. They are normal.
Is cracking noise heard during heating operation? YES	After the start or stop of heating operation or during defrost operation, abrupt changes in temperature cause resin parts to shrink or expand. This is normal.
Hissing noise is heard during cooling operation or after stopping. YES	It is the sound produced by the drain pump that discharges drain from the indoor unit. The pump continues to run for 5 minutes after stopping the cooling operation. This is normal.
NO	Apply the damper sealant at places considered to be the sources such as the pressure reducing mechanism (expansion valve), capillary, etc.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)
	Outdoor	–	–	

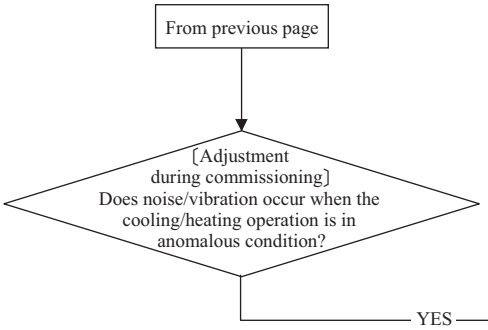
1.Applicable model

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If insufficient cooling/ heating problem happens due to anomalous operating conditions at cooling/ heating, followings are suspicious. • Overcharge of refrigerant • Insufficient charge of refrigerant • Intrusion of air, nitrogen, etc. In such occasion, it is necessary to recover refrigerant, vacuum-dry and recharge refrigerant. * Since there could be many causes of noise/ vibration, the above do not cover all. In such case, check the conditions when, where, how the noise/vibration occurs according to following check point. • Indoor/outdoor unit • Cooling/heating/fan mode • Startup/stop/during operation • Operating condition (Indoor/outdoor air temperatures, pressure) • Time it occurred • Operation data retained by the remote control such as compressor rotation speed, heat exchanger temperature, EEV opening degree, etc. • Tone (If available, record the noise) • Any other anomalies

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Louver motor failure (FDT, FDTC, FDE series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDTC, FDE series

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Defective LM
- LM wire breakage
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
▲ Check at the indoor unit side. Operate after waiting for more than 1 minute. Does the louver operate at the power on? NO → Is LM wiring broken? YES → Repair wiring. NO → Is LM locked? NO → Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. YES → Replace LM. YES → Is the louver operable with the remote control? YES → Normal NO → Adjust LM lever and then check again. LM: louver motor	

Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Power source system error (Power source to indoor unit control PCB)

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDTC series only

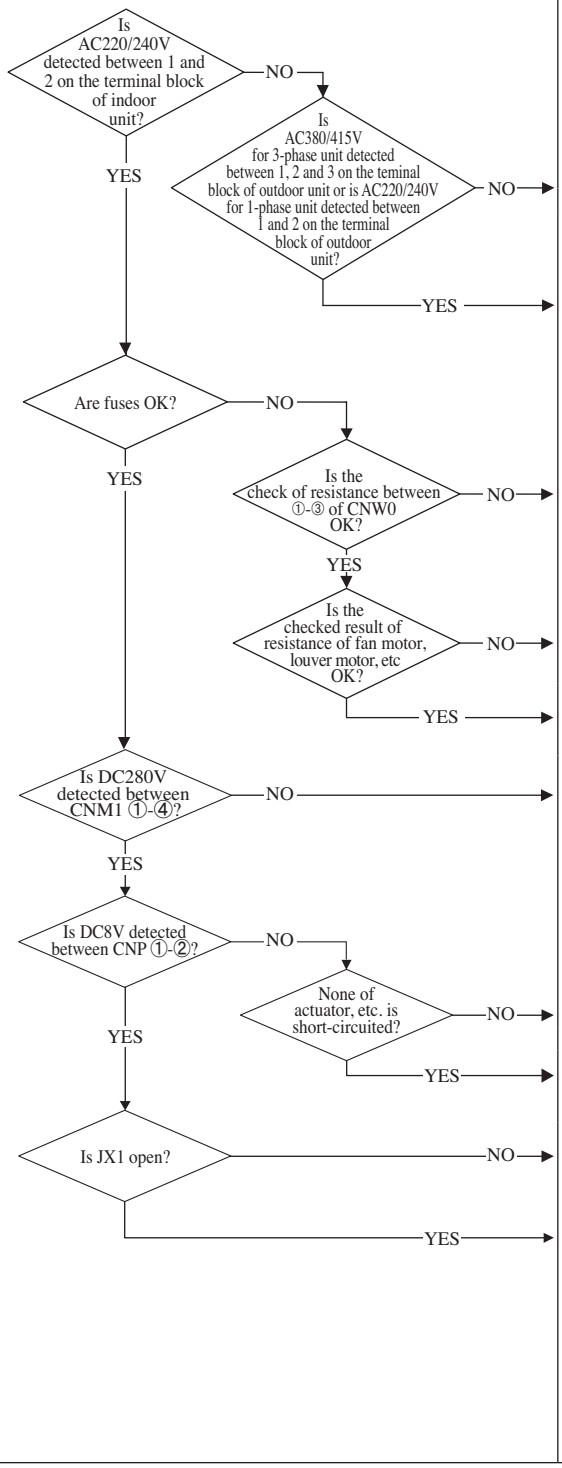
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires
- Blown fuse
- Faulty transformer
- Faulty indoor unit PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty outdoor unit main PCB (Noise filter)

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Power source system error (Power source to indoor unit control PCB)

1.Applicable model

Except FDT, FDTC series

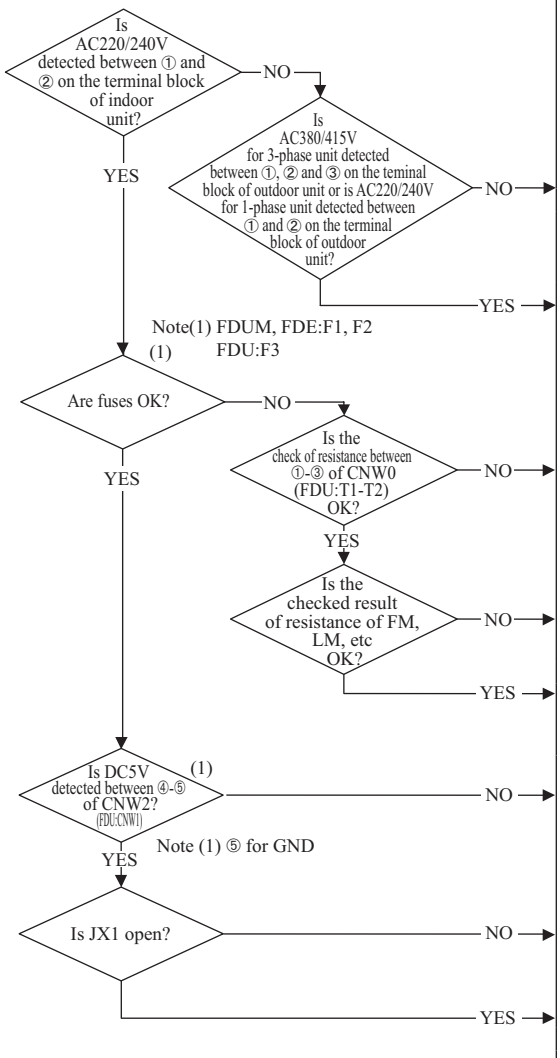
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires
- Blown fuse
- Faulty transformer
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB (Noise filter)

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: None	Indoor	Keeps flashing	3-time flash	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

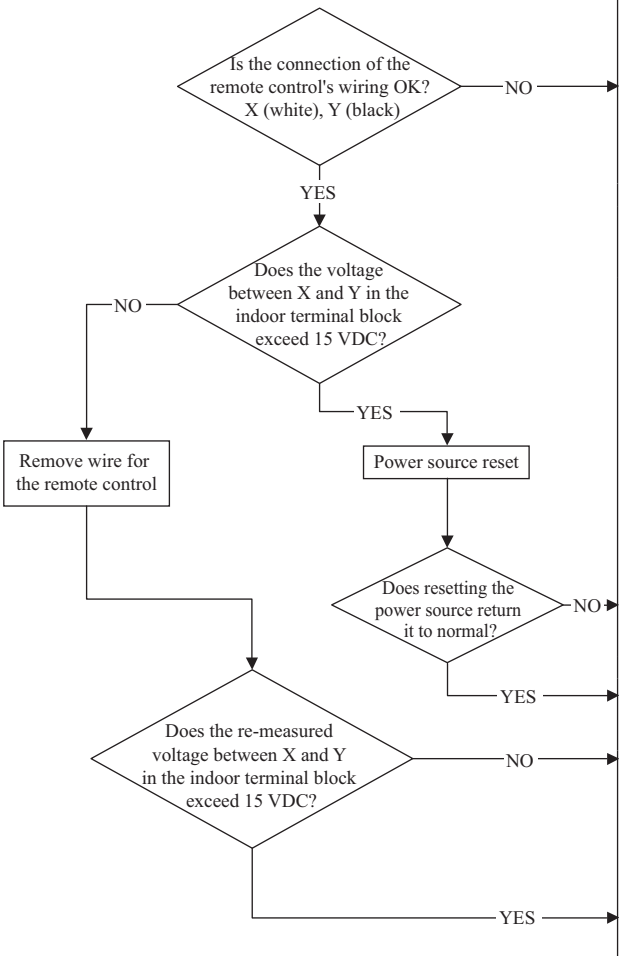
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Remote control wire breakage/short-circuit
- Defective remote control
- Malfunction by noise
- Broken harness
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Communication between indoor unit and remote control is disabled for more than 30 minutes after the power on.

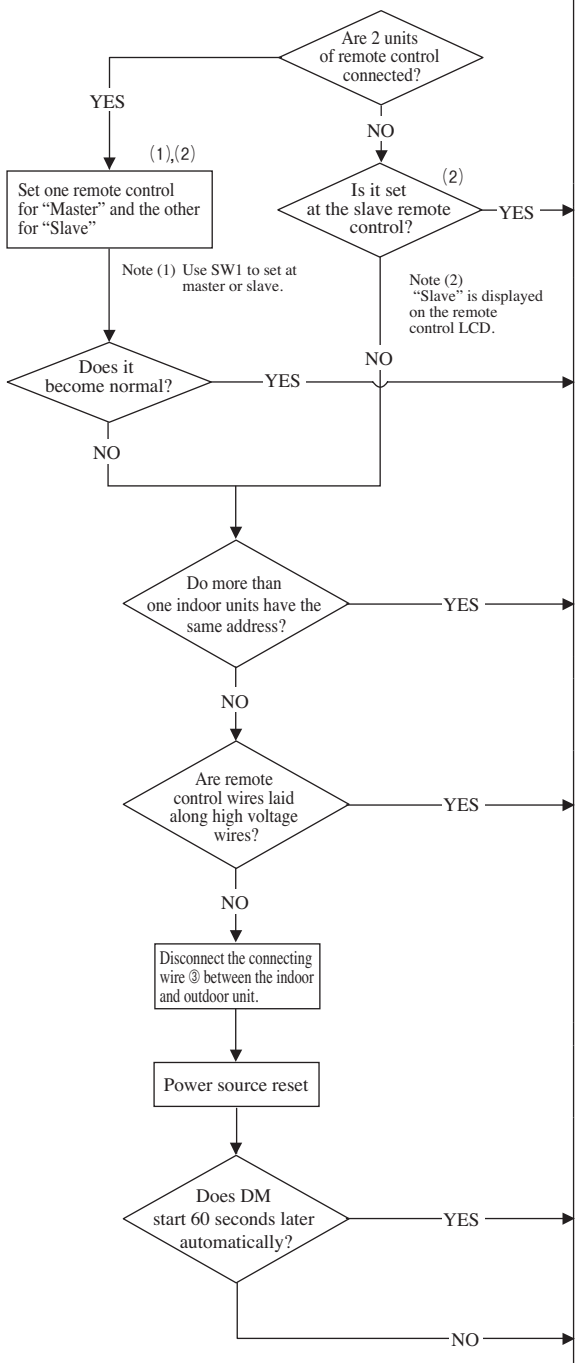
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor unit cannot communicate for more than 30 minutes after the power on with remote control.

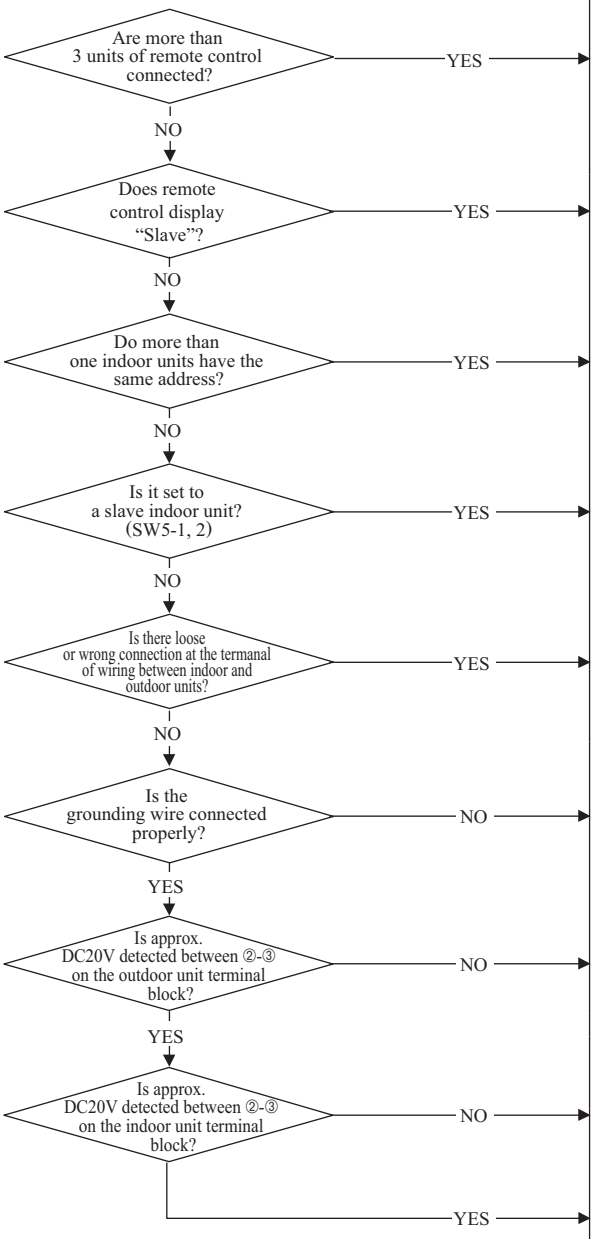
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code

Remote control: WAIT

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Communication error at initial operation (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

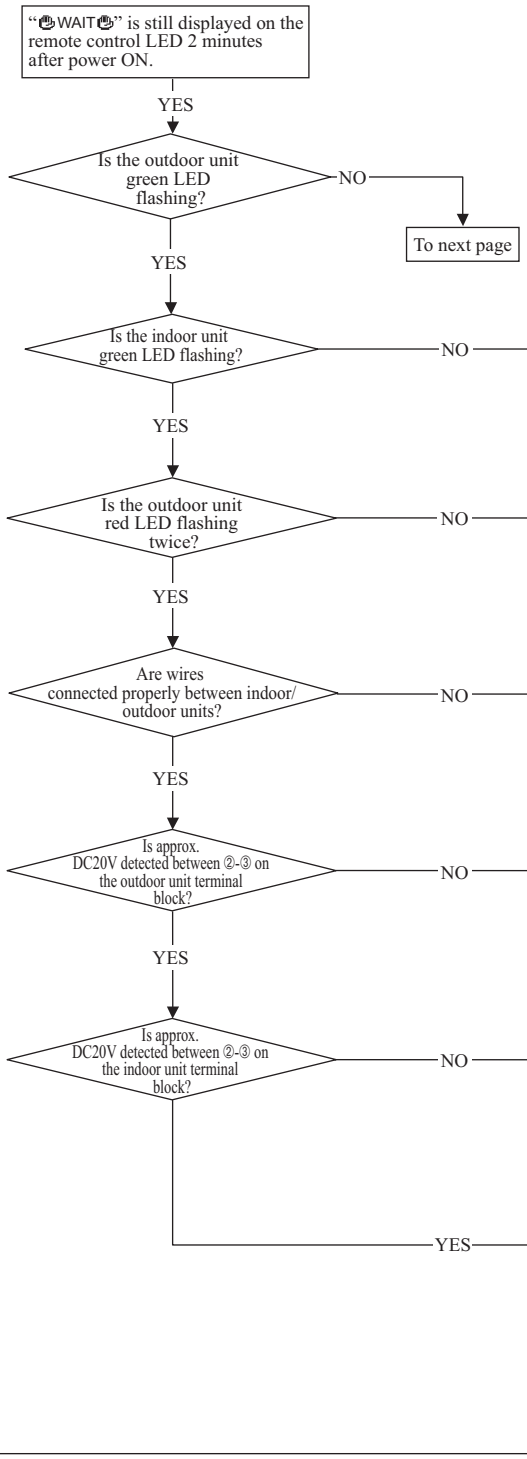
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken connection wires

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: WAIT

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash

Content

Communication error at initial operation (2/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

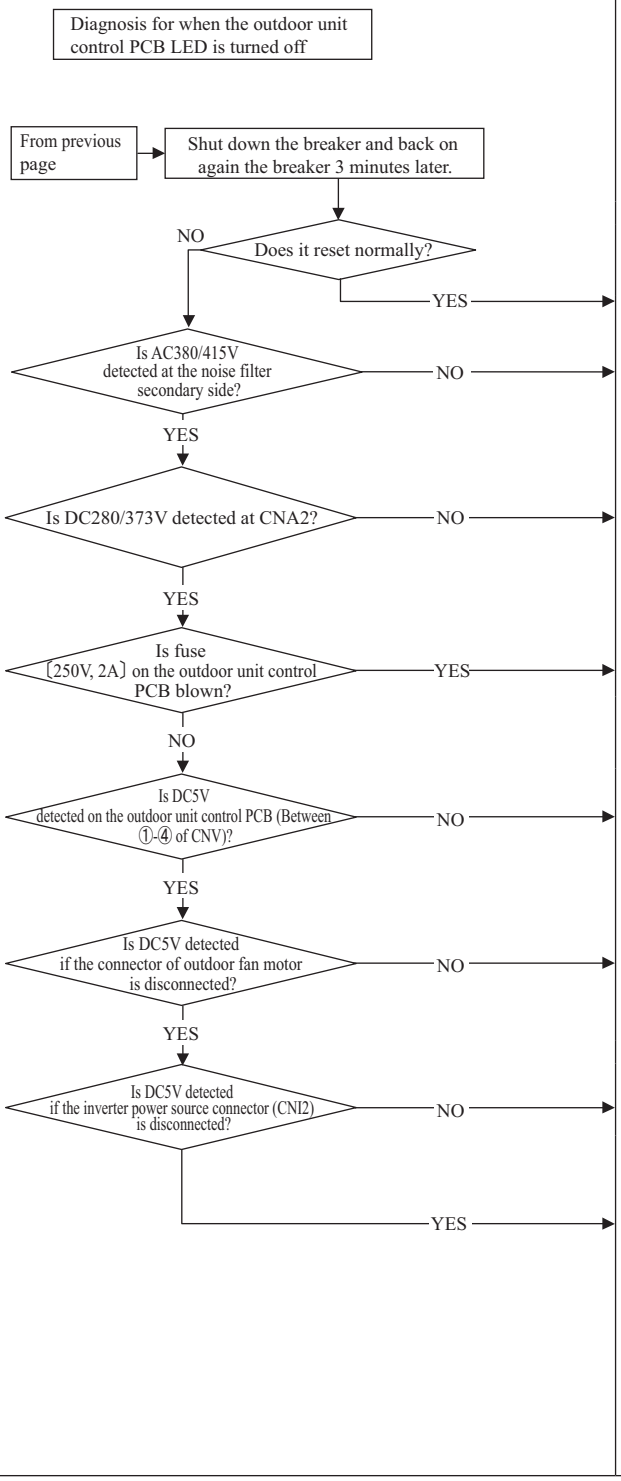
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty noise filter
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Faulty inverter PCB
- Faulty fan motor

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: None

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Stays OFF	Stays OFF

Content

No display

1. Applicable model

All models

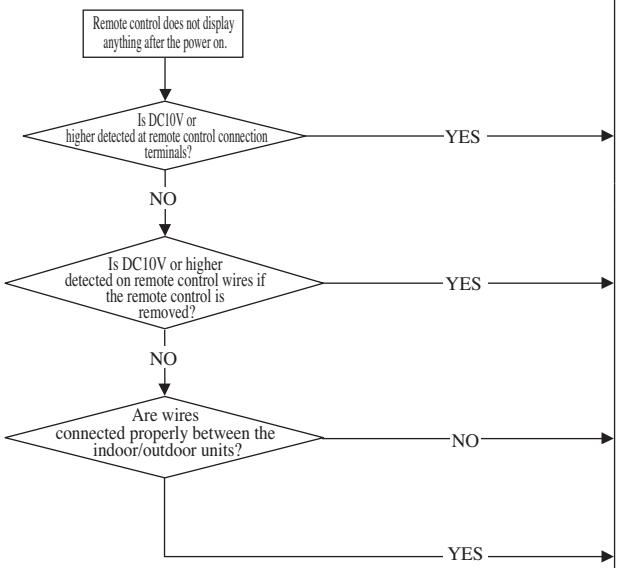
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E1	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control communication circuit error
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes. (Detectable only with the remote control)

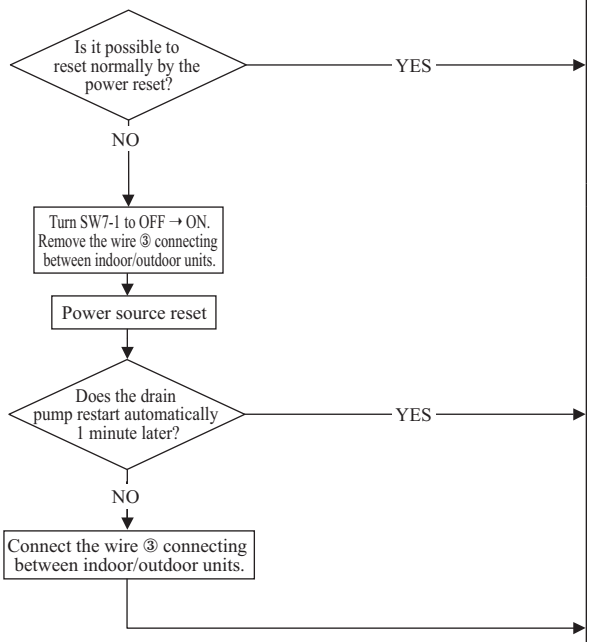
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective communication circuit between remote control-indoor unit
- Noise
- Defective remote control
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If the indoor unit cannot communicate normally with the remote control for 180 seconds, the indoor unit PCB starts to reset automatically.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E5	Indoor	Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Communication error during operation
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	See below	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between indoor and outdoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes.

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above is detected during operation.

4. Presumable cause

- Unit No. setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty remote control wire connection
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
●In case that the outdoor unit red LED flashes 2-time	
Note (1) Inspect faulty connections (disconnection, looseness) on the outdoor unit terminal block.	
Is the connection of signal wires at the outdoor unit side OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES	
Note (2) Check for faulty connection or breakage of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units.	
Is the connection of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES	
Power source reset	
Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	To the diagnosis of "✋WAIT✋".
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)
●In case that the outdoor unit red LED stays OFF	
Power source reset	
Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	Defective outdoor unit PCB (Defective network communication circuit) → Replace.
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)

Note: Pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications between indoor and outdoor unit so that "communication error-E5" is displayed on indoor unit and remote control, but it is normal.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E6	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected on the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1, R2 or R3).

3. Condition of error displayed

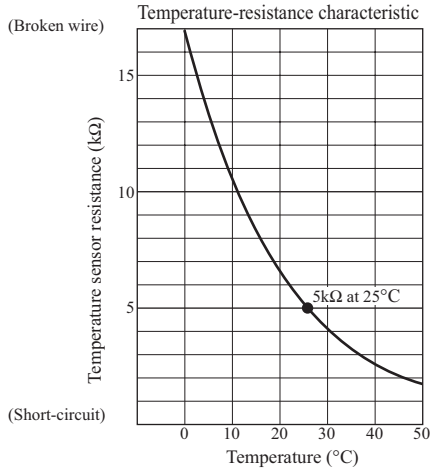
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.
- Or if short-circuit is detected for 5 seconds continuously

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector
- Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector OK? → NO	Correct it. → Insert connector securely.
YES → Are characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E7	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Return air temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected by indoor return air temperature sensor (Thi-A)

3. Condition of error displayed

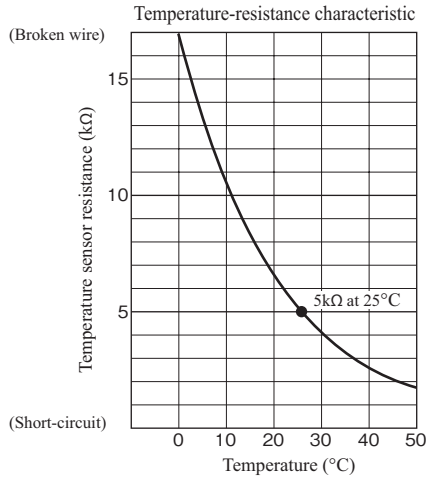
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective return air temperature sensor connector
- Defective return air temperature sensor
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of return air temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct it. → Connect connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of return air temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective return air temperature sensor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. (Defective return air temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E8	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Heating overload operation
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor (Thi-R1, R2, R3)

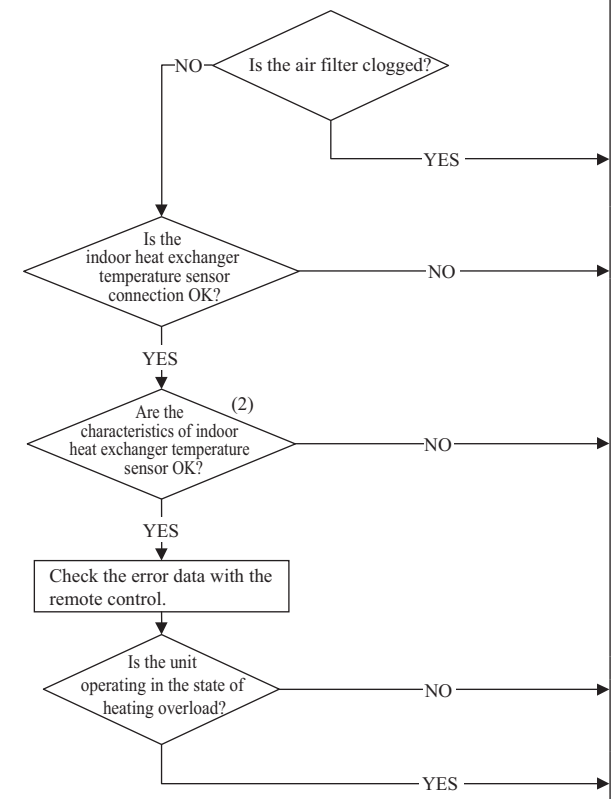
3.Condition of error displayed

When it is detected 5 times within 60 minutes from initial detection or when the overload condition is detected for 6 minutes continuously

4.Presumable cause

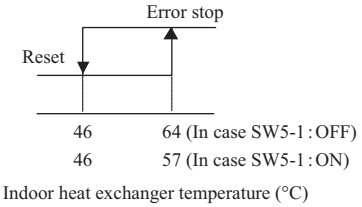
- Clogged air filter
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector
- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Anomalous refrigerant system

5.Troubleshooting



Note (1) Judge if it is in the state of overload or not as follows.
- Is there any short-circuit of air?
- Isn't there any fouling or clogging on the indoor heat exchanger?
- Is the outdoor fan control normal?
- Isn't the room and outdoor air temperature too high?

Note (2) For characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, see the error display E6.



Note: During heating operation; After starting compressor, compressor rotation speed is decreased by detecting indoor heat exchanger temperature (Thi-R) in order to control high pressure.

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E9	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Drain trouble
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM series

2. Error detection method

Float switch is activated

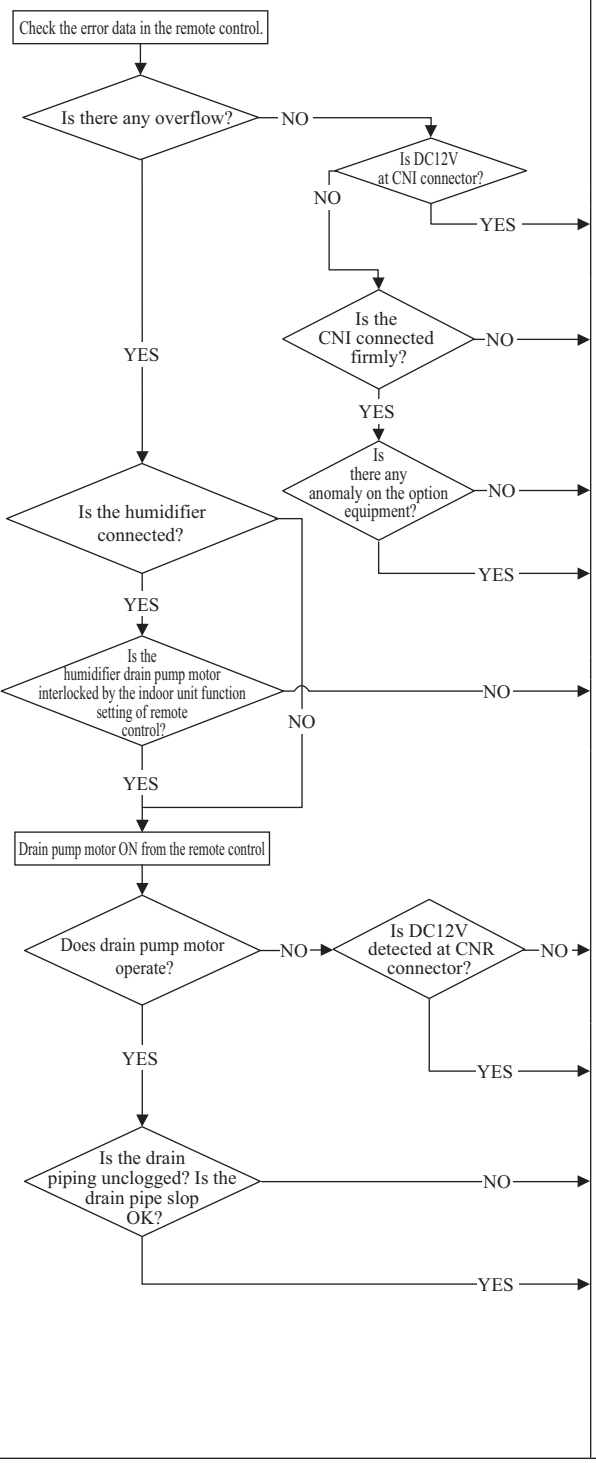
3. Condition of error displayed

If the float switch OPEN is detected for 3 seconds continuously or if float switch connector or wire is disconnected

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Float switch setting error
- Humidifier drain pump motor interlock setting error
- Option equipment setting error
- Drain piping error
- Defective drain pump motor
- Disconnection of drain pump motor wiring

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When this error occurred at power ON, disconnection of wire or connector of the float switch is suspected. Check and correct it (or replace it, if necessary).

Error code

Remote control: E10

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF

Content: Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it detects more than 17 of indoor units connected to one remote contorl

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Excessive number of indoor units connected
- Defective remote control

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control? → NO	Defective remote control → Replace.
Are more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control? → YES	Reduce to 16 or less units.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E11	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Address setting error of indoor units
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

IU address has been set using the “Master IU address set” function of remote control.

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Mistake of address setting method
(Address setting from remote control can’t be done)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
E11 occurs ↓ Is “Master IU address set” function of remote control used? YES →	Change of address setting method Set the address by DIP switch SW2 on indoor unit control PCB.
In case the wiring is below and “Mastar IU address set” is used, E11 is appeared. IU ① IU ② IU ③ ..... R/C	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E14	Indoor	Keeps flashing	3-time flash	Communication error between master and slave indoor units (Except for FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays Off	

1. Applicable model

Except for FDU series

2. Error detection method

When communication error between master and slave indoor units occurs

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Unit address setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Defective remote control wire connection
- Defective indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is it OK the unit address setting for master and slave indoor units? → NO	Correct unit address setting.
YES → Isn't the remote control wiring between indoor units defective? → YES	Correct wiring.
NO → Is it restored by resetting the power source? → NO	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace.
YES	• Malfunction by noise. • Check surrounding environment.

Note (1) Set DIP switches SW5-1 and SW5-2 as shown in the following table.
(Factory default setting – "Master")

		Indoor unit		
		Master	Slave-a	Slave-b
DIP switch	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor fan motor anomaly (Except for FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

Except for FDU series

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

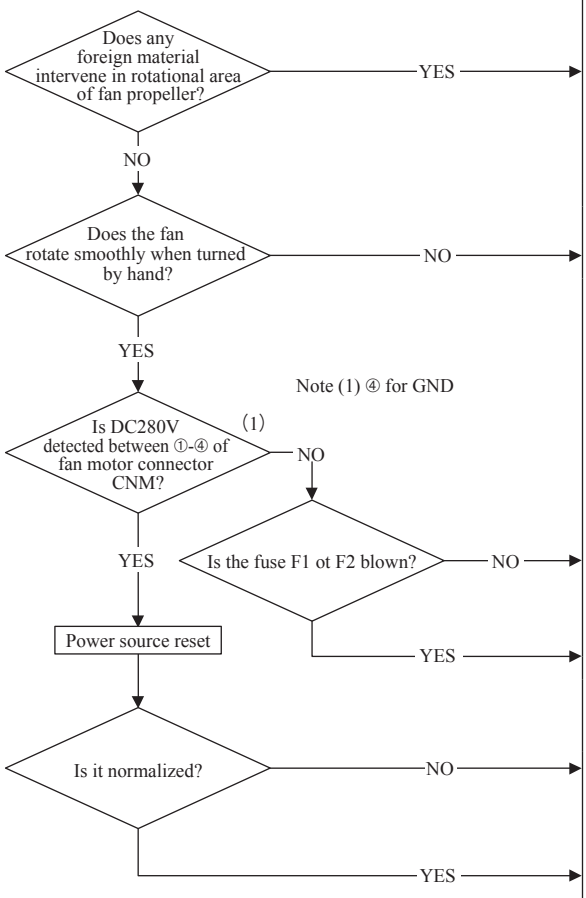
3. Condition of error displayed

- When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop.
- After 2-seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor fan motor anomaly (1/2) (FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

FDU series

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

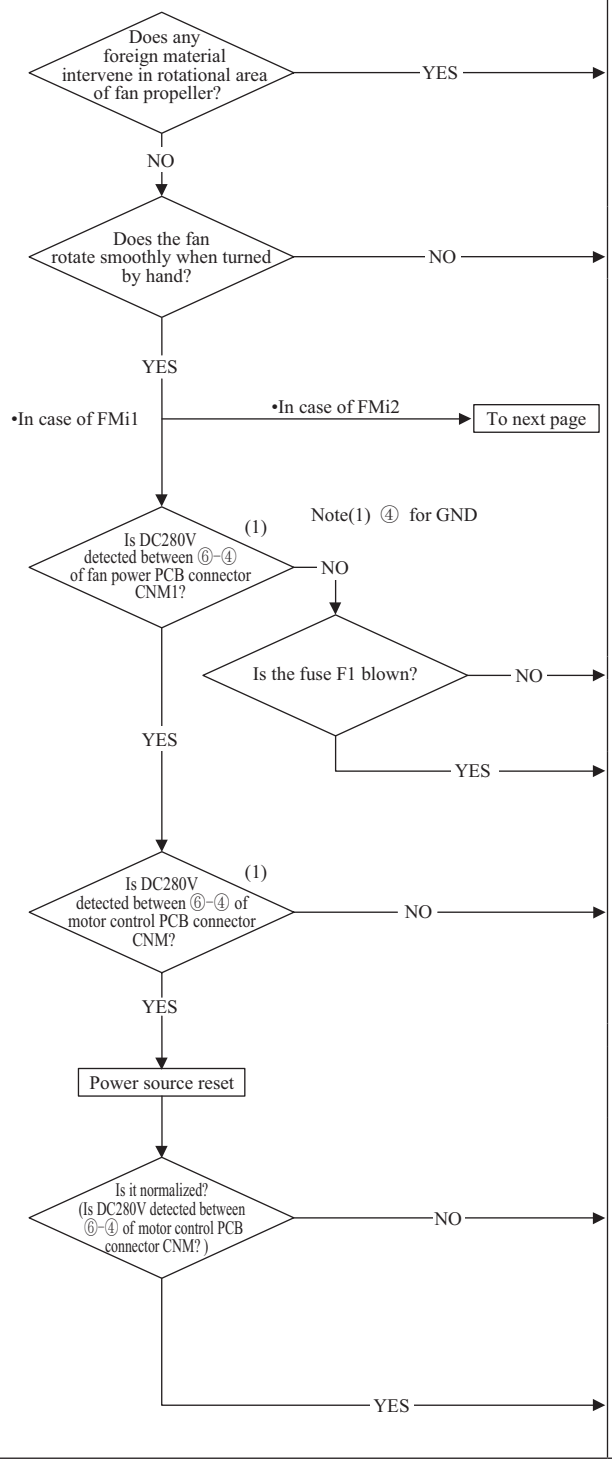
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop. After 2 seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E16	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor fan motor anomaly (2/2) (FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

FDU series

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

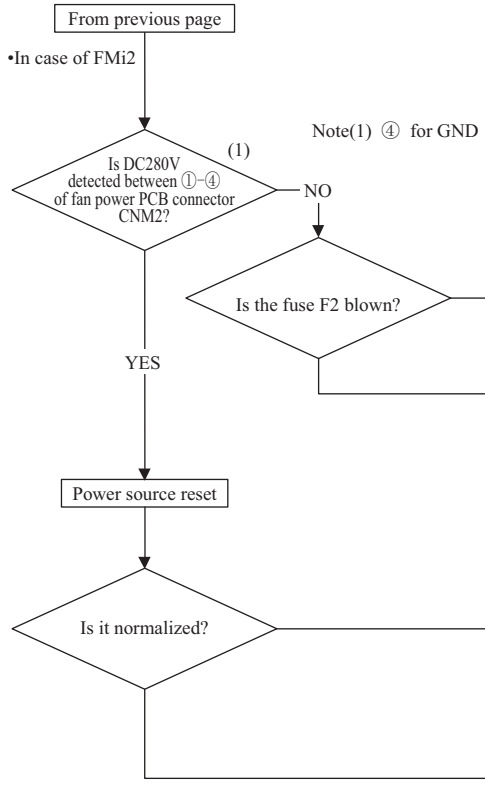
3. Condition of Error displayed

When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 200min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop. After 2 seconds, it starts again automatically, but if this error occurs 4 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	

Note:

Error code

Remote control: E18

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays Off

Content

Address setting error of master and slave indoor units (Except for single type)

1. Applicable model

Except for single type

2. Error detection method

IU address has been set using the “Master IU address set” function of remote control.

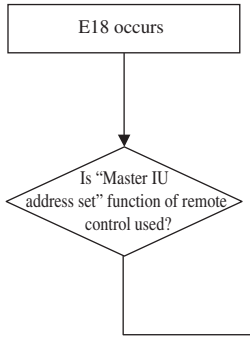
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Same as above

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	• In cases of RC-EX3A Menu ➞ Service setting ➞ IU settings ➞ Select IU • In cases of RC-E5 Return address No. to “IU …” using [▲] or [▼] button.

Note:

Error code

Remote control: E19

LED	Green	Red
Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF

Content

Indoor unit operation check, drain pump motor check setting error

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

After indoor operation check, when the communication between indoor and outdoor unit is established and SW7-1 is still kept ON.

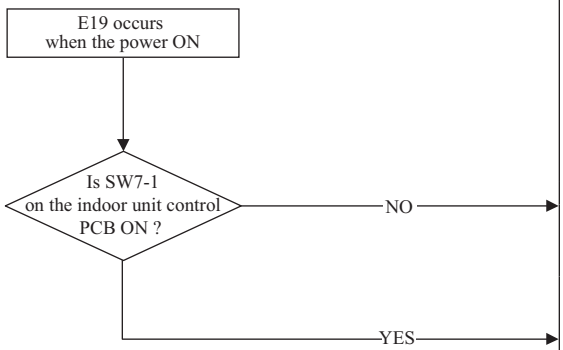
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

Mistake in SW7-1 setting
(Due to forgetting to turn OFF SW7-1 after indoor operation check)

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is SW7-1 on the indoor unit control PCB ON ? NO	Defective indoor unit control PCB (Defective SW7)→Replace.
Is SW7-1 on the indoor unit control PCB ON ? YES	Turn SW7-1 on the indoor unit control PCB OFF and reset the power.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (Except for FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

Except for FDU series

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

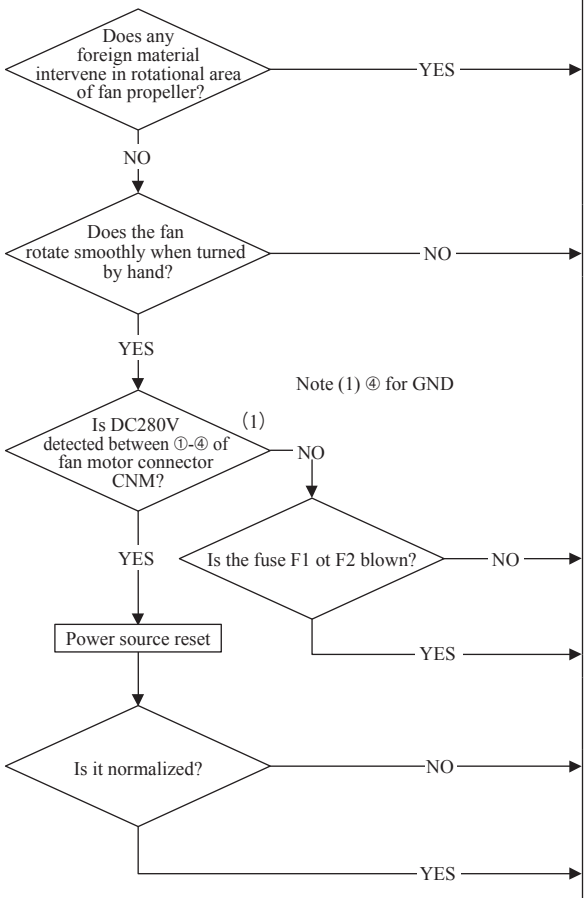
3. Condition of error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -50 min^{-1}] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (1/2) (FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

FDU series

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

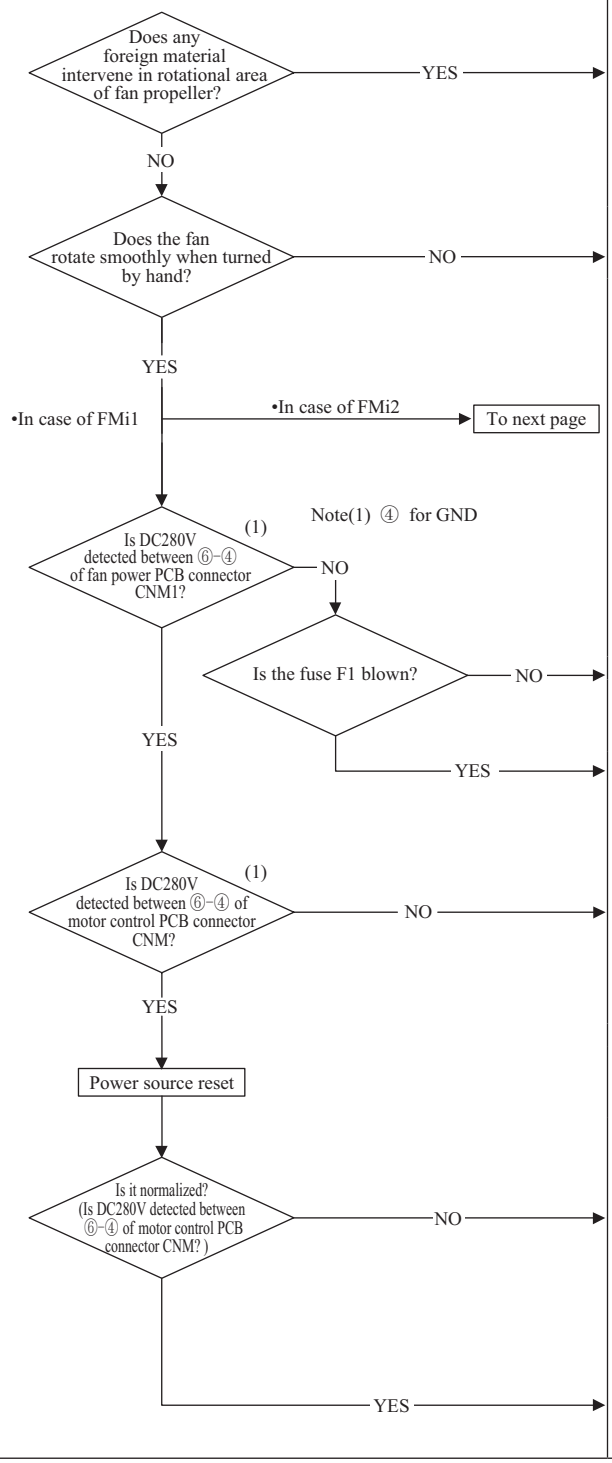
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -500 min^{-1}] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E20	Indoor	Keeps flashing	1(2)-time flash	Indoor fan motor rotation speed anomaly (2/2) (FDU series)
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note (1) Value in ( ) is for FMi2.

1. Applicable model

FDU series

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

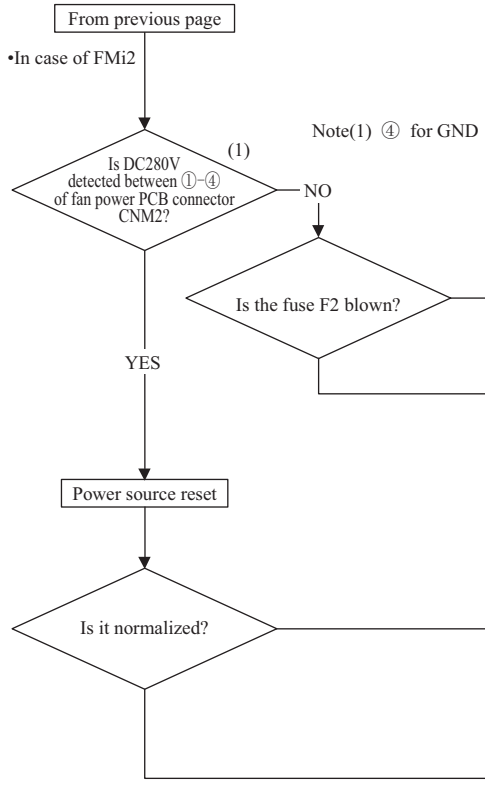
3. Condition of Error displayed

When the actual fan rotation speed does not reach to the speed of [required speed -500 min^{-1}] after 2 minutes have been elapsed since the fan motor rotation speed command was output, the unit stops by detecting indoor fan motor anomaly.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit power PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- Blown fuse
- External noise, surge
- Indoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Motor control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control: E28	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Remote control temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) of remote control temperature sensor (Thc)

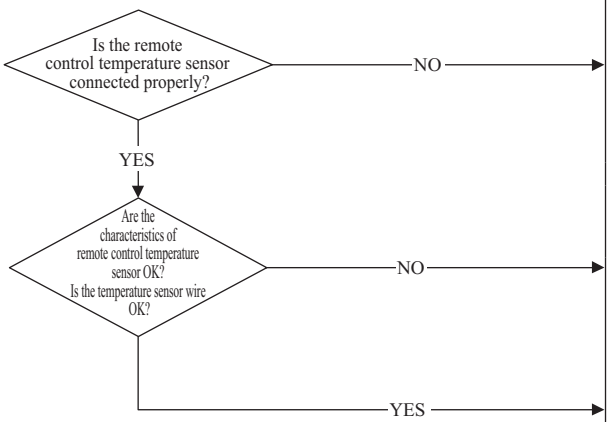
3. Condition of error displayed

When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty connection of remote control temperature sensor
- Defective remote control temperature sensor
- Defective remote control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Temperature-resistance characteristics of remote control temperature sensor (Thc)

Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)	Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)
0	65	30	16
1	62	32	15
2	59	34	14
4	53	36	13
6	48	38	12
8	44	40	11
10	40	42	9.9
12	36	44	9.2
14	33	46	8.5
16	30	48	7.8
18	27	50	7.3
20	25	52	6.7
22	23	54	6.3
24	21	56	5.8
26	19	58	5.4
28	18	60	5.0

Note: After 10 seconds has passed since remote control temperature sensor was switched from invalid to valid, E28 will not be displayed even if the temperature sensor harness is disconnected. At same time the temperature sensor, which is effective, is switched from remote control temperature sensor to indoor return air temperature sensor. Even though the remote control temperature sensor is set to be effective, the return air temperature displayed on remote control for checking still shows the value detected by indoor return air temperature sensor, not by remote control temperature sensor.

Error code

Remote control: E35

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Cooling overload operation

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to cooling high pressure protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

3. Condition of error displayed

When outdoor heat exchanger temperature anomaly is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Excessive refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
* For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, refer to E37.	
Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor normal? — NO	Replace outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor.
YES	
Is the unit operating in the state of cooling overload? — YES	Check unit side. • Isn't the air circulation of outdoor unit short-circuited? • Are installation spaces adequate? • Isn't there any fouling or clogging on heat exchanger?
NO	
Is the high pressure control normal? — NO	Control operation check *
YES	
Is the temperature (measured actually) at detection of error correct? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace.
YES	Excessive refrigerant amount : Recharge refrigerant by weighing proper amount on a scale.

* For the contents of control, refer to cooling high pressure protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E36	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Discharge pipe temperature error

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to compressor overheat protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

3. Condition of error displayed

When discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor
- Clogged filter
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Faulty solenoid valve SV1 (at heating mode)
- Clogging of capillary tube of SV1 circuit (at heating mode)
- Faulty coil of SV1
- Faulty control PCB
- Faulty body of SV1
- Clogging of the strainer on the upstream of SV1(at heating mode)
- Insufficient amount of refrigerant

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
* For the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor, refer to E39. Are the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor normal? — NO	Replace discharge pipe temperature sensor.
YES Is the discharge pipe temperature error persisted during cooling /heating operation? — YES	Insufficient refrigerant amount : Recharge refrigerant by weighing proper amount on a scale.
NO Is the discharge pipe temperature control normal? — NO	Control operation check *
YES Is the temperature (measured actually) at detection of error correct? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace.
YES	Check unit side: • Isn't filter clogged? • Are indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces adequate? • Isn't there any short-circuit of air? • Isn't there any fouling, clogging on indoor heat exchanger? • In addition to the above, check the clogging and malfunction of the SV1 circuit by the flow chart * 1.
* For the contents of control, refer to compressor discharge pipe temperature protection in page 35.	
* 1 Check the following when SV1 is on. (Check On/OFF status of SV1 with Mente PC)	
Is there any problem with the coil of SV1 function? •Is the coil removed from the body of SV1? •Is the coil wiring broken? •Is the coil connector disconnected? — YES	Fix abnormal condition.
NO Is 220-240 VAC applied to the CNF terminal of the control PCB ? — NO	Change control PCB.
YES Is the temperature between capillary tube and compressor of the SV1 circuit below 40 °C when the compressor is running? — NO	Change the body of SV1, the capillary tube and/or the strainer in the SV1 circuit.
YES Is there a temperature difference between upstream and downstream of the strainer in the SV1 circuit? — YES	Change the strainer in the SV1 circuit.
NO Is the amount of refrigerant appropriate? — NO	Adjust to the appropriate amount of refrigerant.
YES	Due to suspected partial clogging of SV1 circuit, change the body of SV1, the capillary tube and/or the strainer in the SV1 circuit. or Check the other actuator.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E37	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

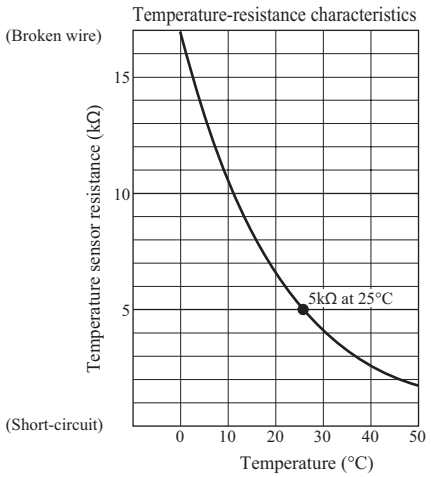
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes
- When -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES	
For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, see the following graph.	
Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E38	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on outdoor air temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

- When the temperature sensor detects -45°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes
- When -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON

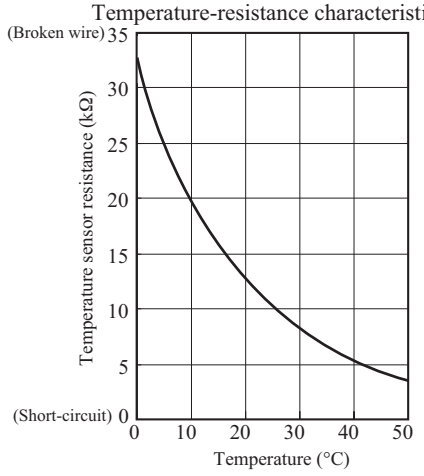
4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor air temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Is the characteristics of the outdoor air temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of outdoor air temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective outdoor air temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor air temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code

Remote control: E39

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the discharge pipe temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

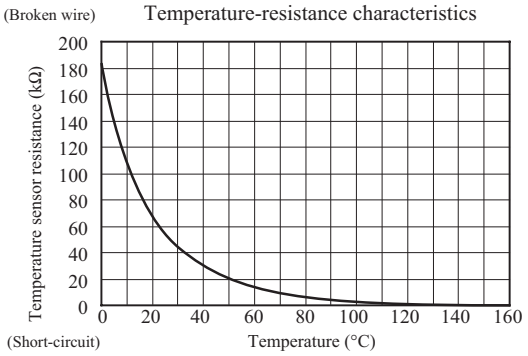
When the temperature sensor detects -10°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the discharge pipe temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E40	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

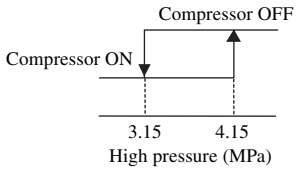
High pressure error (63H1 activated)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the high pressure switch 63H1 is activated.



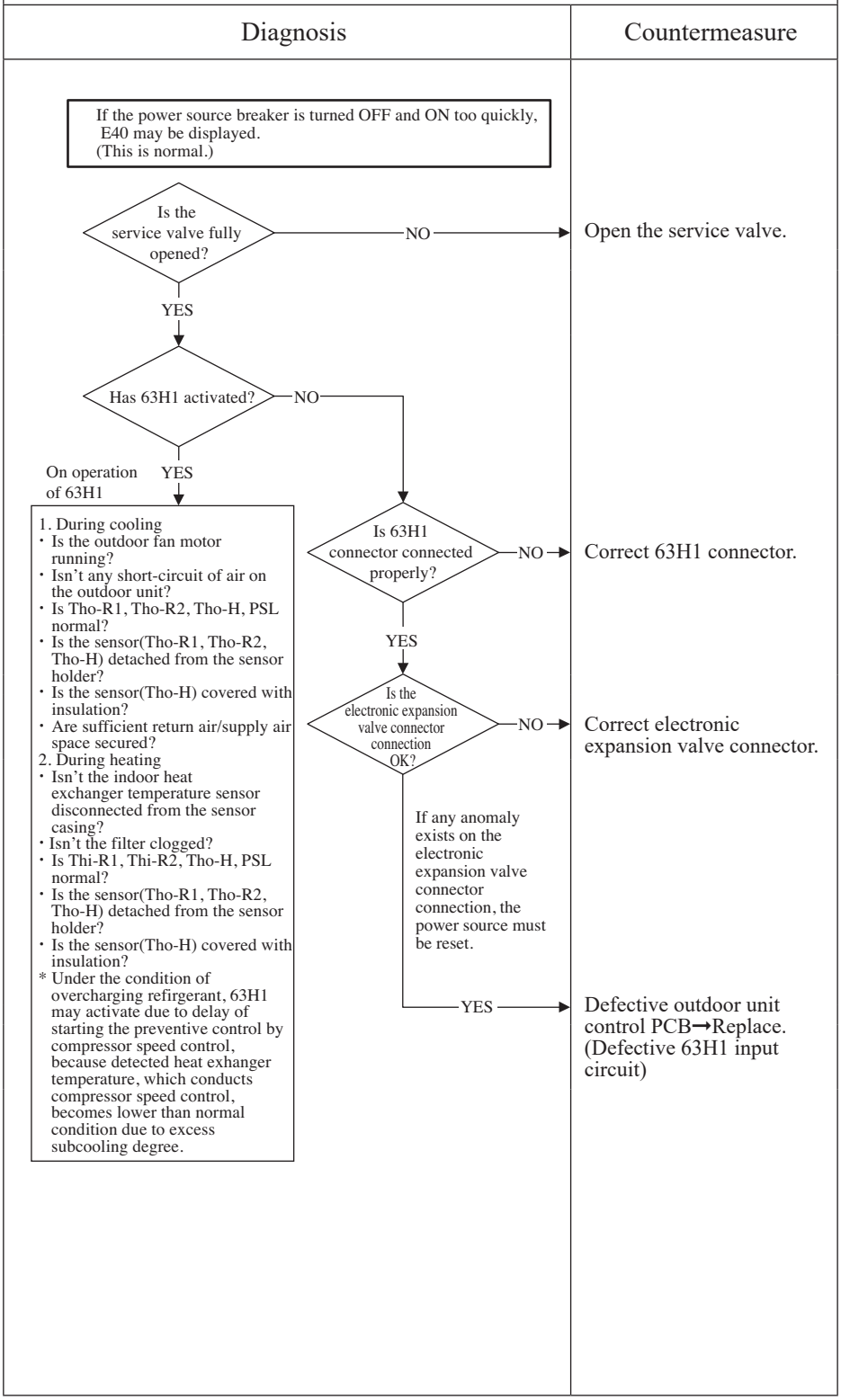
3. Condition of error displayed

If 63H1 turns OFF (opened), the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts. If this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes or continues for 60 minutes continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Short-circuit of air flow, disturbance of air flow and clogging filter at outdoor heat exchanger/Breakdown of fan motor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective 63H1 connector
- Defective electronic expansion valve connector
- Closed service valve
- Mixing of non-condensing gas (nitrogen, etc.)
- Faulty sensor(Tho-R1, Tho-R2, Thi-R1, Thi-R2, Tho-H, PSL)

5. Troubleshooting



Note: In the protective control range for compressor startup (initial startup after power ON), even if 63H1 is activated only once (63H1 turns OFF), immediately the error is displayed.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E41		–	–	Power transistor overheat
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalously high temperature is detected by power transistor

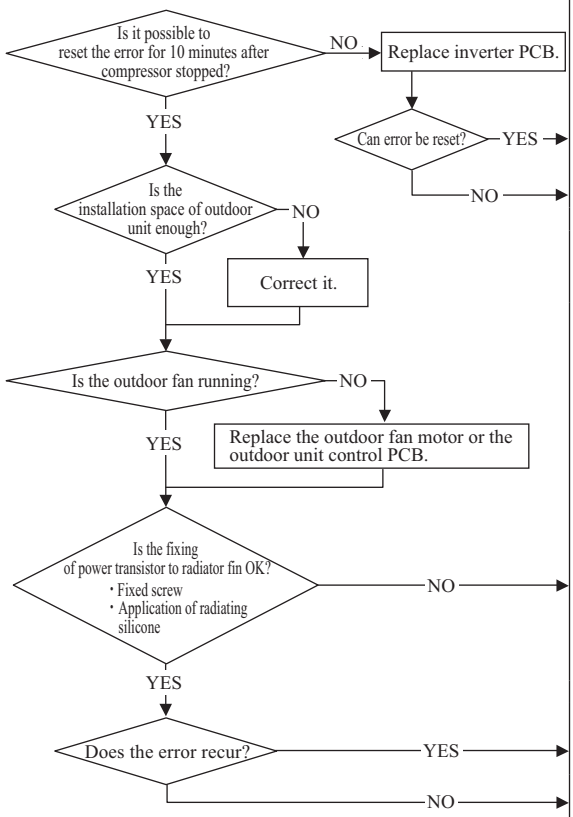
3. Condition of error displayed

Anomalously high temperature of power transistor is detected 5 times within 60 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Improperly fixing of power transistor to radiator fin
- Inadequate installation space of outdoor unit
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Power transistor module anomaly

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E42	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		9-time flash	

Content

Current cut (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

3. Condition of error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minutes after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- The service valves closed
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the power source voltage OK? — NO	Check power source.
YES → Are the service valves opened? — NO	Open the service valves.
YES → Is the high pressure during operation OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit. *In case of transitional increase of high pressure and/or test run, several times restarting may recover it, because liquid refrigerant (migrated) in the compressor is discharged from the compressor.
YES → Is the checked result of insulation resistance and resistance between terminals (1) of compressor motor OK? — NO	Replace compressor.
(1) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA-W)	
YES → To next page	

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E42	Indoor	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		9-time flash	

Content

Current cut (2/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

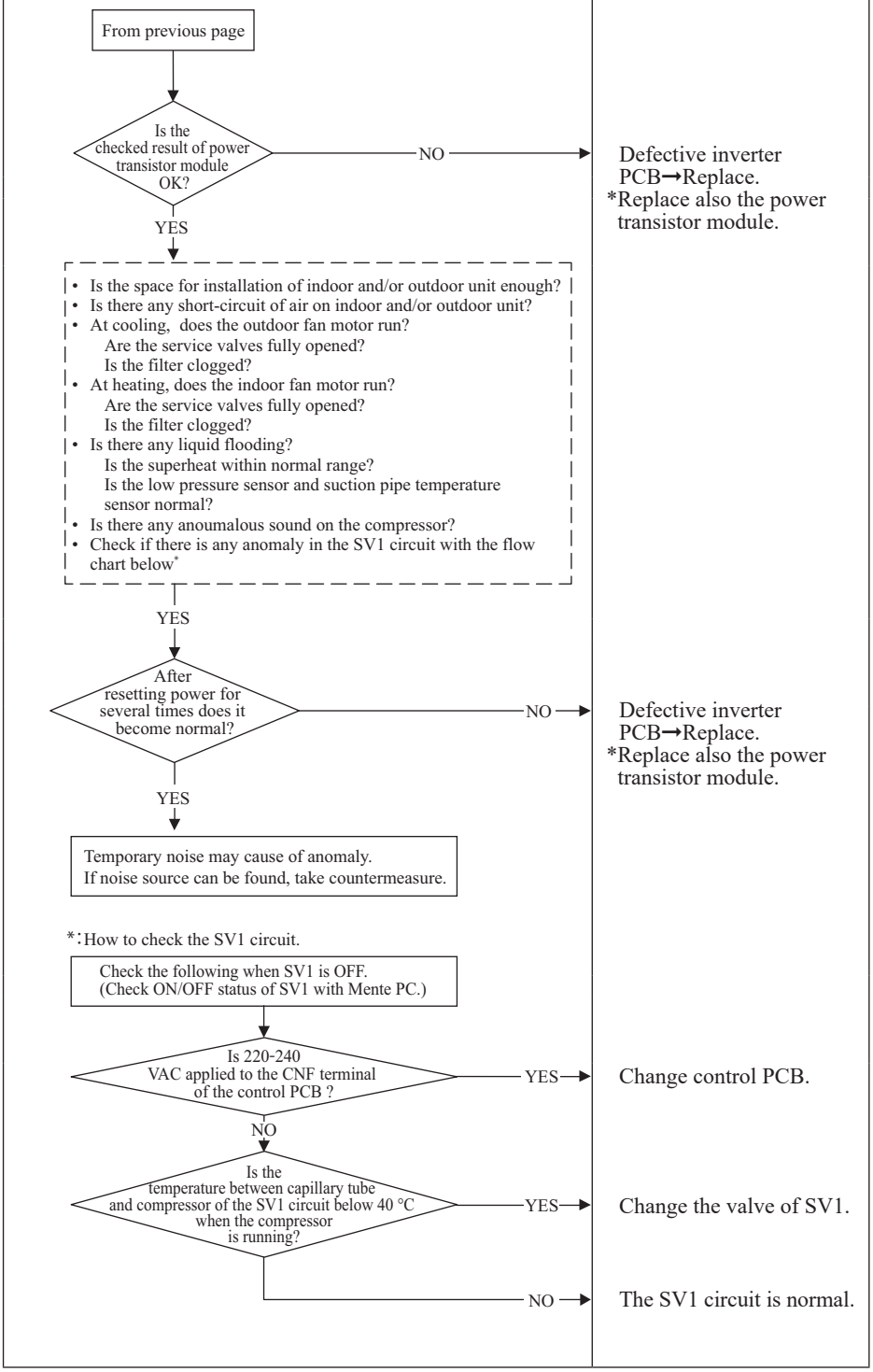
3. Condition of error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minutes after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective inverter PCB
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E44	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Liquid back error (Cooling mode)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by under-dome superheat.

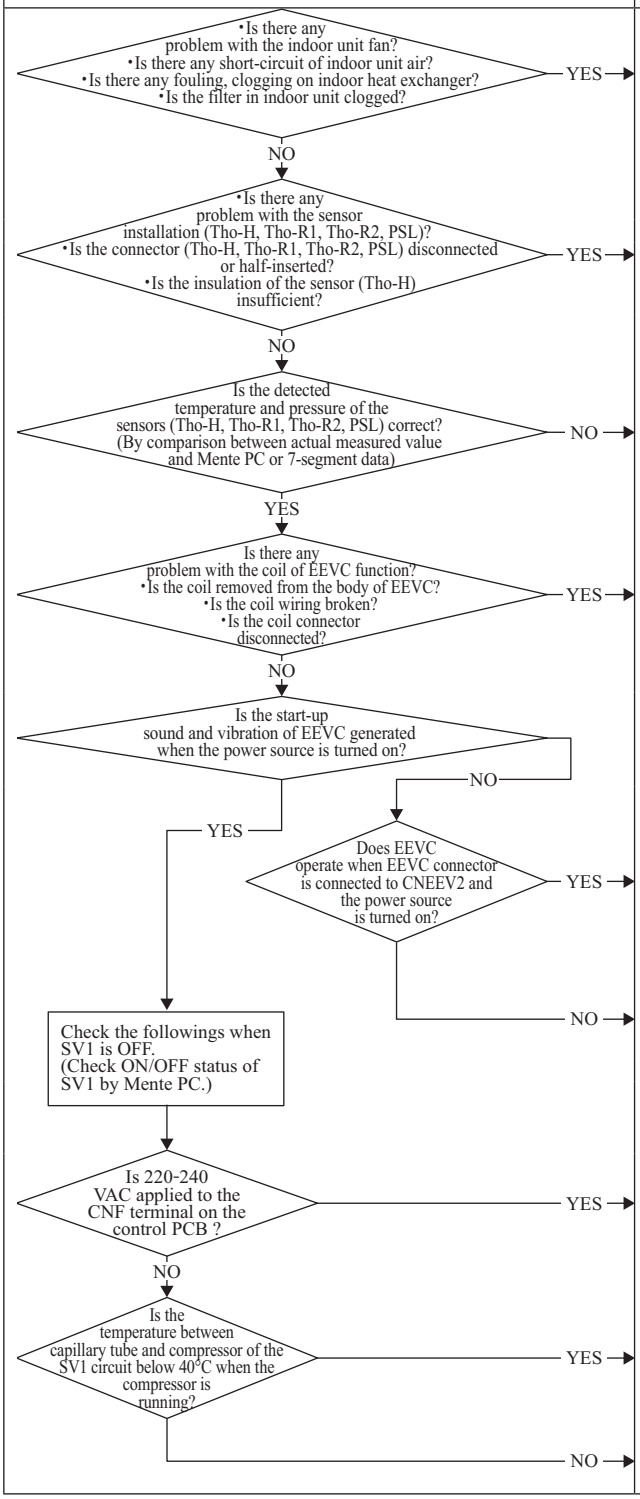
3. Condition of error displayed

When abnormal liquid back is detected 3 times within 90 minutes, the compressor stops.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit fan
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Short-circuit of air on indoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Clogged filter
- Abnormal condition of Tho-H, Tho-R1, Tho-R2, PSL
- Faulty coil of EEVC
- Faulty body of EEVC

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E44	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Liquid back error (Heating mode)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by under-dome superheat.

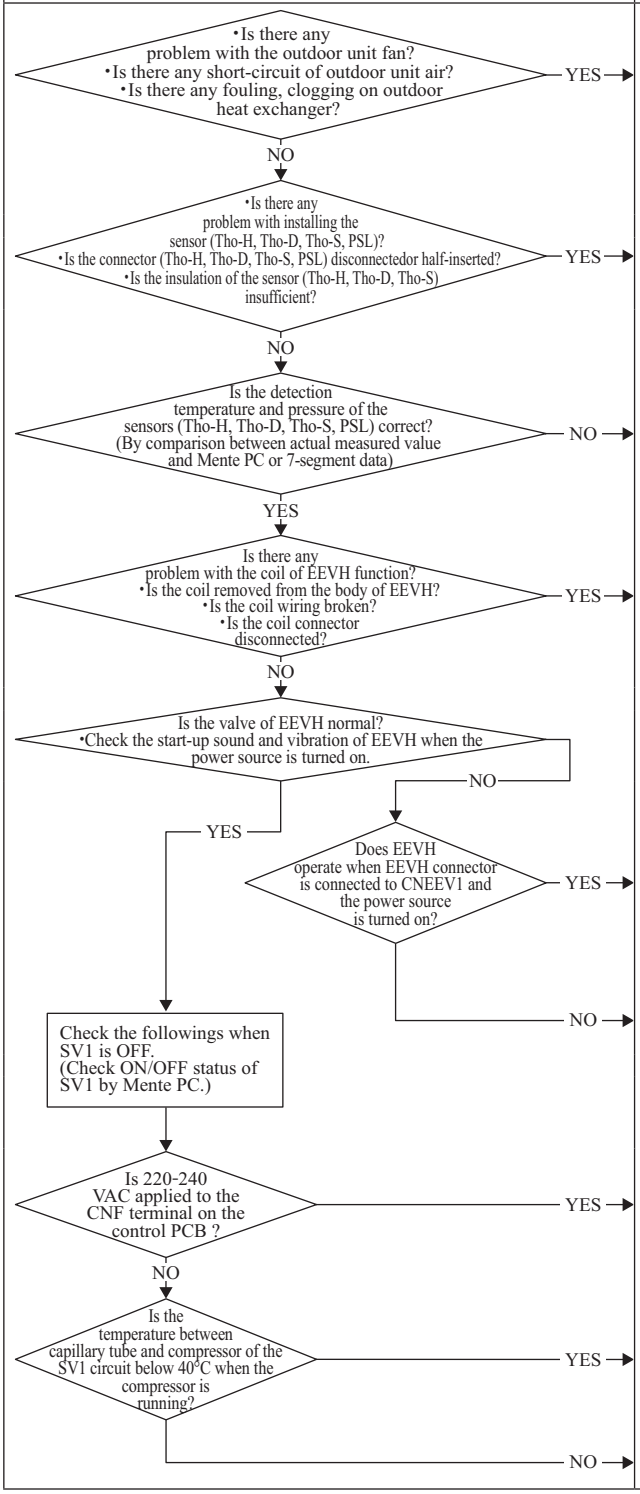
3. Condition of error displayed

When abnormal liquid back is detected 3 times within 90 minutes, the compressor stops.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty outdoor unit fan
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Short-circuit of air on outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Clogged filter
- Abnormal condition of Tho-H, Tho-D, Tho-S, PSL
- Faulty coil of EEVH
- Faulty body of EEVH

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: E45

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

When the communication between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB is not established

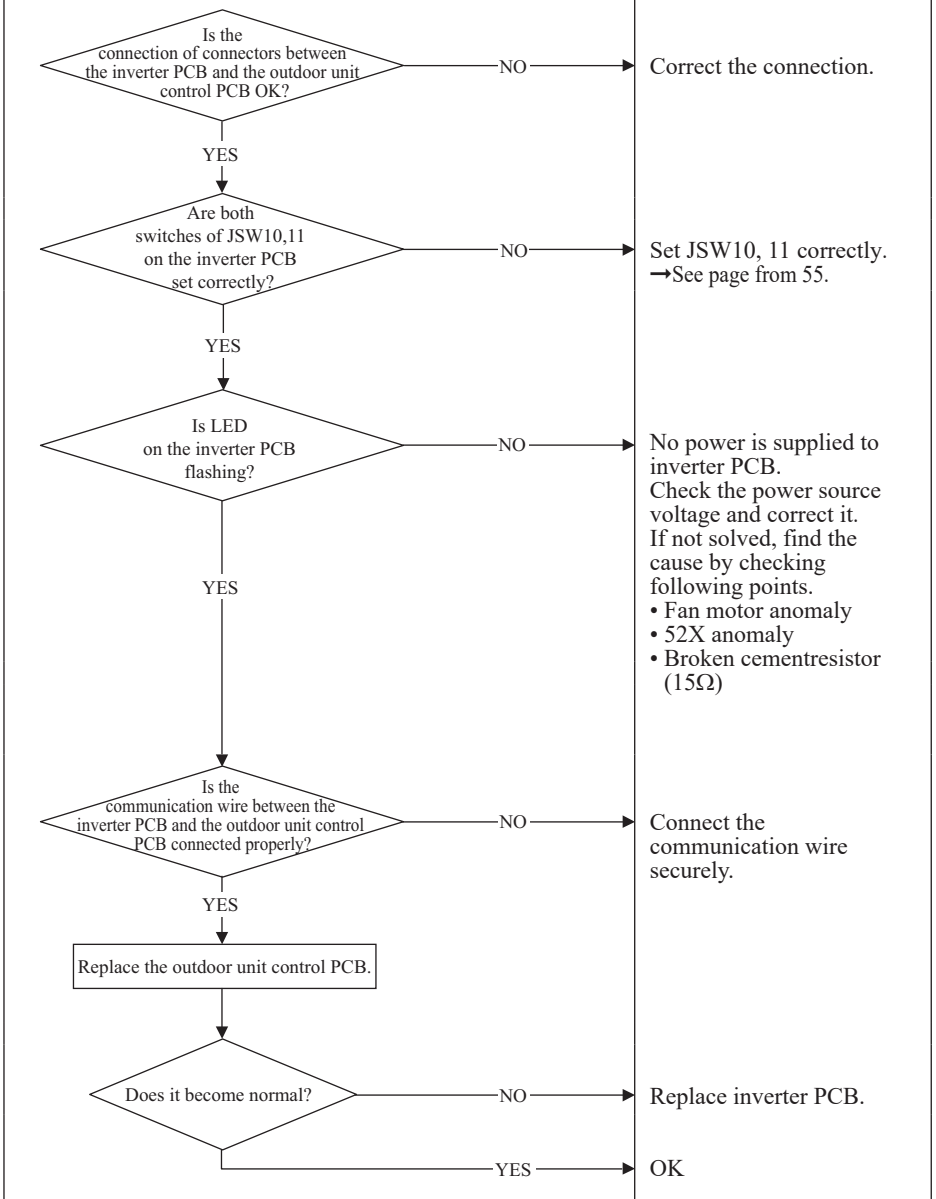
3.Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4.Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous connection of connector between the outdoor unit control PCB and inverter PCB
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code

Remote control: E48

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Outdoor fan motor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of outdoor fan motor

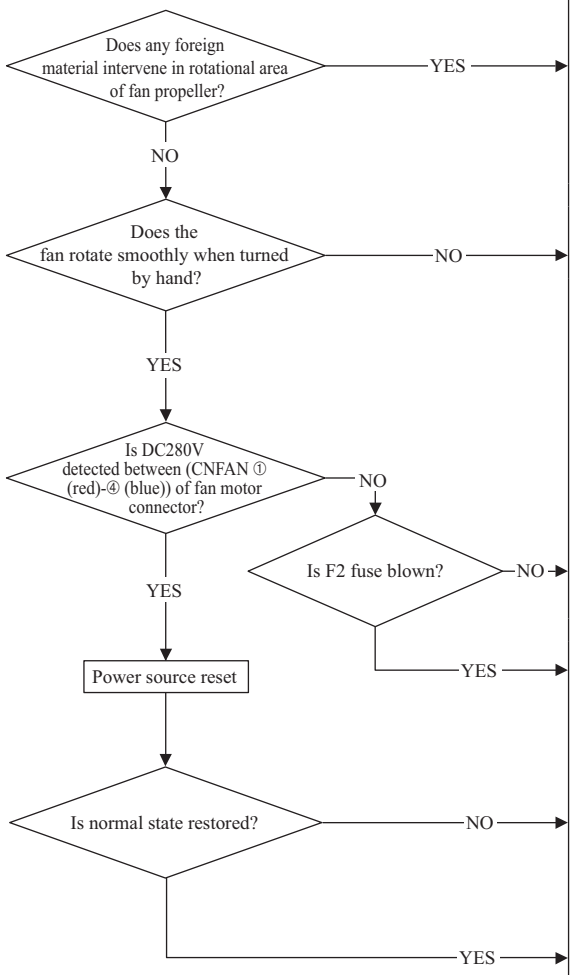
3. Condition of error displayed

When actual rotation speed of outdoor fan motor (FMo1, 2) drops to 100min^{-1} or lower for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the outdoor fan motor stop. After 3-minute delay, it starts again automatically, but if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on outdoor unit control PCB
- Blow fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When E48 error occurs, in almost cases F2 fuse (4A) on the outdoor unit control PCB is blown. There are a lot of cases that fuse is blown and E48 occurs due to defective fan motor. And even though only the outdoor unit control PCB (or fuse) is replaced,, another trouble (*1) could occur. Therefore when fuse is blown, check whether the fan motor is OK or not.
After confirming the fan motor normal, check by power ON. (Don't power ON without confirming the fan motor normal.)
*1 The error which does not seem to relate E48 may occur like as "WAIT", Stay OFF of LED on outdoor unit control PCB, inverter communication error (E45) and etc.

Error code

Remote control: E49

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keeps flashing	

Content

Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by low pressure drop and suction superheat

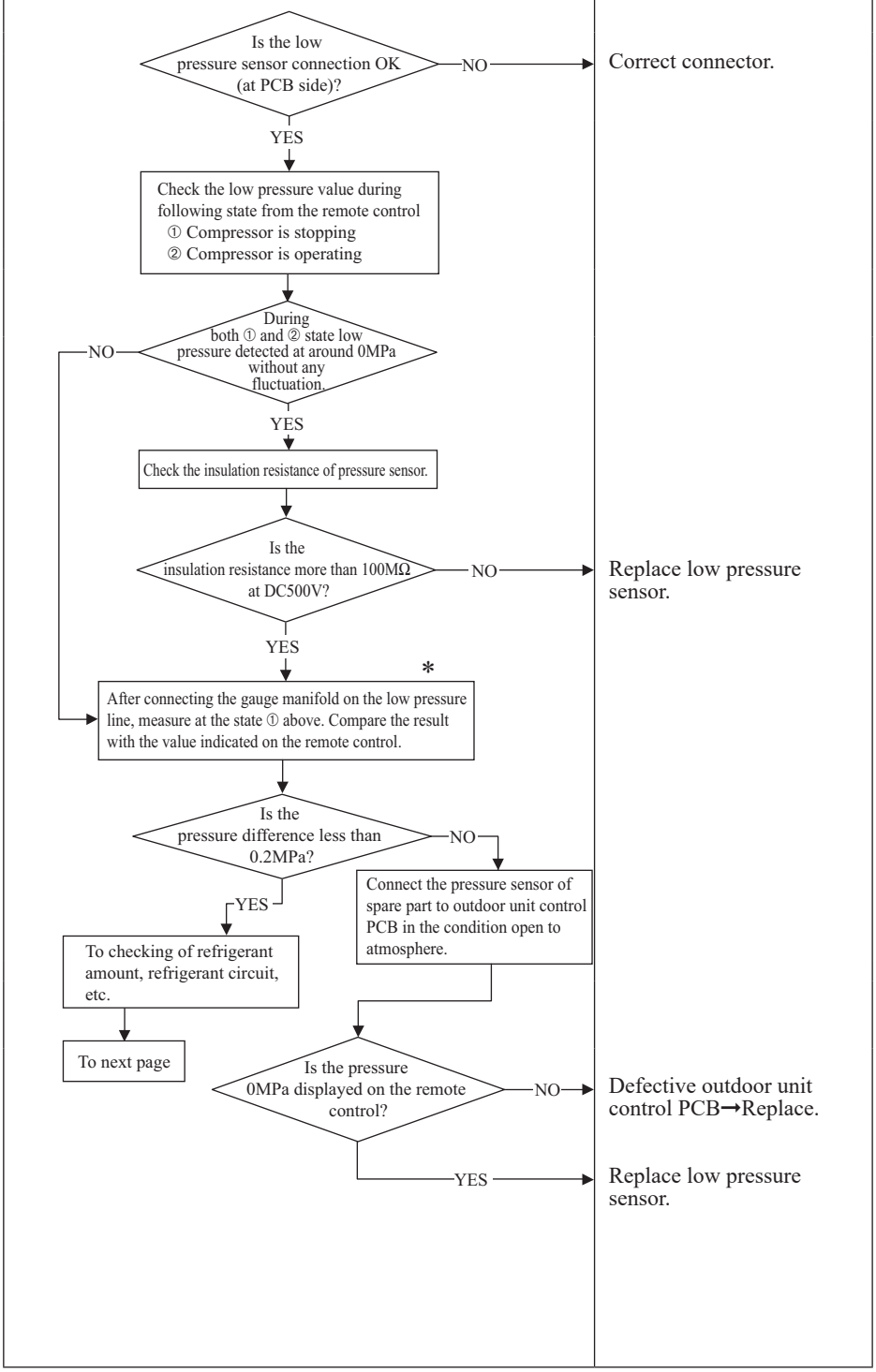
3. Condition of error displayed

① When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously, compressor stops and it restarts automatically after 3-minute delay. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
② 10 minutes after the compressor starts, if the low pressure sensor detects 0.15MPa or lower for 60 seconds continuously and compressor suction superheat is detected 30degC or higher for 60 seconds continuously. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
③ If low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 5 minutes continuously (Including the compressor stop status)

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective low pressure sensor connector
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connector
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor

5. Troubleshooting



Note: * Connect the gauge manifold to the service valve check joint during cooling, or connect it to the check joint at internal piping of outdoor unit during heating.

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E49	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (2/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by low pressure drop and suction superheat

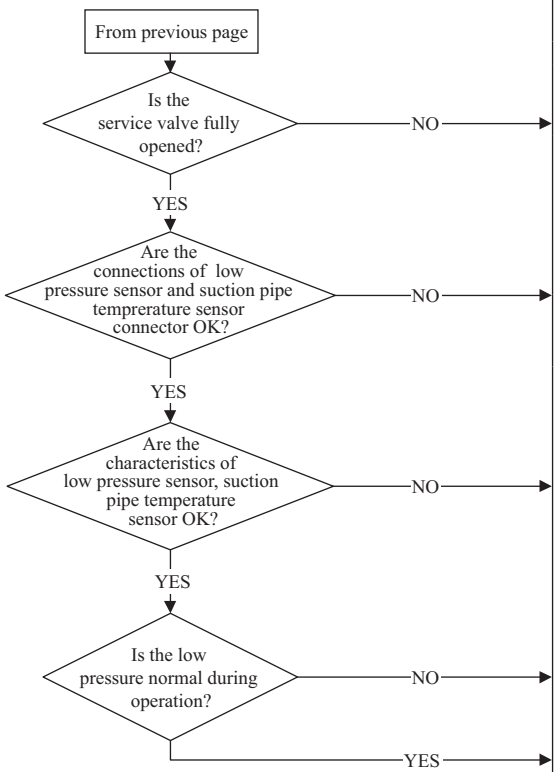
3. Condition of error displayed

① When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously, compressor stops and it restarts automatically after 3-minute delay. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
② 10 minutes after the compressor starts, if the low pressure sensor detects 0.15MPa or lower for 60 seconds continuously and compressor suction superheat is detected 30degC or higher for 60 seconds continuously. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
③ If low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 5 minutes continuously (Including the compressor stop status)

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective low pressure sensor connector
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connector
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red	Content
Remote control:E51	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	Inverter or power transistor anomaly
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		8-time flash		

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

When power transistor anomaly is detected for 15 minutes continuously

3.Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4.Presumable cause

• Inverter PCB anomaly
• Power transistor anomaly

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Replace inverter PCB.	
Did it return? YES	OK
NO	Replace power transistor.

Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E53	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the suction pipe temperature sensor detects anomalously low temperature

3. Condition of error displayed

If the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

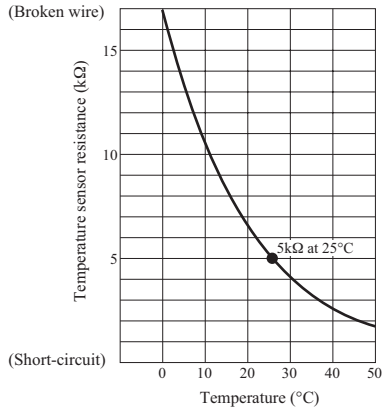
4. Presumable cause

- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connection
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of suction pipe temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct connection of suction pipe temperature sensor connector.
YES → For the characteristics of suction pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.	
Are the characteristics of suction pipe temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective suction pipe temperature sensor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective suction pipe temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E54	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Low pressure sensor anomaly

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalous voltage (pressure) is detected

3. Condition of error displayed

If the pressure sensor detects DC0V or lower and DC4.0V or higher for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly occurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective low pressure sensor connection
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Improper amount of refrigerant
- Anomalous refrigeration circuit

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are the connection of low pressure sensor connectors (at sensor side and PCB side) OK? — NO	Correct low pressure sensor connector connection.
YES → Are the pressure (actual measurement) matched with the value indicated on the remote control? — YES	Is refrigerant amount charged properly? Is there any anomaly on the refrigeration circuit?
NO → Replace the low pressure sensor. → Is normal condition restored? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective low pressure sensor input circuit)
YES	OK

Note:

Error code

Remote control:E55

LED	Green	Red
Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
	Keep flashing	

Content

Compressor under-dome temperature sensor anomaly

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

When anoumalous low temperature (resistance) is detected by the compressor under-dome temperature sensor

3.Condition of error displayed

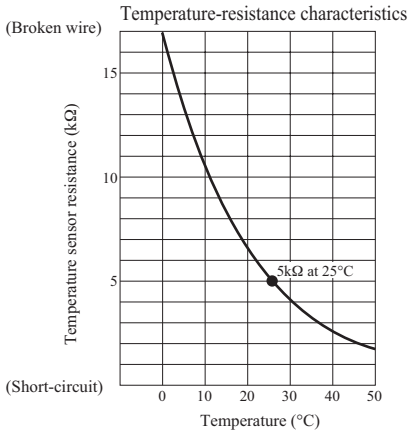
If the temperature sensor detcts -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

4.Presumable cause

- Defective under-dome temperature sensor connection
- Defective under-dome temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of under-dome temperature sensor connector OK? → NO	Correct connection of under-dome temperature sensor connector.
YES → For the characteristics of under-dome temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of under-dome temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective under-dome temperature sensor →Replace.
YES	Replace outdoor unit control PCB. (Defective under-dome temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E57	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

- Judge insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature differnce between indoor heat exchanger (Thi-R) and indoor return air (Thi-A).
- It detects at initial startup in cooling or dehumidifying mode after power ON.

3. Condition of error displayed

Anomalous stop at initial detection

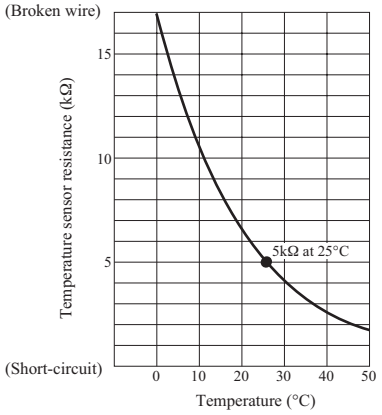
4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective indoor return air temperature sensor
- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Insufficient refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the service valve fully opened? NO	Open fully.
YES → Are the connections of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature sensor connectors OK? NO	Correct indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor connector connections.
YES → For the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger,return air temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature sensor OK? NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor →Replace.
YES → Is the low pressure during operation normal? NO	Charge refrigerant.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor input circuits)

Indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor
Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note: Insufficient refrigerant amount preventive control makes compressor stopped, if it judges insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature difference between indoor heat exchanger (Thi-R) and return air temperature (Thi-A) for 5 minutes after compressor ON in cooling or dehumidifying mode and for 9 minutes after compressor ON in heating mode. [in cooling mode: (Thi-A)-(Thi-R)<4degC, in heating mode: (Thi-R)-(Thi-A)<4degC]

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E59	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	5-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		4-time flash	

Content

Compressor startup failure (1/2)

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it fails to change over to the operation for rotor position detection of compressor motor

3. Condition of error displayed

If the compressor fails to startup for 20 times (10 patterns ×2 times) continuously

4. Presumable cause

- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous power source voltage
- Insufficient or excessive refrigerant amount
- Faulty component for refrigerant circuit
- Compressor anomaly (Motor or bearing)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
In case that the compressor does not start at all and no sound or vibration exists	
Is power source voltage OK? — NO	Check the power source voltage and correct it.
YES	
Is the pressure equalized at starting OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit.
YES	
Is the insulation resistance and resistance between terminals(1) of compressor OK? — NO	Replace compressor.
(1) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA-W)	
YES	
To next page	

Note: Insulation resistance
- The unit is left for long period without power source or soon after installation, insulation resistance may decrease to several MΩ or lower due to the liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor. If the electric leakage breaker is activated due to low insulation resistance, check followings.
  ① Check whether the insulation resistance can recover or not, after 6 hours has passed since power ON.
  (By energize the crankcase heater, liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor can be evaporated.)
  ② Check whether the electric leakage breaker conforms to high-harmonic specifications.
  (As INV PAC units has inverter, in order to prevent from improper operation, be sure to use the breaker of high-harmonic type.)

Error code	LED	Green	Red
Remote control: E59	Indoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	Stays OFF
	Outdoor control PCB	Keeps flashing	5-time flash
	Outdoor inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		4-time flash	

Content

Compressor startup failure (2/2)

1. Applicable model

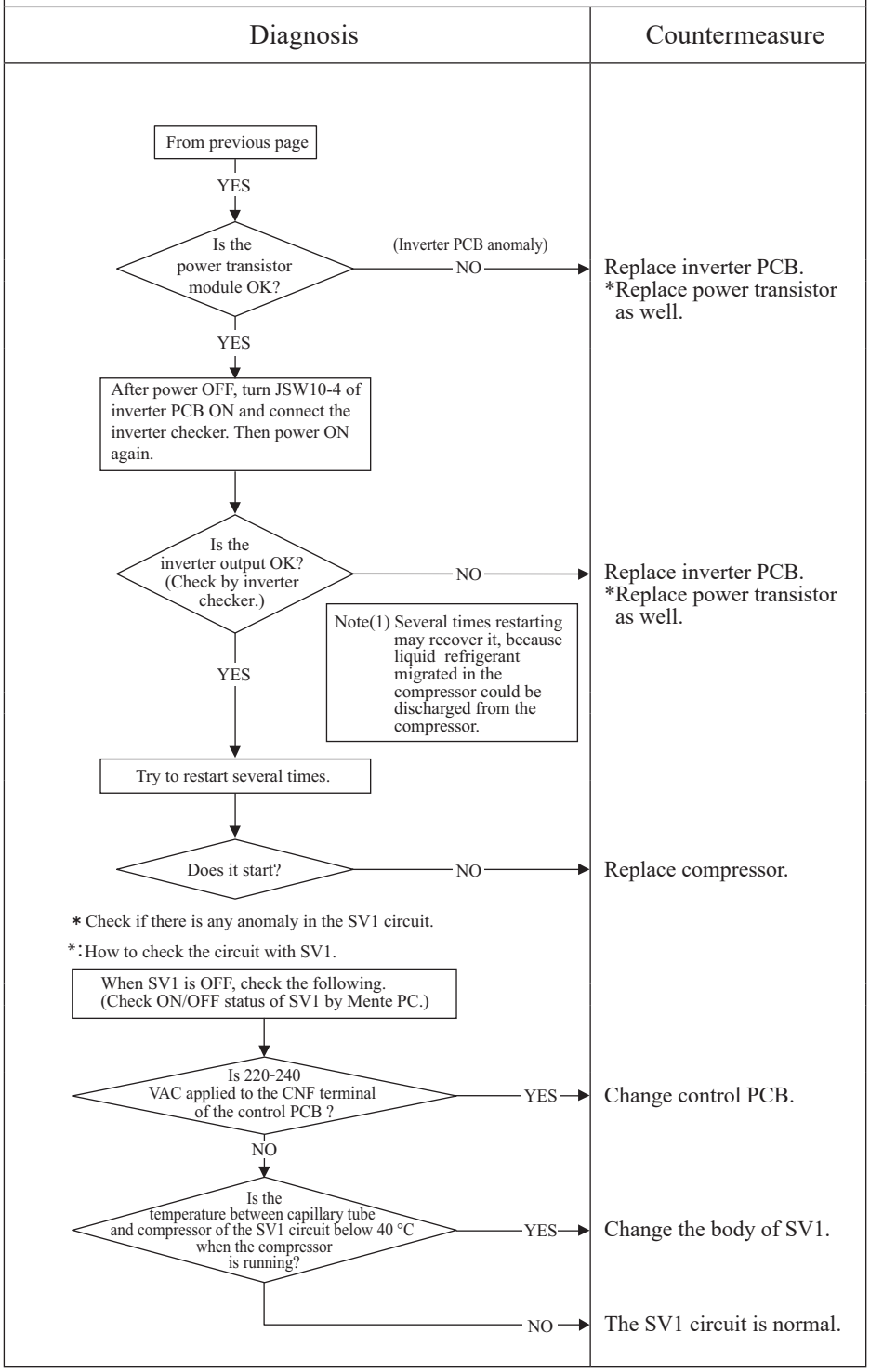
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

(b) SRK series

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Operates but does not cool.
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

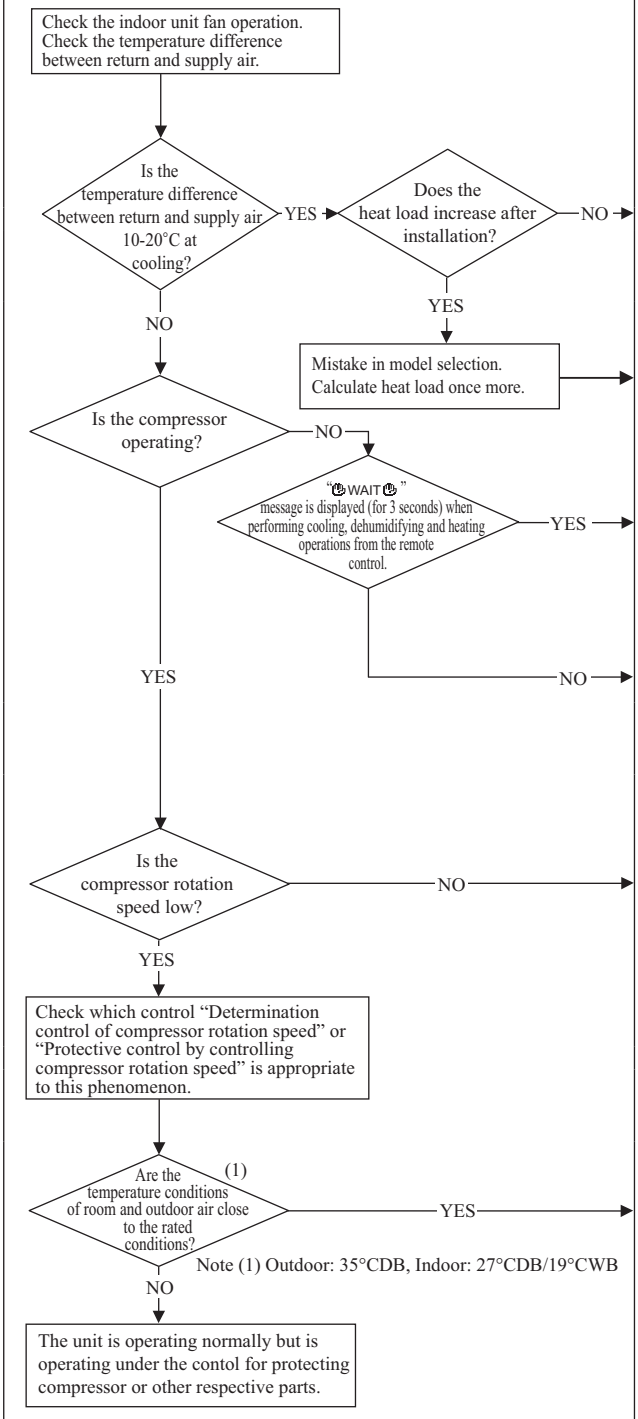
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Operates but does not heat.
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

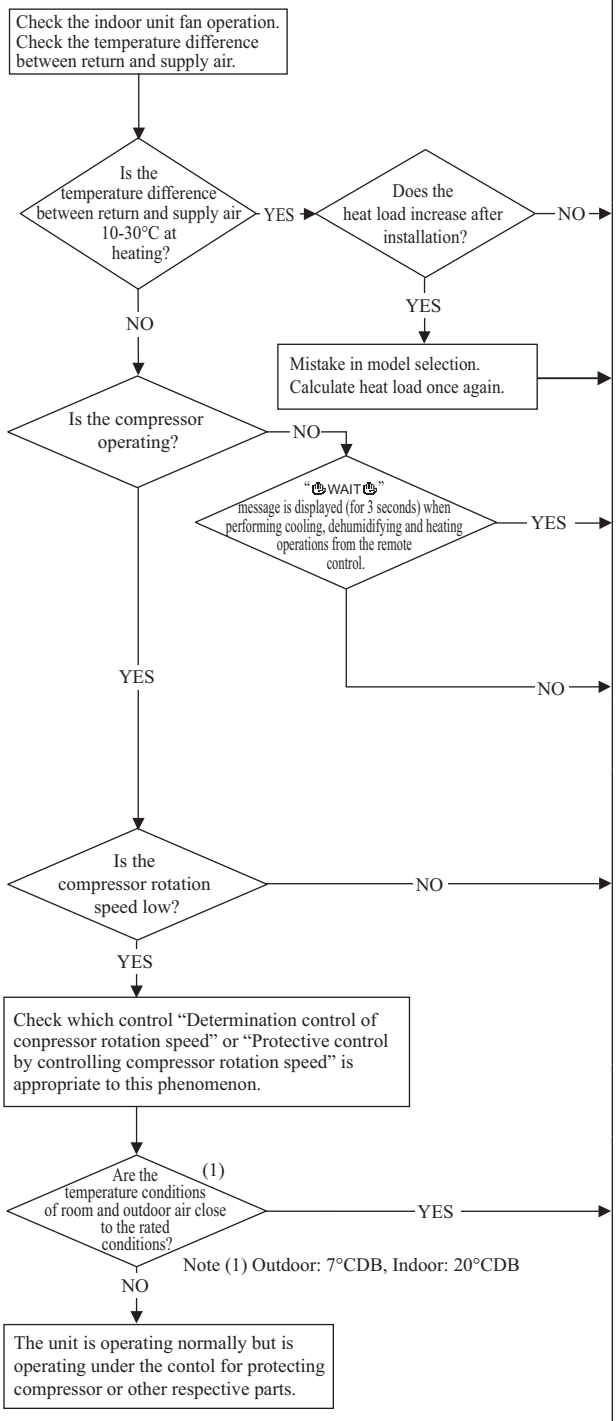
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Faulty 4-way valve operation
- Poor compression of compressor
- Faulty expansion valve operation

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Earth leakage breaker activated
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Stays OFF	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

• Defective compressor
• Noise

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are OK the insulation resistance and resistance between terminals (1) of compressor? (1) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA-W)	NO → Replace compressor.*
Is insulation of respective harnesses OK? Is any harness bitten between pannel and casing or etc?	NO → Secure insulation resistance.
YES → Check the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker.	

Check of the outdoor unit grounding wire/earth leakage breaker

① Run an independent grounding wire from the grounding screw of outdoor unit to the grounding terminal on the distribution panel. (Do not connect to another grounding wire.)
② In order to prevent malfunction of the earth leakage breaker itself, confirm that it is conformed to higher harmonic regulation.

* Insulation resistance of compressor
• Immediately after installation or when the unit has been left for long time without power source, the insulation resistance may drop to a few MΩ because of refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
When the earth breaker is activated at lower insulation resistance, check the following points.
① 6 hours after power ON, check if the insulation resistance recovers to normal.
When power ON, crankcase heater heat up compressor and evaporate the refrigerant migrated in the compressor.
② Check if the earth leakage breaker is conformed to higher harmonic regulation or not.
Since the unit is equipped with inverter, it is necessary to use components conformed to higher harmonic regulation in order to prevent malfunction of earth leakage breaker.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (1/3)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		–	–	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

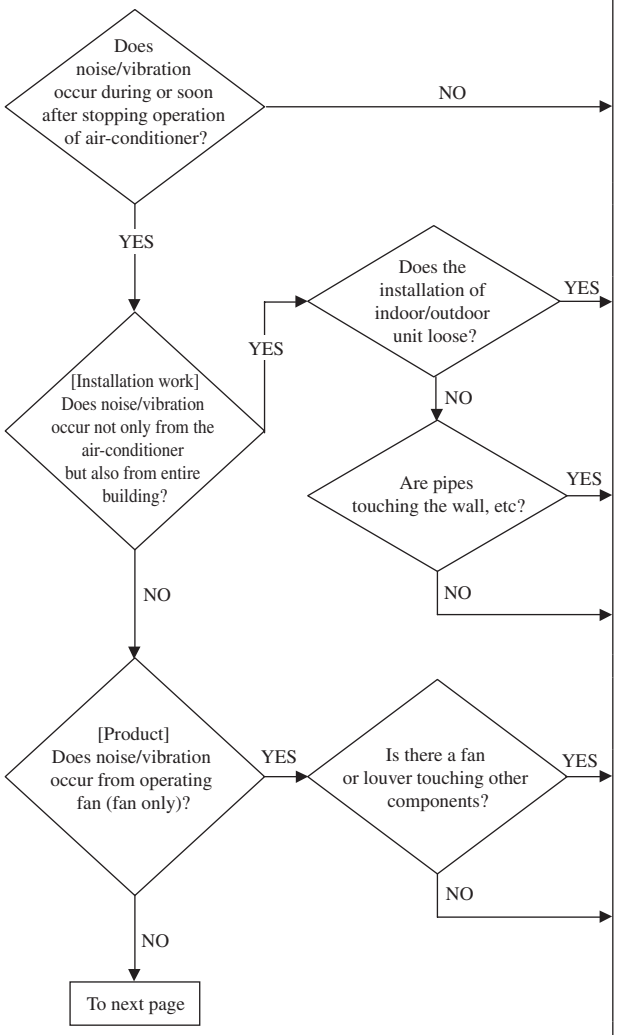
① Improper installation work
- Improper anti-vibration work at installation
- Insufficient strength of mounting face

② Defective product
- Before/after shipping from factory

③ Improper adjustment during commissioning
- Excess/shortage of refrigerant, etc.

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis



Countermeasure

If excessive noise/vibration persists when sufficient time has elapsed after stopping the unit, it is considered that the air-conditioner is not the source.

Check the installed condition carefully, and correct the position or insert rubber cushions or others into the gap, if necessary.

Prevent the vibration from transmitting to wall and etc by fixing pipes on the wall or wrapping rubber cushion around the pipe which goes through the hole in the wall or applying other appropriate means.

Strength of ceiling wall, floor, etc. may be insufficient. Review the installing position or reinforce it.

Check for leaning of installed unit or anomalous mounting of fan, louver or motor and specify the contacting point and correct it.

When the heat exchanger or filter is clogged, clean them. In case that the unit is installed at the site where background noise is very low, small noise from indoor unit can be heard, but it is normal. Before installation, check for background noise. If backgound nois is very low, convince client prior to installation.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (2/3)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		–	–	

1. Applicable model

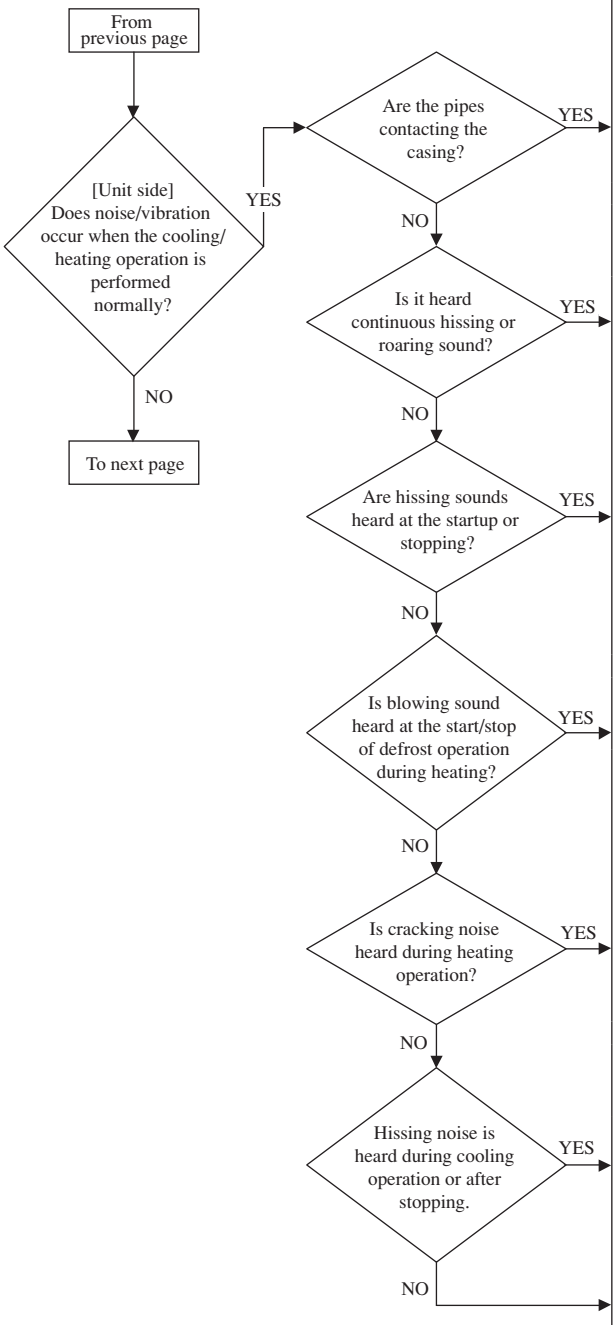
All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

5. Troubleshooting



Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are the pipes contacting the casing? YES	Rearrange the piping to avoid contact with the casing.
Is it heard continuous hissing or roaring sound? YES	It is noise/vibration that is generated when the refrigerant gas or liquid flow through inside of piping of air-conditioner. It is likely to occur particularly during cooling or defrost operation in the heating mode. It is normal.
Are hissing sounds heard at the startup or stopping? YES	The noise/vibration occurs when the refrigerant starts or stops flowing. It is normal.
Is blowing sound heard at the start/stop of defrost operation during heating? YES	When the defrost operation starts or stops during heating, the refrigerant flow is reversed due to switching 4-way valve. This causes a large change in pressure which produces a blowing sound. It may accompany also the hissing sounds as mentioned above. They are normal.
Is cracking noise heard during heating operation? YES	After the start or stop of heating operation or during defrost operation, abrupt changes in temperature cause resin parts to shrink or expand. This is normal.
Hissing noise is heard during cooling operation or after stopping. YES	It is the sound produced by the drain pump that discharges drain from the indoor unit. The pump continues to run for 5 minutes after stopping the cooling operation. This is normal.
NO	Apply the damper sealant at places considered to be the sources such as the pressure reducing mechanism (expansion valve), capillary, etc.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Excessive noise/vibration (3/3)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		–	–	

1.Applicable model

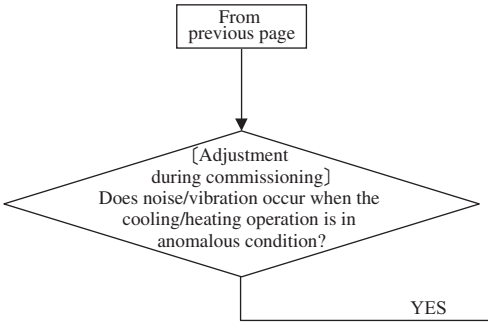
All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	If insufficient cooling/ heating problem happens due to anomalous operating conditions at cooling/ heating, followings are suspicious. • Overcharge of refrigerant • Insufficient charge of refrigerant • Intrusion of air, nitrogen, etc. In such occasion, it is necessary to recover refrigerant, vacuum-dry and recharge refrigerant. * Since there could be many causes of noise/ vibration, the above do not cover all. In such case, check the conditions when, where, how the noise/vibration occurs according to following check point. • Indoor/outdoor unit • Cooling/heating/fan mode • Startup/stop/during operation • Operating condition (Indoor/outdoor air temperatures, pressure) • Time it occurred • Operation data retained by the remote control such as compressor rotation speed, heat exchanger temperature, EEV opening degree, etc. • Tone (If available, record the noise) • Any other anomalies

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Louver motor failure
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Defective LM
- LM wire breakage
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
▲ Check at the indoor unit side.	
Operate after waiting for more than 1 minute.	
Does the louver operate at the power on? NO → Is LM wiring broken? YES	Repair wiring.
Is LM wiring broken? NO → Is LM locked? NO	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace.
Is LM locked? YES	Replace LM.
Does the louver operate at the power on? YES → Is the louver operable with the remote control? YES	Normal
Is the louver operable with the remote control? NO	Adjust LM lever and then check again.

LM: louver motor

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Power source system error (Power source to indoor unit control PCB)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1.Applicable model

All models

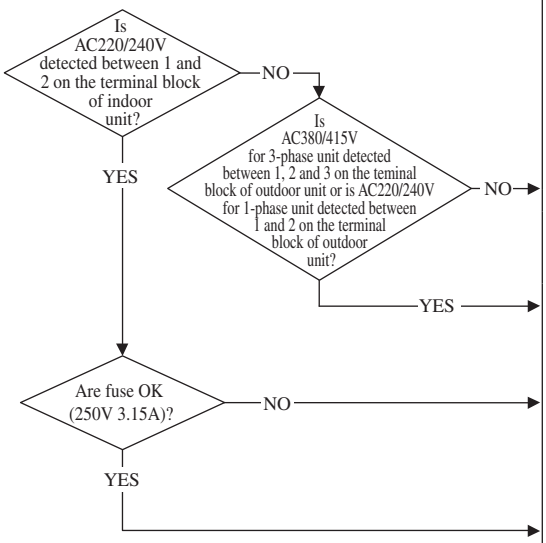
2.Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

- Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires
- Blown fuse
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Broken harness
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB (Noise filter)

5.Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
	

Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Noise filter) → Replace.

Misconnection or breakage of connecting wires

Replace fuse.

Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	Power source system error (Power source to remote control)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

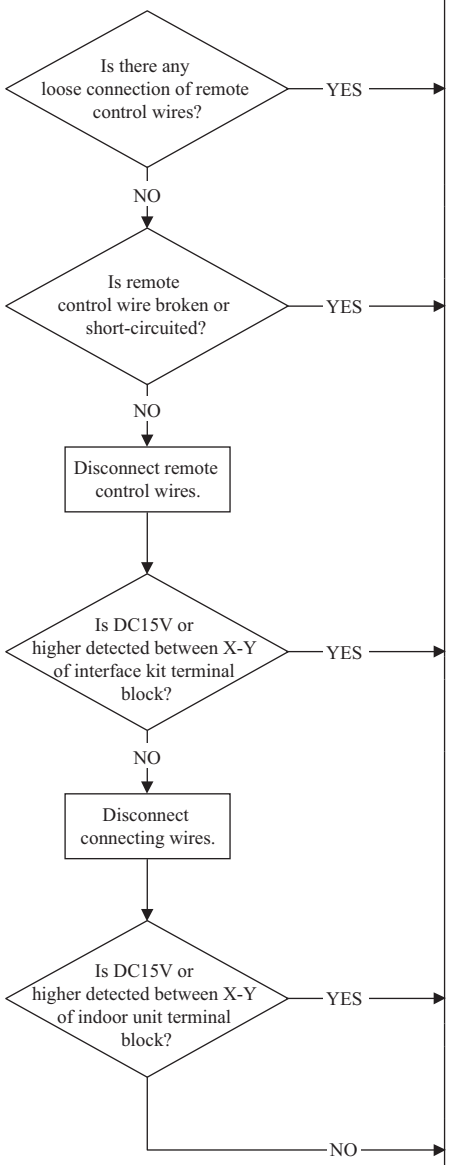
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Remote control wire breakage/short-circuit
- Defective remote control
- Malfunction by noise
- Broken harness
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty interface kit

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		Stays OFF	Keeps flashing	Limit switch anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

The limit switch operates when the indoor unit is stopped.

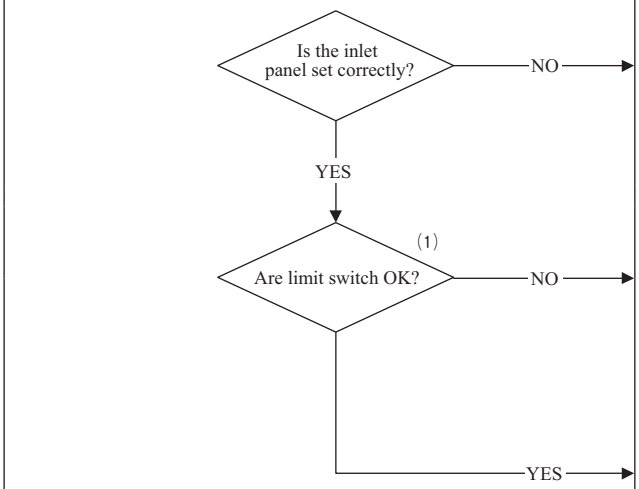
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective limit switch
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note (1) Check the operation of limit switch by checking if the error can be reset or not by pushing the limit switch by finger when the inlet panel is removed.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U		–	–	INSPECT I/U (When 1 or 2 remote controls are connected)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Communication between indoor unit and remote control is disabled for more than 30 minutes after the power on.

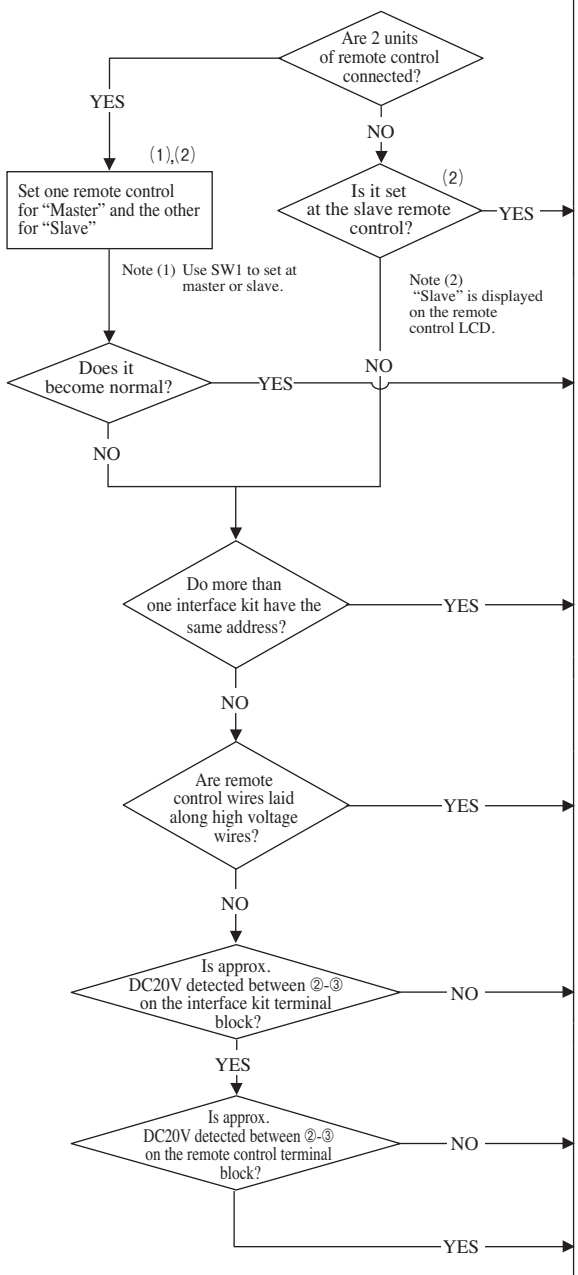
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty interface kit PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: INSPECT I/U		–	–	INSPECT I/U (Connection of 3 units or more remote controls)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Indoor unit cannot communicate for more than 30 minutes after the power on with remote control.

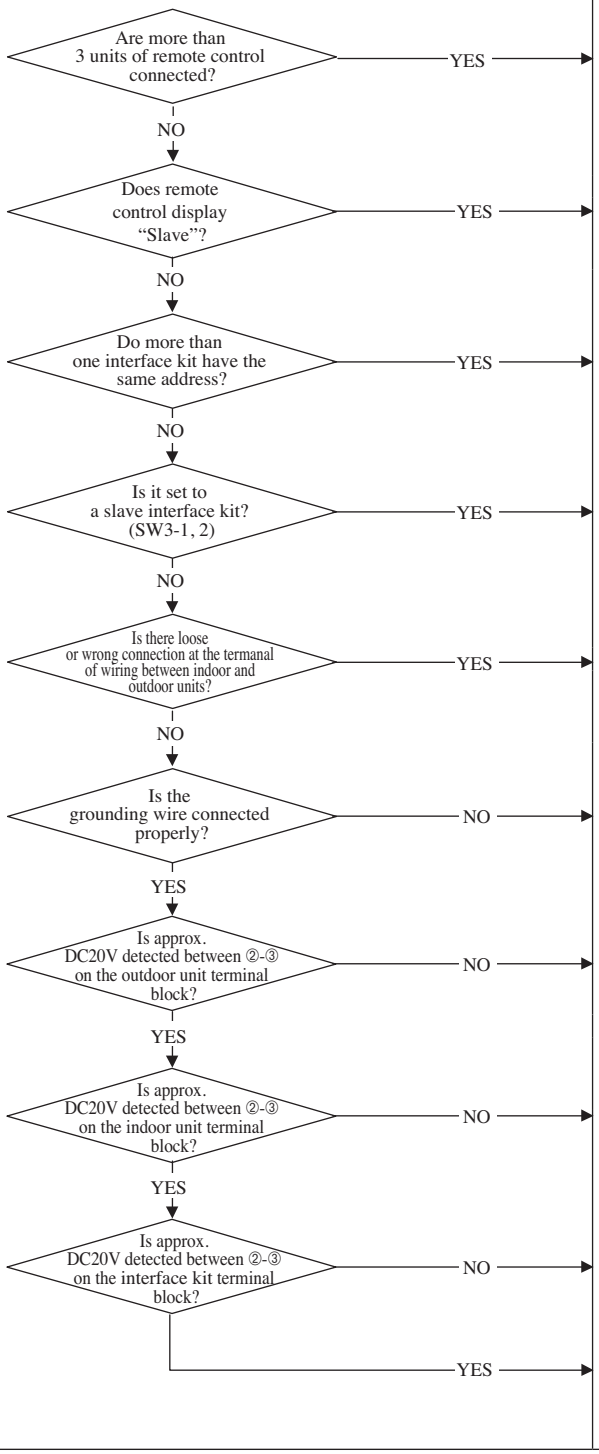
3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Improper setting
- Surrounding environment
- Defective remote control communication circuit
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Faulty interface kit PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Note: If any error is detected 30 minutes after displaying "WAIT" on the remote control, the display changes to "INSPECT I/U".

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: WAIT		–	–	Communication error at initial operation (1/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

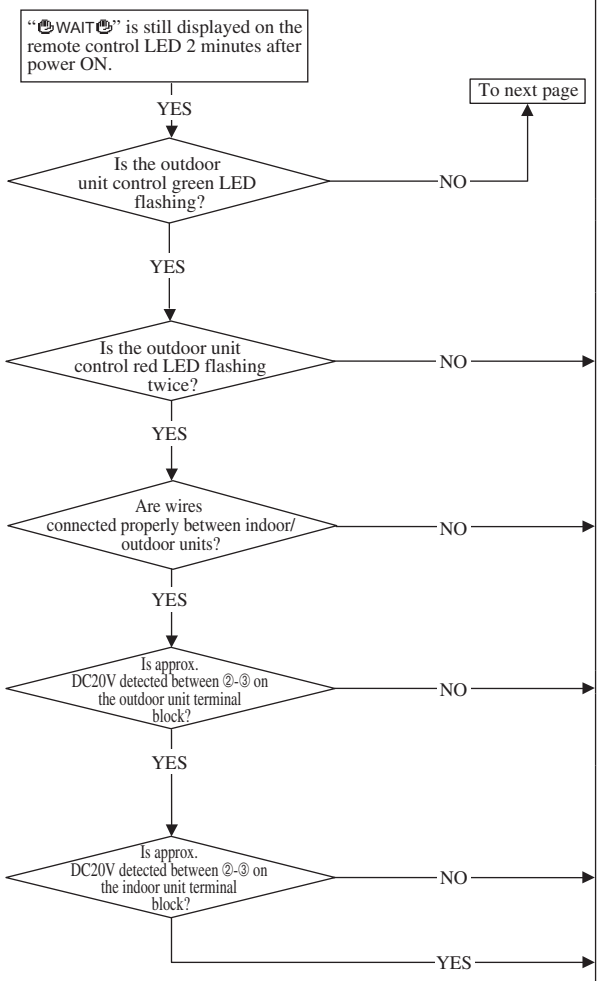
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken connection wires

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: WAIT		–	–	Communication error at initial operation (2/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty noise filter
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Faulty inverter PCB
- Faulty fan motor

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Diagnosis for when the outdoor unit control PCB LED is turned off	
From previous page → Shut down the breaker and back on again the breaker 3 minutes later.	
Does it reset normally? NO	
Does it reset normally? YES	Normal (Malfunction by noise)
Is AC380/415V detected at the noise filter secondary side? NO	Replace noise filter.
Is AC380/415V detected at the noise filter secondary side? YES	
Is DC280/373V detected at CNA2? NO	Check connection of diode stack and electrolytic capacitor by refering main electrical circuit diagram.
Is DC280/373V detected at CNA2? YES	
Is fuse 〔250V, 2A〕on the outdoor unit control PCB blown? YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace.
Is fuse 〔250V, 2A〕on the outdoor unit control PCB blown? NO	
Is DC5V detected on the outdoor unit control PCB (Between ①-④ of CNV)? NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace.
Is DC5V detected on the outdoor unit control PCB (Between ①-④ of CNV)? YES	
Is DC5V detected if the connector of outdoor fan motor is disconnected? NO	Defective outdoor fan motor
Is DC5V detected if the connector of outdoor fan motor is disconnected? YES	
Is DC5V detected if the inverter power source connector (CNI2) is disconnected? NO	Defective inverter PCB →Replace.
Is DC5V detected if the inverter power source connector (CNI2) is disconnected? YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		–	–	No display
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Stays OFF	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

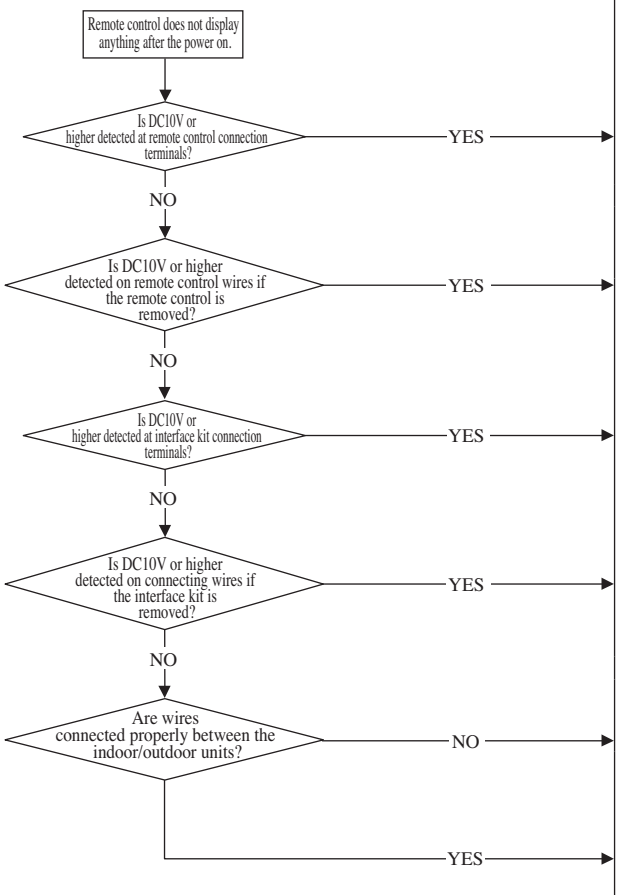
2. Error detection method

3. Condition of error displayed

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective remote control
- Broken remote control wire
- Defective interface kit

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E1		–	–	Remote control communication circuit error
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between the remote control and the indoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes. (Detectable only with the remote control)

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Defective communication circuit between remote control-indoor unit
- Noise
- Defective remote control
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB
- Defective interface kit

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is it possible to reset normally by the power reset? YES	Malfunction by noise Check peripheral environment.
NO → Is DC10V or higher detected at remote control connection terminals? YES	Defective remote control
NO → Is DC10V or higher detected on remote control wires if the remote control is removed? YES	Defective remote control
NO → Is DC10V or higher detected at interface kit connection terminals? YES	Defective interface kit
NO → Is DC10V or higher detected on connecting wires if the interface kit is removed? YES	Defective interface kit
NO → Are wires connected properly between the indoor/outdoor units? NO	Defective connecting wire Defective remote control wire (Short-circuit, etc.)
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB→Replace.

Note (1) Does the remote control still display "WAIT" even after 3 minutes?

Note: If the indoor unit cannot communicate normally with the remote control for 180 seconds, the indoor unit PCB starts to reset automatically.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E5		ON	6-time flash	Communication error during operation
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	See below	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When normal communication between indoor and outdoor unit is interrupted for more than 2 minutes.

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above is detected during operation.

4. Presumable cause

- Unit No. setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Faulty remote control wire connection
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
In case that the outdoor unit red LED flashes 2-time	
Note (1) Inspect faulty connections (disconnection, looseness) on the outdoor unit terminal block.	
Is the connection of signal wires at the outdoor unit side OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES	
Note (2) Check for faulty connection or breakage of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units.	
Is the connection of signal wires between indoor-outdoor units OK? — NO	Repair signal wires.
YES	
Power source reset	
Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	To the diagnosis of "WAIT"
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)
In case that the outdoor unit red LED stays OFF	
Power source reset	
Has the remote control LCD returned to normal state? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB (Defective network communication circuit) → Replace.
YES	Unit is normal. (Malfunction by temporary noise, etc.)

Note: Pressing the pump-down switch cancels communications between indoor and outdoor unit so that "communication error-E5" is displayed on indoor unit and remote control, but it is normal.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E6		1(3)-time flash(1)	ON	Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

Note(1) Value in ( ) are the $Th2_2$.

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected on the indoor heat exchanger sensor ($Th2_1$, $Th2_2$).

3. Condition of error displayed

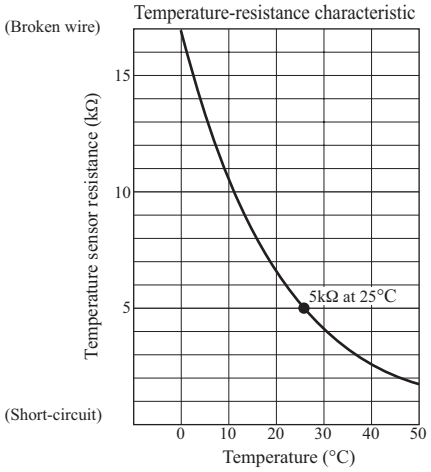
- When the temperature sensor detects -28°C or lower for 15 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minutes delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector
- Indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct it. → Insert connector securely.
YES → Are characteristics of indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: None		2-time flash	ON	Room temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Anomalously low temperature or high temperature (resistance) is detected by room temperature sensor (Th1)

3. Condition of error displayed

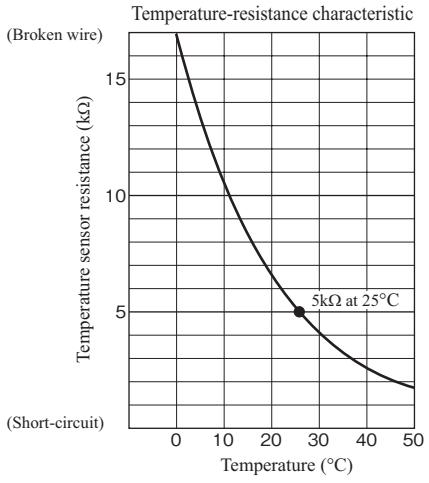
- When the temperature sensor detects -45°C or lower for 15 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective room temperature sensor connector
- Defective room temperature sensor
- Faulty indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of room temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct it. → Connect connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of room temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective room temperature sensor → Replace.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB → Replace. (Defective room temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E10		–	–	Excessive number of connected indoor units (more than 17 units) by controlling with one remote control
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it detects more than 17 of indoor units connected to one remote contorl

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Excessive number of indoor units connected
- Defective remote control

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Are more than 17 indoor units connected to one remote control?	
NO	Defective remote control → Replace.
YES	Reduce to 16 or less units.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E14		–	–	Communication error between master and slave indoor units
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When communication error between master and slave indoor units occurs

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Unit address setting error
- Broken remote control wire
- Defective remote control wire connection
- Broken interface kit wire
- Defective interface kit wire connection
- Defective indoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is it OK the unit address setting for master and slave interface kit? → NO	Correct unit address setting.
YES → Is the remote control wiring between interface kit defective? → YES	Correct wiring.
NO → Is the interface kit wiring between indoor units defective? → YES	Correct wiring.
NO → Is it restored by resetting the power source? → NO	Defective indoor unit control PCB→Replace.
YES	• Malfunction by noise • Check surrounding environment.

Note (1) Set DIP switches SW3-1 and SW3-2 as shown in the following table.
(Factory default setting – "Master")

		Interface kit	
		Master	Slave1
Dip switch	SW3-1	OFF	OFF
	SW3-2	OFF	ON

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E16		6-time flash	ON	Indoor fan motor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of indoor fan motor

3. Condition of error displayed

- When actual rotation speed of indoor fan motor drops to lower than 300min^{-1} for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the indoor fan motor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on indoor unit control PCB
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Does any foreign material intervene in rotational area of fan propeller? — YES	Remove foreign material.
NO → Does the fan rotate smoothly when turned by hand? — NO	Replace the fan motor.
YES → Note (1) ③ for GND → Is DC280V detected between ①-③ of fan motor connector CNU? (1) — NO	Replace indoor unit control PCB
YES → Power source reset → Is it normalized? — NO	Replace fan motor. (If the error persists after replacing the fan motor, replace the indoor unit control PCB.)
YES	Malfunction by temporary noise

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E28		–	–	Remote control temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	Stays OFF	

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) of remote control temperature sensor (Thc)

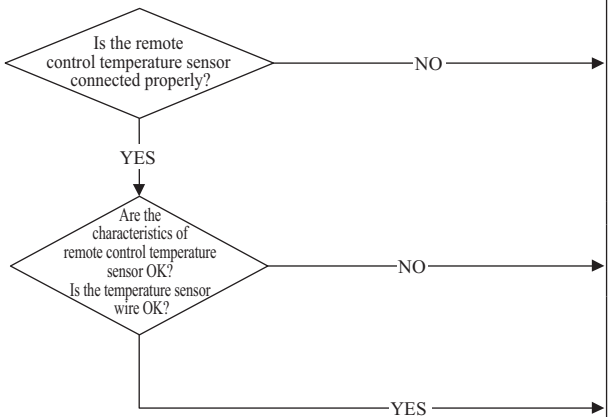
3. Condition of error displayed

When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this error occurs again within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty connection of remote control temperature sensor
- Defective remote control temperature sensor
- Defective remote control PCB

5. Troubleshooting



Temperature-resistance characteristics of remote control temperature sensor (Thc)

Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)	Temperature (°C)	Resistance value (kΩ)
0	65	30	16
1	62	32	15
2	59	34	14
4	53	36	13
6	48	38	12
8	44	40	11
10	40	42	9.9
12	36	44	9.2
14	33	46	8.5
16	30	48	7.8
18	27	50	7.3
20	25	52	6.7
22	23	54	6.3
24	21	56	5.8
26	19	58	5.4
28	18	60	5.0

Note: After 10 seconds has passed since remote control temperature sensor was switched from invalid to valid, E28 will not be displayed even if the temperature sensor harness is disconnected. At same time the temperature sensor, which is effective, is switched from remote control temperature sensor to indoor return air temperature sensor. Even though the remote control temperature sensor is set to be effective, the return air temperature displayed on remote control for checking still shows the value detected by indoor return air temperature sensor, not by remote control temperature sensor.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E35		ON	Keeps flashing	Cooling overload operation
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to cooling high pressure protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

3. Condition of error displayed

When outdoor heat exchanger temperature anomaly is detected 5 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Excessive refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
* For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, refer to E37.	
Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor normal? — NO	Replace outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor.
YES	
Is the unit operating in the state of cooling overload? — YES	Check unit side. • Isn't the air circulation of outdoor unit short-circuited? • Are installation spaces adequate? • Isn't there any fouling or clogging on heat exchanger?
NO	
Is the high pressure control normal? — NO	Control operation check *
YES	
Is the temperature (measured actually) at detection of error correct? — NO	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace.
YES	Excessive refrigerant amount : Recharge refrigerant by weighing proper amount on a scale.

* For the contents of control, refer to cooling high pressure protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E36		ON	5-time flash	Discharge pipe temperature error
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

For the error detection method, refer to compressor overheat protective control in the protective control by controlling compressor rotation speed of microcomputer control function for corresponding models.

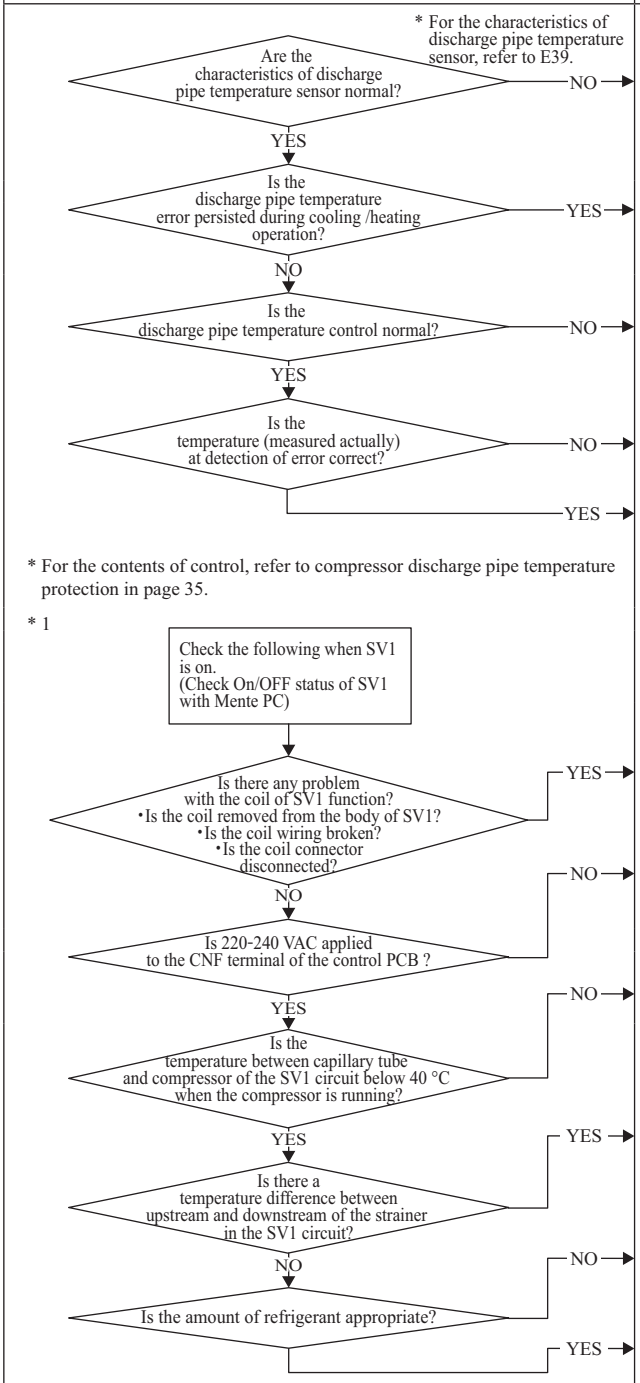
3. Condition of error displayed

When discharge pipe temperature anomaly is detected 2 times within 60 minutes or this anomalous state is detected 60 minutes continuously including compressor stop.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor
- Clogged filter
- Indoor, outdoor unit installation spaces
- Short-circuit of air on indoor, outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Faulty solenoid valve SV1 (at heating mode)
- Clogging of capillary tube of SV1 circuit (at heating mode)
- Faulty coil of SV1
- Faulty control PCB
- Faulty body of SV1
- Clogging of the strainer on the upstream of SV1(at heating mode)
- Insufficient amount of refrigerant

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E37		Keeps flashing	2-time flash	Outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

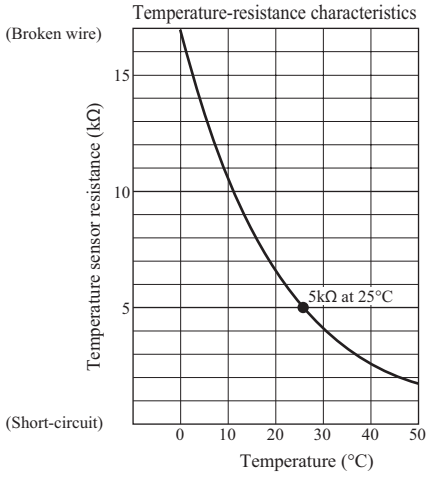
- When the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes
- When -50°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES	
For the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor, see the following graph.	
Are the characteristics of outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor heat exchanger temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E38		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	Outdoor air temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on outdoor air temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

- When the temperature sensor detects -45°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes
- When -45°C or lower is detected for 5 seconds continuously within 20 seconds after compressor ON

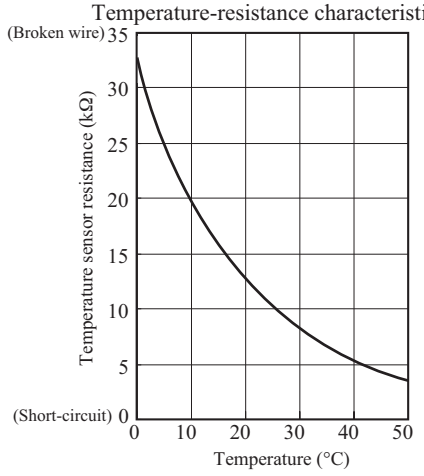
4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the outdoor air temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Is the characteristics of the outdoor air temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of outdoor air temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective outdoor air temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective outdoor air temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E39		Keeps flashing	4-time flash	Discharge pipe temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detection of anomalously low temperature (resistance) on the discharge pipe temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

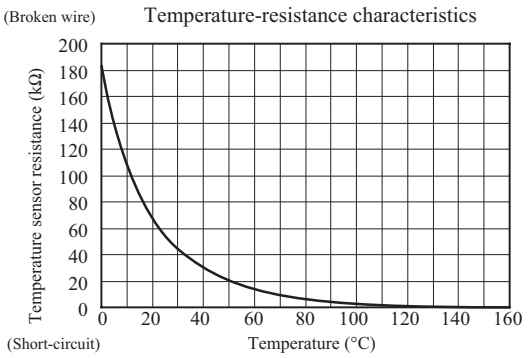
When the temperature sensor detects -10°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after the compressor ON, the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor starts again automatically, but if this anomalous temperature is detected 3 times within 40 minutes

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Broken sensor harness or temperature sensing section (Check molding.)
- Disconnected wire connection (connector)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the discharge pipe temperature sensor connector connected properly? → NO	Correct connector.
YES → Are the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor OK? (For the characteristics of discharge pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.) → NO	Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor→Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective discharge pipe temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

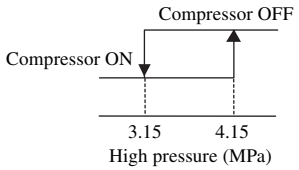
Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E40		–	–	High pressure error (63H1 activated)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the high pressure switch 63H1 is activated.



3. Condition of error displayed

If 63H1 turns OFF (opened), the compressor stops. After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts. If this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes or continues for 60 minutes continuously.

4. Presumable cause

- Short-circuit of air flow, disturbance of air flow and clogging filter at outdoor heat exchanger/Breakdown of fan motor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective 63H1 connector
- Defective electronic expansion valve connector
- Closed service valve
- Mixing of non-condensing gas (nitrogen, etc.)
- Faulty sensor(Tho-R1, Tho-R2, Thi-R1, Thi-R2, Tho-H, PSL)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis

If the power source breaker is turned OFF and ON too quickly, E40 may be displayed. (This is normal.)

Is the service valve fully opened?
- NO → Open the service valve.
- YES ↓

Has 63H1 activated?
- NO ↓
- YES (On operation of 63H1) ↓

1. During cooling
- Is the outdoor fan motor running?
- Isn't any short-circuit of air on the outdoor unit?
- Is Tho-R1, Tho-R2, Tho-H, PSL normal?
- Is the sensor(Tho-R1, Tho-R2, Tho-H) detached from the sensor holder?
- Is the sensor(Tho-H) covered with insulation?
- Are sufficient return air/supply air space secured?

2. During heating
- Isn't the indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor disconnected from the sensor casing?
- Isn't the filter clogged?
- Is Thi-R1, Thi-R2, Tho-H, PSL normal?
- Is the sensor(Tho-R1, Tho-R2, Tho-H) detached from the sensor holder?
- Is the sensor(Tho-H) covered with insulation?

* Under the condition of overcharging refirgerant, 63H1 may activate due to delay of starting the preventive control by compressor speed control, because detected heat exhanger temperature, which conducts compressor speed control, becomes lower than normal condition due to excess subcooling degree.

Is 63H1 connector connected properly?
- NO → Correct 63H1 connector.
- YES ↓

Is the electronic expansion valve connector connection OK?
- NO → Correct electronic expansion valve connector.
- YES ↓

If any anomaly exists on the electronic expansion valve connector connection, the power source must be reset.

→ Defective outdoor unit control PCB➞Replace. (Defective 63H1 input circuit)

Note: In the protective control range for compressor startup (initial startup after power ON), even if 63H1 is activated only once (63H1 turns OFF), immediately the error is displayed.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E41		–	–	Power transistor overheat
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		8-time flash		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalously high temperature is detected by power transistor

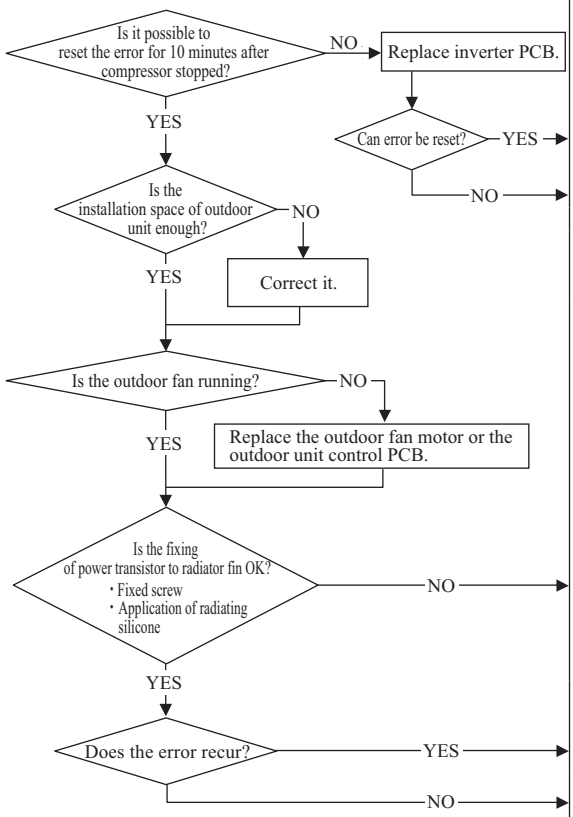
3. Condition of error displayed

Anomalously high temperature of power transistor is detected 5 times within 60 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Improperly fixing of power transistor to radiator fin
- Inadequate installation space of outdoor unit
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Power transistor module anomaly

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E42		ON	1-time flash	Current cut (1/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		9-time flash		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

3. Condition of error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minutes after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- The service valves closed
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the power source voltage OK? — NO	Check power source.
YES → Are the service valves opened? — NO	Open the service valves.
YES → Is the high pressure during operation OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit. *In case of transitional increase of high pressure and/or test run, several times restarting may recover it, because liquid refrigerant (migrated) in the compressor is discharged from the compressor.
YES → Is the checked result of insulation resistance and resistance between terminals (1) of compressor motor OK? — NO	Replace compressor.
(1) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA-W)	
YES → To next page	

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E42		ON	1-time flash	Current cut (2/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		9-time flash		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

In order to prevent from overcurrent of inverter, if the current exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.

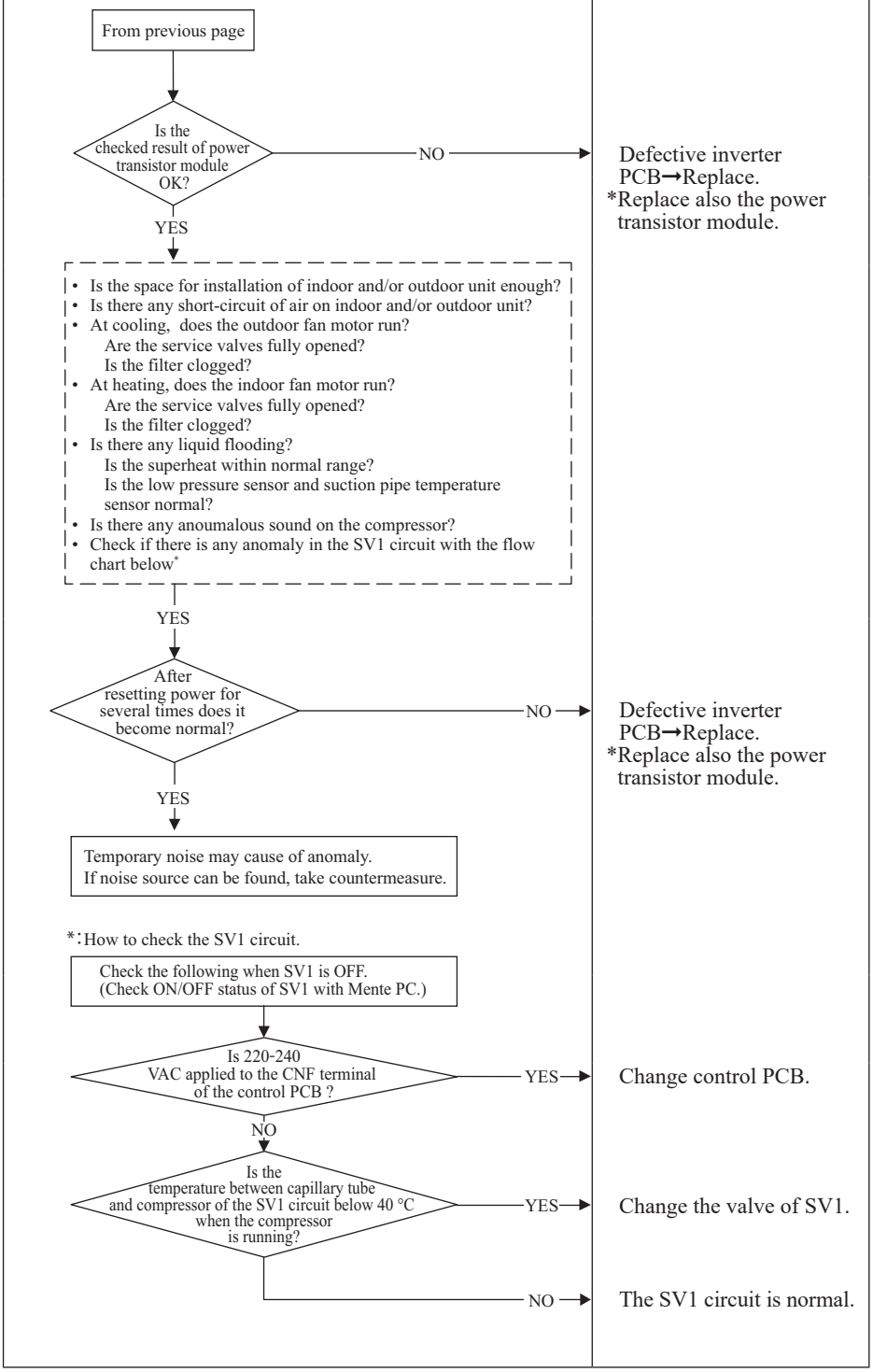
3. Condition of error displayed

- If the output current of inveter exceeds the specifications, it makes the compressor stopping.
- After 3-minute delay, the compressor restarts, but if this amonaly occurs 4 times within 30 minutes after the intial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective inverter PCB
- Faulty power source
- Insufficient refrigerant amount
- Faulty compressor
- Faulty power transistor module

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E44		–	–	Liquid back error (Cooling mode)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by under-dome superheat.

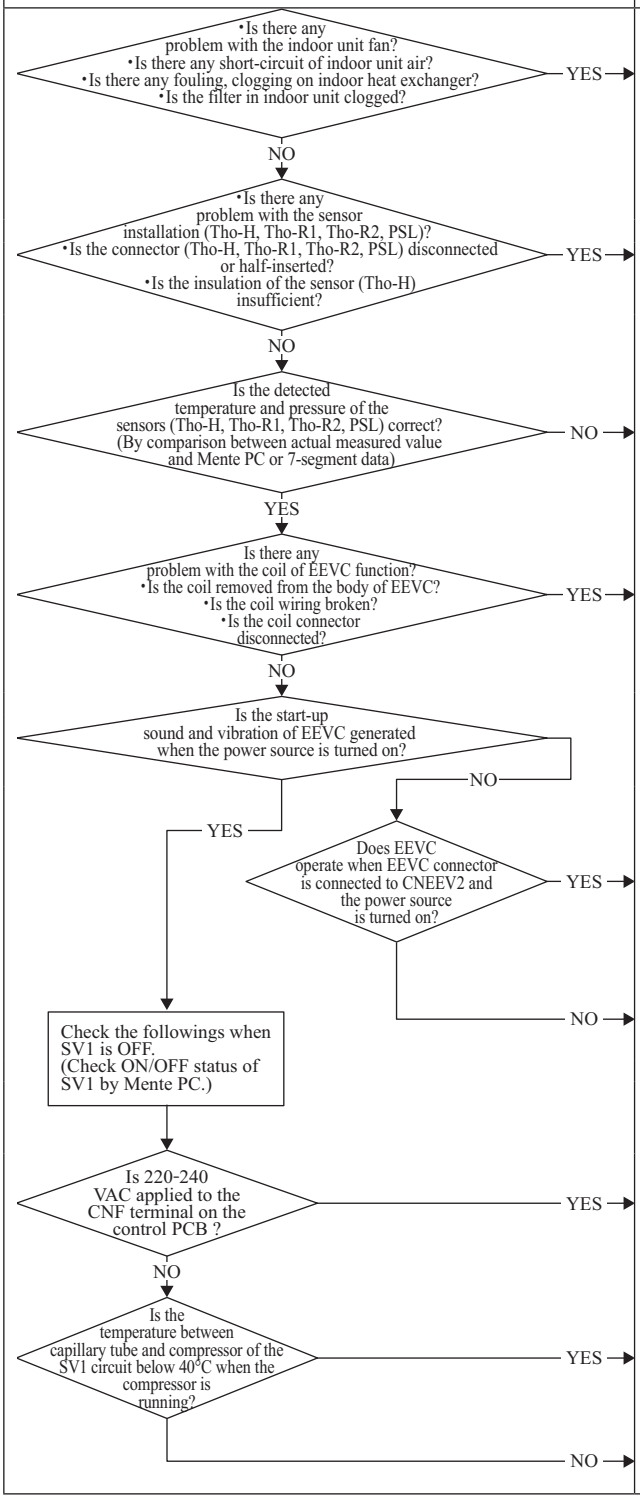
3. Condition of error displayed

When abnormal liquid back is detected 3 times within 90 minutes, the compressor stops.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty indoor unit fan
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Short-circuit of air on indoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Clogged filter
- Abnormal condition of Tho-H, Tho-R1, Tho-R2, PSL
- Faulty coil of EEVC
- Faulty body of EEVC

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E44		–	–	Liquid back error (Heating mode)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by under-dome superheat.

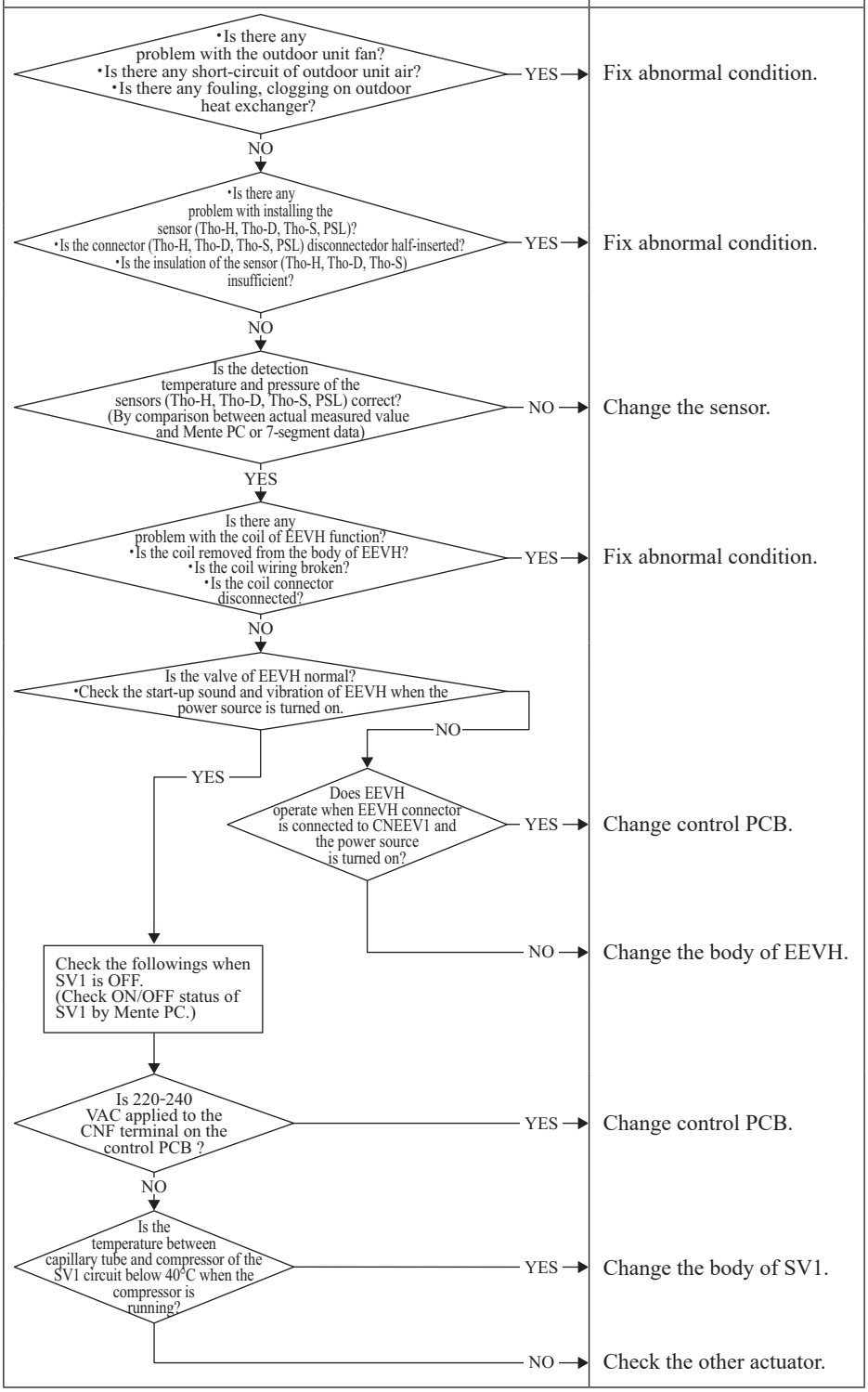
3. Condition of error displayed

When abnormal liquid back is detected 3 times within 90 minutes, the compressor stops.

4. Presumable cause

- Faulty outdoor unit fan
- Faulty body of SV1
- Faulty outdoor unit control PCB
- Short-circuit of air on outdoor units
- Fouling, clogging of heat exchanger
- Clogged filter
- Abnormal condition of Tho-H, Tho-D, Tho-S, PSL
- Faulty coil of EEVH
- Faulty body of EEVH

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E45		–	–	Communication error between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1.Applicable model

All models

2.Error detection method

When the communication between inverter PCB and outdoor unit control PCB is not established

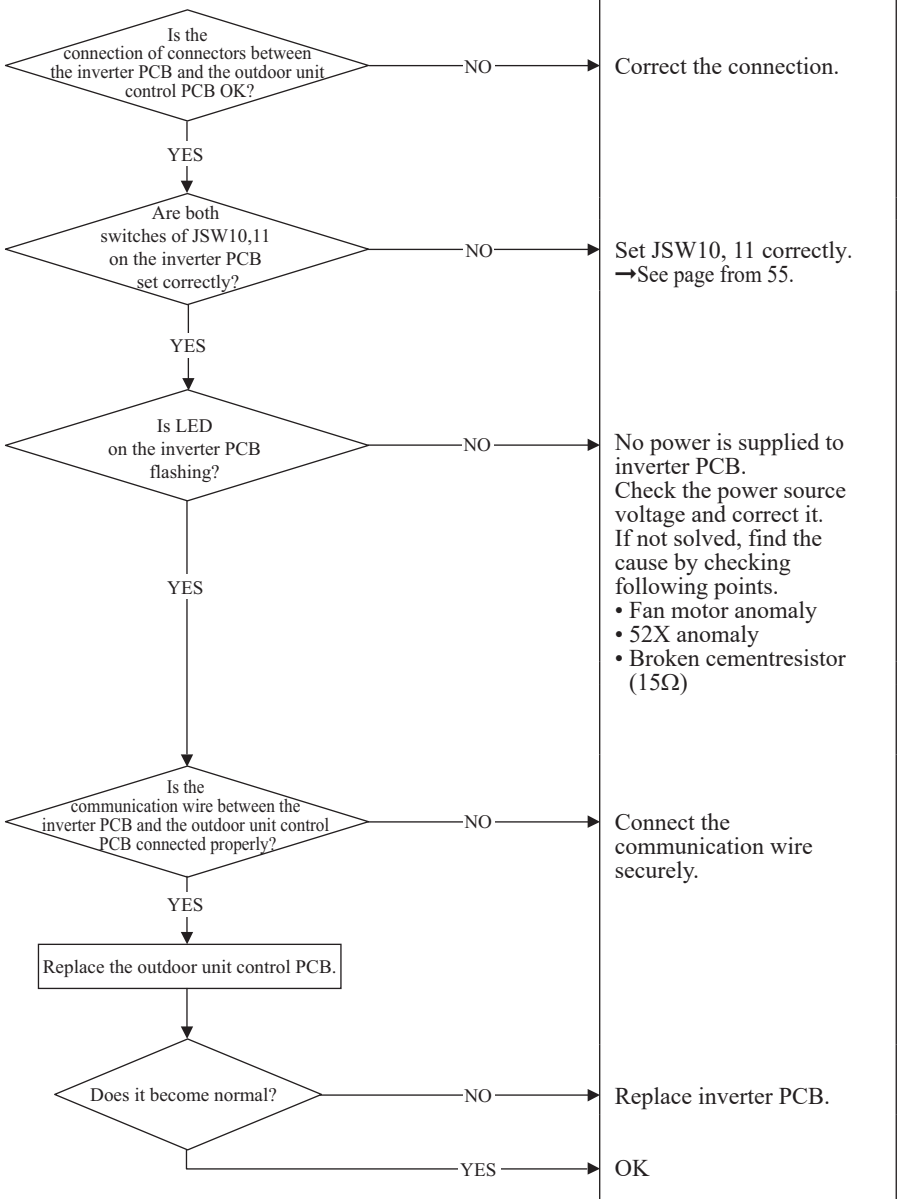
3.Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4.Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous connection of connector between the outdoor unit control PCB and inverter PCB
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Outdoor fan motor anomaly

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E48		ON	7-time flash	Outdoor fan motor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by rotation speed of outdoor fan motor

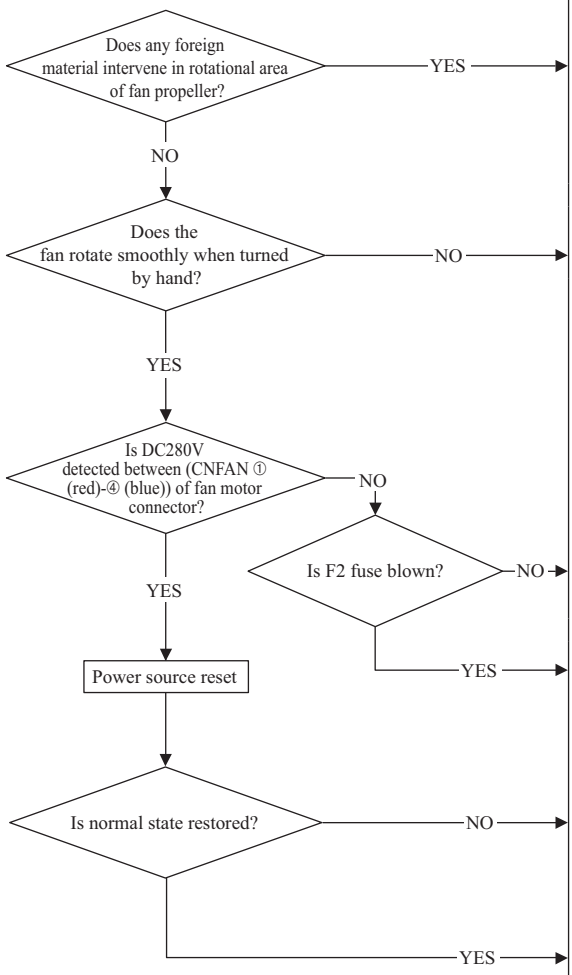
3. Condition of error displayed

When actual rotation speed of outdoor fan motor (FMo1, 2) drops to 100min^{-1} or lower for 30 seconds continuously, the compressor and the outdoor fan motor stop. After 3-minute delay, it starts again automatically, but if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes after the initial detection.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Foreign material at rotational area of fan propeller
- Defective fan motor
- Dust on outdoor unit control PCB
- Blow fuse
- External noise, surge

5. Troubleshooting



Note: When E48 error occurs, in almost cases F2 fuse (4A) on the outdoor unit control PCB is blown. There are a lot of cases that fuse is blown and E48 occurs due to defective fan motor. And even though only the outdoor unit control PCB (or fuse) is replaced,, another trouble (*1) could occur. Therefore when fuse is blown, check whether the fan motor is OK or not.
After confirming the fan motor normal, check by power ON. (Don't power ON without confirming the fan motor normal.)
*1 The error which does not seem to relate E48 may occur like as "WAIT", Stay OFF of LED on outdoor unit control PCB, inverter communication error (E45) and etc.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E49		–	–	Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (1/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by low pressure drop and suction superheat

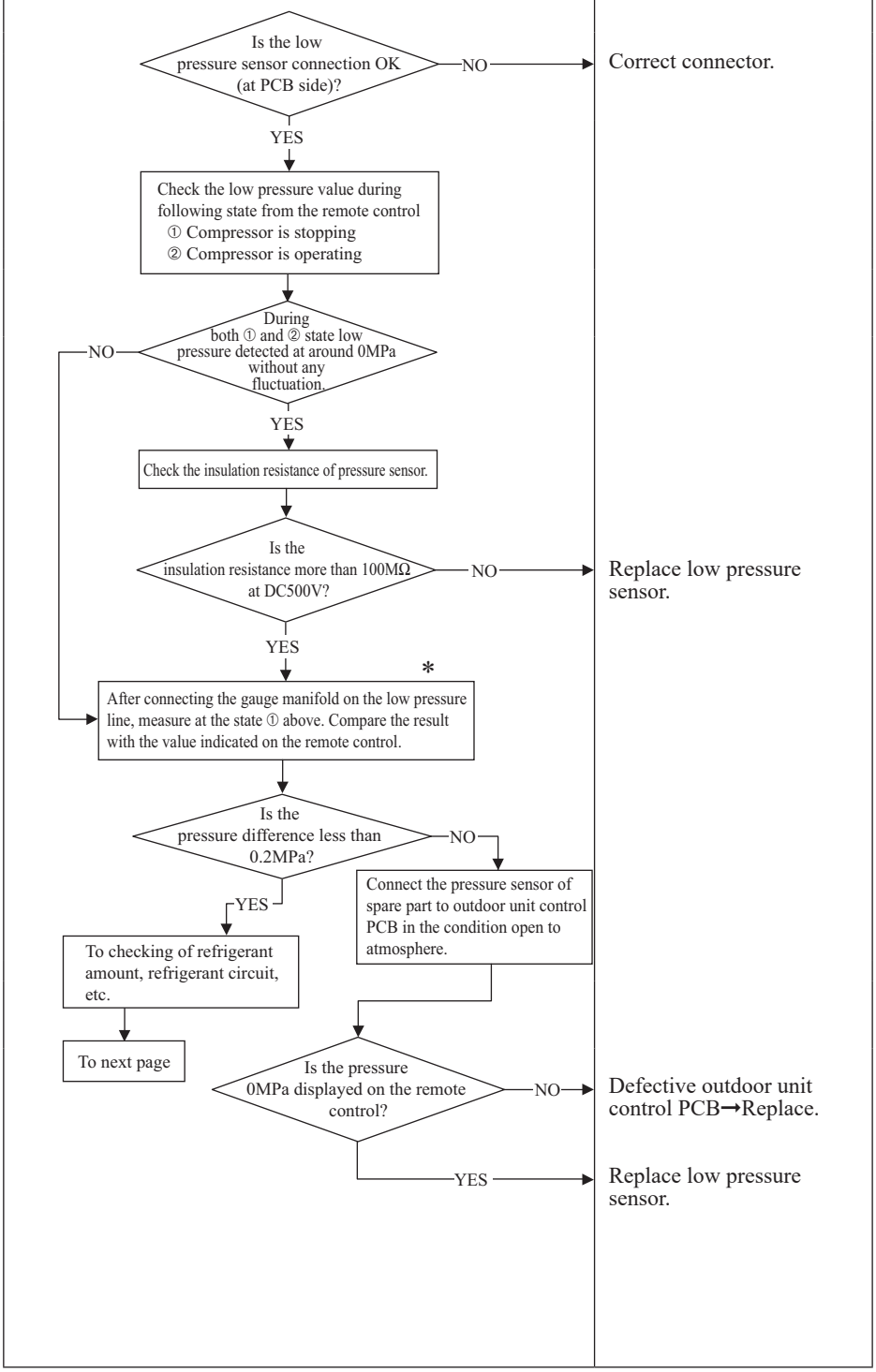
3. Condition of error displayed

① When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously, compressor stops and it restarts automatically after 3-minute delay. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
② 10 minutes after the compressor starts, if the low pressure sensor detects 0.15MPa or lower for 60 seconds continuously and compressor suction superheat is detected 30degC or higher for 60 seconds continuously. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
③ If low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 5 minutes continuously (Including the compressor stop status)

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective low pressure sensor connector
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connector
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor

5. Troubleshooting



Note: * Connect the gauge manifold to the service valve check joint during cooling, or connect it to the check joint at internal piping of outdoor unit during heating.

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E49		–	–	Low pressure error or low pressure sensor anomaly (2/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

Detected by low pressure drop and suction superheat

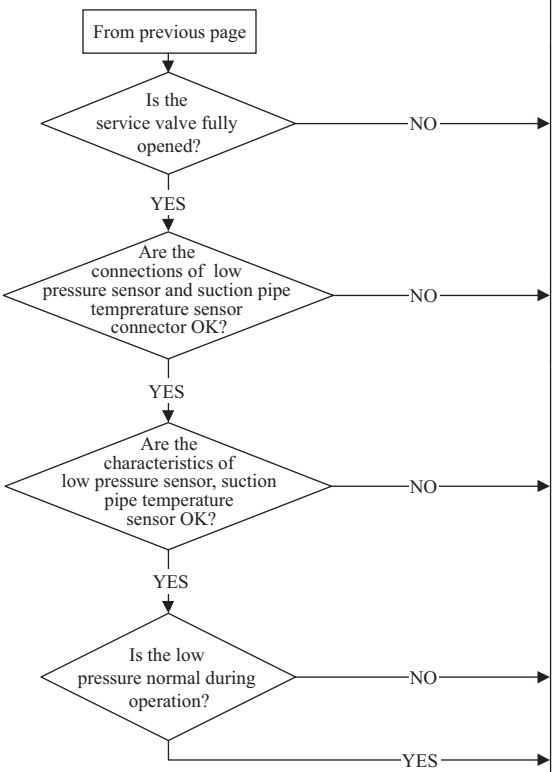
3. Condition of error displayed

① When the low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 15 seconds continuously, compressor stops and it restarts automatically after 3-minute delay. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
② 10 minutes after the compressor starts, if the low pressure sensor detects 0.15MPa or lower for 60 seconds continuously and compressor suction superheat is detected 30degC or higher for 60 seconds continuously. And if this anomaly occurs 5 times within 60 minutes.
③ If low pressure sensor detects 0.079MPa or lower for 5 minutes continuously (Including the compressor stop status)

4. Presumable cause

- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Defective low pressure sensor connector
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connector
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E51		ON	4-time flash	Inverter or power transistor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		8-time flash		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When power transistor anomaly is detected for 15 minutes continuously

3. Condition of error displayed

Same as above

4. Presumable cause

- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Power transistor anomaly

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Replace inverter PCB.	
Did it return? — YES	OK
Did it return? — NO	Replace power transistor.

Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E53		Keeps flashing	5-time flash	Suction pipe temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When the suction pipe temperature sensor detects anomalously low temperature

3. Condition of error displayed

If the temperature sensor detects -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

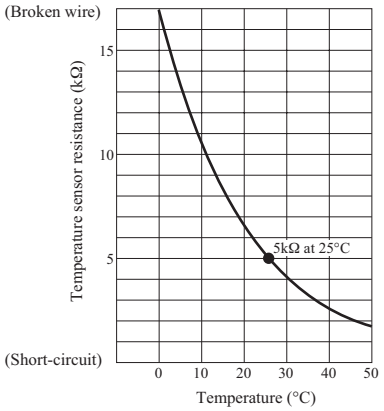
4. Presumable cause

- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor connection
- Defective suction pipe temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of suction pipe temperature sensor connector OK? — NO	Correct connection of suction pipe temperature sensor connector.
YES → For the characteristics of suction pipe temperature sensor, see the following graph.	
Are the characteristics of suction pipe temperature sensor OK? — NO	Defective suction pipe temperature sensor→ Replace.
YES	Defective outdoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective suction pipe temperature sensor input circuit)

Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E54		–	–	Low pressure sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anomalous voltage (pressure) is detected

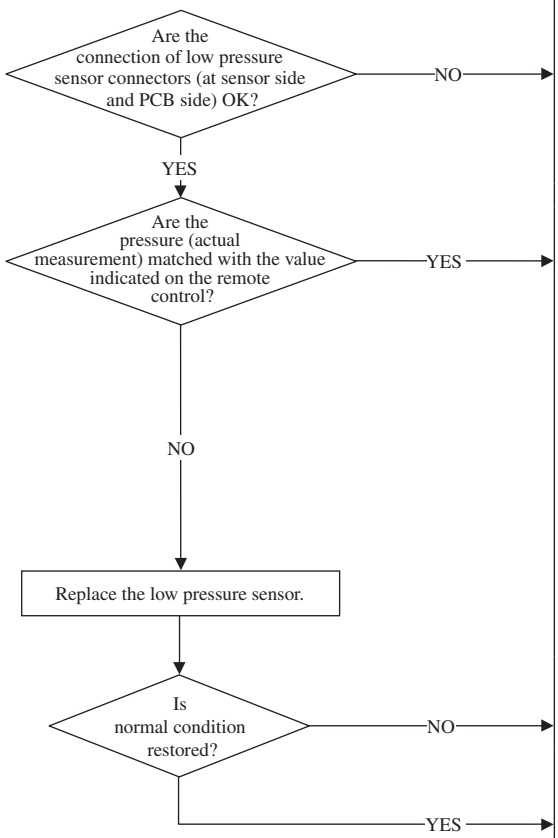
3. Condition of error displayed

If the pressure sensor detects DC0V or lower and DC4.0V or higher for 5 seconds continuously within 2 minutes to 2 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly occurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective low pressure sensor connection
- Defective low pressure sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB
- Improper amount of refrigerant
- Anomalous refrigeration circuit

5. Troubleshooting



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control:E55		–	–	Compressor under-dome temperature sensor anomaly
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		Keeps flashing		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When anoumalous low temperature (resistance) is detected by the compressor under-dome temperature sensor

3. Condition of error displayed

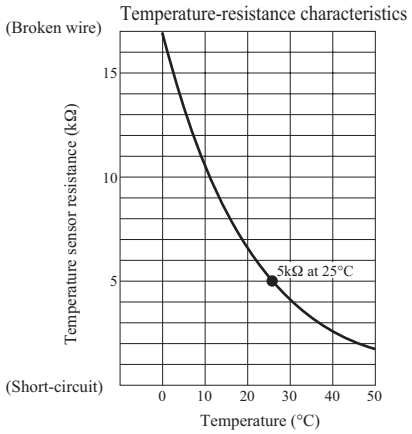
If the temperature sensor detcts -50°C or lower for 5 seconds continuously within 10 minutes to 10 minutes 20 seconds after compressor ON, the compressor stops. When the compressor is restarted automatically after 3-minute delay, if this anomaly ocuurs 3 times within 40 minutes.

4. Presumable cause

- Defective under-dome temperature sensor connection
- Defective under-dome temperature sensor
- Defective outdoor unit control PCB

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the connection of under-dome temperature sensor connector OK? → NO	Correct connection of under-dome temperature sensor connector.
YES → For the characteristics of under-dome temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of under-dome temperature sensor OK? → NO	Defective under-dome temperature sensor →Replace.
YES	Replace outdoor unit control PCB. (Defective under-dome temperature sensor input circuit)



Note:

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light
Remote control: E57		7-time flash	ON
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED
		Keeps flashing	1-time flash
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED	
		Keeps flashing	

Content

Insufficient refrigerant amount or detection of service valve closure

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

- Judge insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature differnce between indoor heat exchanger (Thi-R) and indoor return air (Thi-A).
- It detects at initial startup in cooling or dehumidifying mode after power ON.

3. Condition of error displayed

Anomalous stop at initial detection

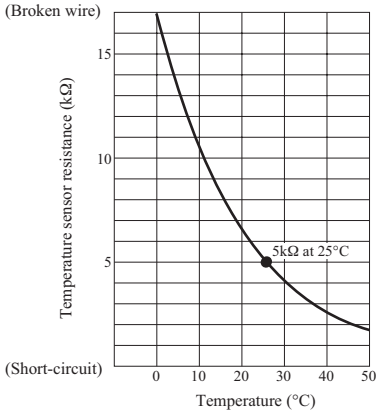
4. Presumable cause

- Defective indoor heat exchanger temperature sensor
- Defective indoor return air temperature sensor
- Defective indoor unit control PCB
- Insufficient refrigerant amount

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
Is the service valve fully opened? NO	Open fully.
YES → Are the connections of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature sensor connectors OK? NO	Correct indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor connector connections.
YES → For the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger,return air temperature sensor, see the following graph. Are the characteristics of indoor heat exchanger and/or return air temperature sensor OK? NO	Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor →Replace.
YES → Is the low pressure during operation normal? NO	Charge refrigerant.
YES	Defective indoor unit control PCB→Replace. (Defective indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor input circuits)

Indoor heat exchanger, return air temperature sensor
Temperature-resistance characteristics



Note: Insufficient refrigerant amount preventive control makes compressor stopped, if it judges insufficient refrigerant amount by detecting the temperature difference between indoor heat exchanger (Thi-R) and return air temperature (Thi-A) for 5 minutes after compressor ON in cooling or dehumidifying mode and for 9 minutes after compressor ON in heating mode. [in cooling mode: (Thi-A)-(Thi-R)<4degC, in heating mode: (Thi-R)-(Thi-A)<4degC]

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control: E59		–	–	Compressor startup failure (1/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	5-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		4-time flash		

1. Applicable model

All models

2. Error detection method

When it fails to change over to the operation for rotor position detection of compressor motor

3. Condition of error displayed

If the compressor fails to startup for 20 times (10 patterns ×2 times) continuously

4. Presumable cause

- Outdoor fan motor anomaly
- Outdoor unit control PCB anomaly
- Inverter PCB anomaly
- Anomalous power source voltage
- Insufficient or excessive refrigerant amount
- Faulty component for refrigerant circuit
- Compressor anomaly (Motor or bearing)

5. Troubleshooting

Diagnosis	Countermeasure
In case that the compressor does not start at all and no sound or vibration exists	
Is power source voltage OK? — NO	Check the power source voltage and correct it.
YES	
Is the pressure equalized at starting OK? — NO	Check refrigerant amount and refrigerant circuit.
YES	
Is the insulation resistance and resistance between terminals(1) of compressor OK? — NO	Replace compressor.
(1) 0.309Ω or more at 20°C (Model FDC200VSA-W)	
YES	
To next page	

Note: Insulation resistance
- The unit is left for long period without power source or soon after installation, insulation resistance may decrease to several MΩ or lower due to the liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor. If the electric leakage breaker is activated due to low insulation resistance, check followings.
  ① Check whether the insulation resistance can recover or not, after 6 hours has passed since power ON.
  (By energize the crankcase heater, liquid refrigerant migrated in the refrigerant oil in compressor can be evaporated.)
  ② Check whether the electric leakage breaker conforms to high-harmonic specifications.
  (As INV PAC units has inverter, in order to prevent from improper operation, be sure to use the breaker of high-harmonic type.)

Error code	Indoor display	RUN light	TIMER light	Content
Remote control:E59		–	–	Compressor startup failure (2/2)
	Outdoor unit control PCB	Green LED	Red LED	
		Keeps flashing	5-time flash	
	Outdoor unit inverter PCB	Yellow LED		
		4-time flash		

1.Applicable model

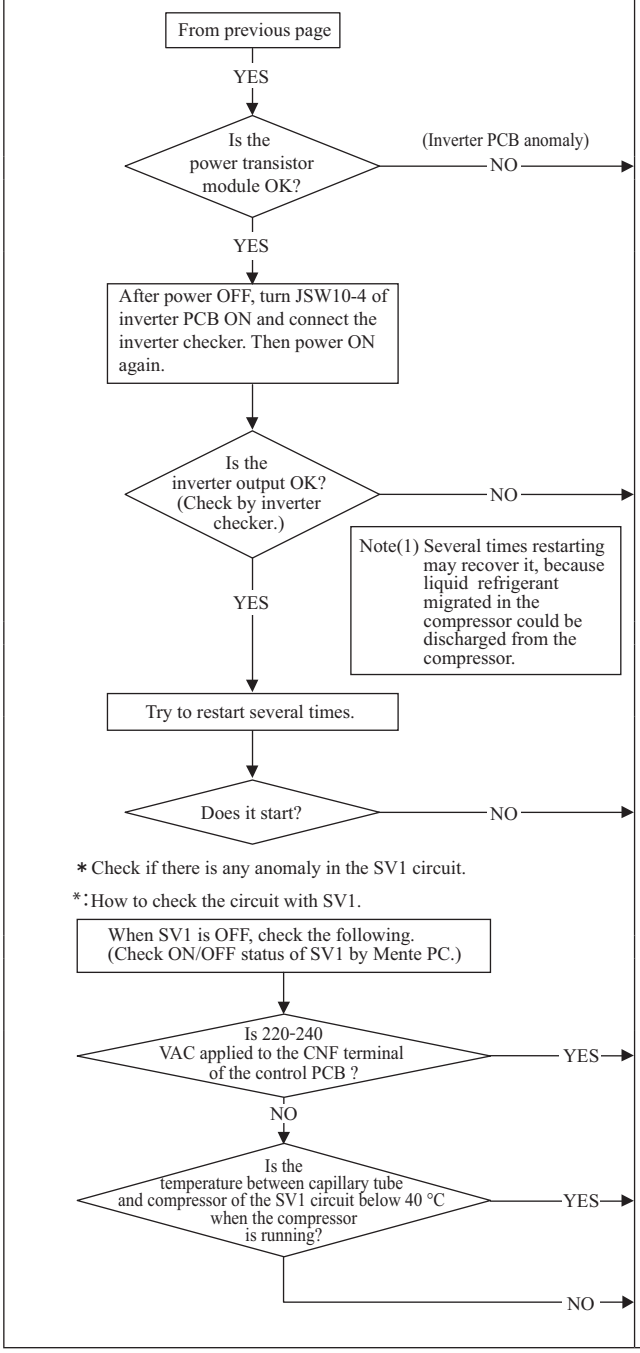
All models

2.Error detection method

3.Condition of error displayed

4.Presumable cause

5.Troubleshooting



Note:

3. ELECTRICAL WIRING

(1) Indoor units

(a) Ceiling cassette-4 way type (FDT)

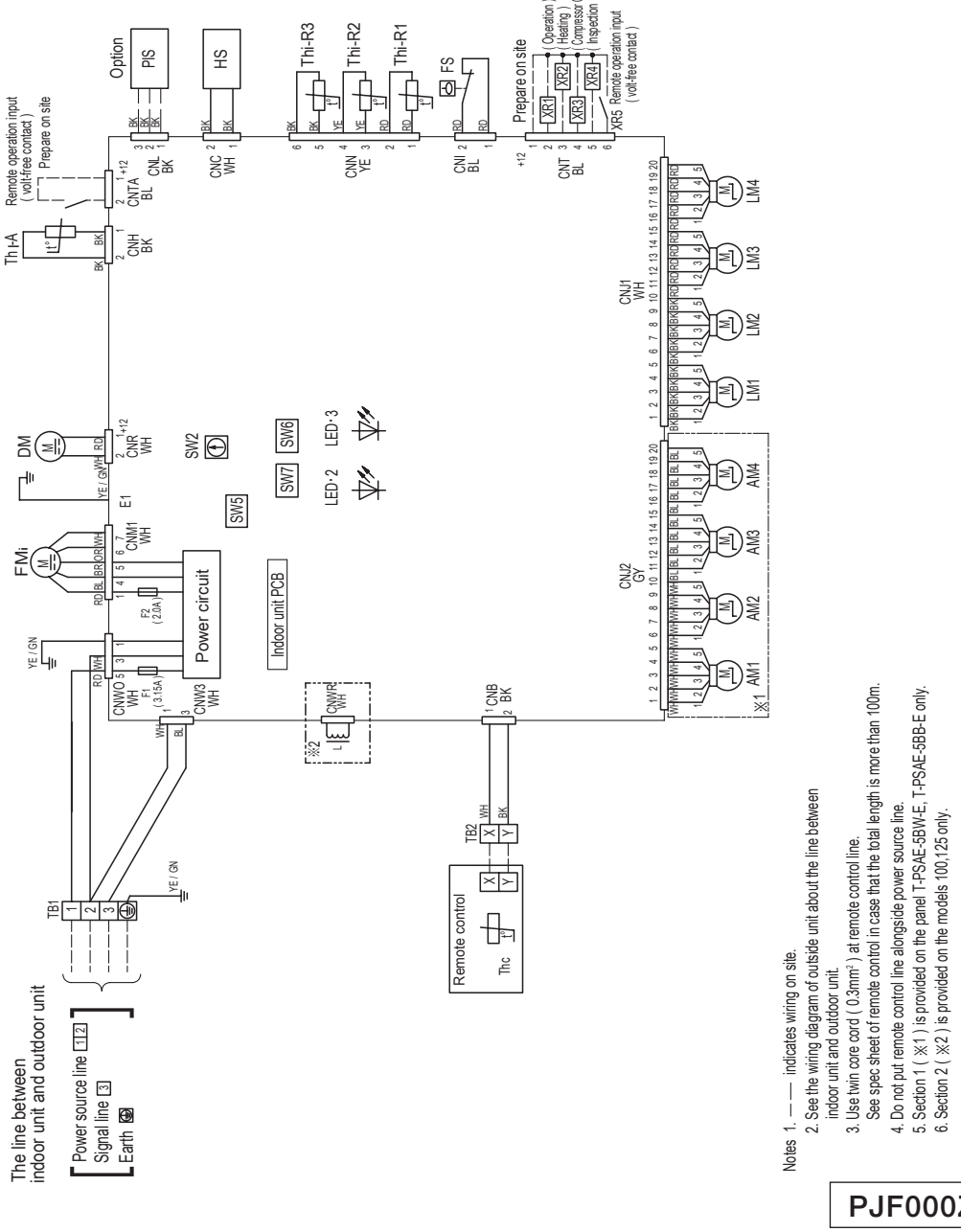
Models FDT50VH, 60VH, 71VH, 100VH, 125VH, 140VH

Meaning of marks

Item	Description
AM1-4	Draft prevention function motor
CNB-Z	Connector
DM	Drain pump motor
F1,2	Fuse
FMi	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
HS	Humidity sensor
L	Reactor
LED・2	Indication lamp (Green-Nomal operation)
LED・3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
LM1-4	Louver motor
PIS	Motion sensor
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master / Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check,drain pump motor test run
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□ mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□ mark)
Thc	Temperature sensor (Remote control)
Thi-A	Temperature sensor (Return air)
Thi-R1,2,3	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)

Color marks

Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	WH	White
BL	Blue	YE	Yellow
BR	Brown	GY	Gray
OR	Orange	YE / GN	Yellow / Green
RD	Red		



Notes 1. —— indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outside unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line.
See spec sheet of remote control in case that the total length is more than 100m.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) is provided on the panel T-PSAE-5BW-E, T-PSAE-5BB-E only.
6. Section 2 (※2) is provided on the models 100,125 only.

PJF000Z735

(b) Ceiling casette-4 way compact type (FDTC)

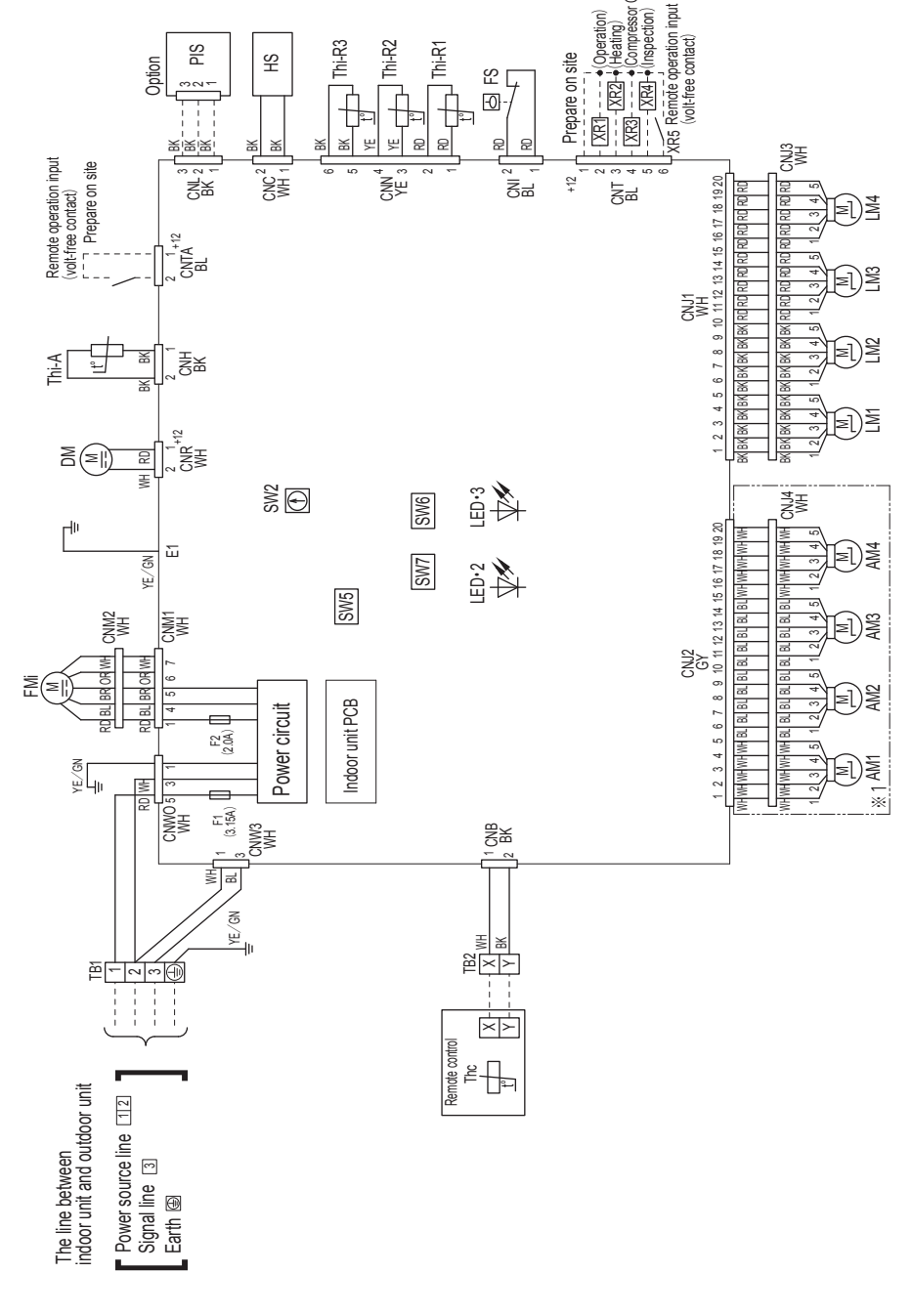
Models FDTC50VH, 60VH

Meaning of marks

Item	Description
AM1-4	Draft prevention function motor
CNB-Z	Connector
DM	Drain pump motor
F1,2	Fuse
FMi	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
HS	Humidity sensor
LED･2	Indication lamp (Green-Nomal operation)
LED･3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
LM1-4	Louver motor
PIS	Motion sensor
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check,drain pump motor test run
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Temperature sensor (Remote control)
Thi-A	Temperature sensor (Return air)
Thi-R1,2,3	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)

Color marks

Mark	Color	Mark	Color
BK	Black	WH	White
BL	Blue	YE	Yellow
BR	Brown	GY	Gray
OR	Orange	YE／GN	Yellow／Green
RD	Red		



Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outdoor unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Draft prevention function (※ 1) is provided on the panel TC-PSA(G) E-5AW-E only.

PJF000Z739

(C) Duct connected-High static pressure type (FDU)

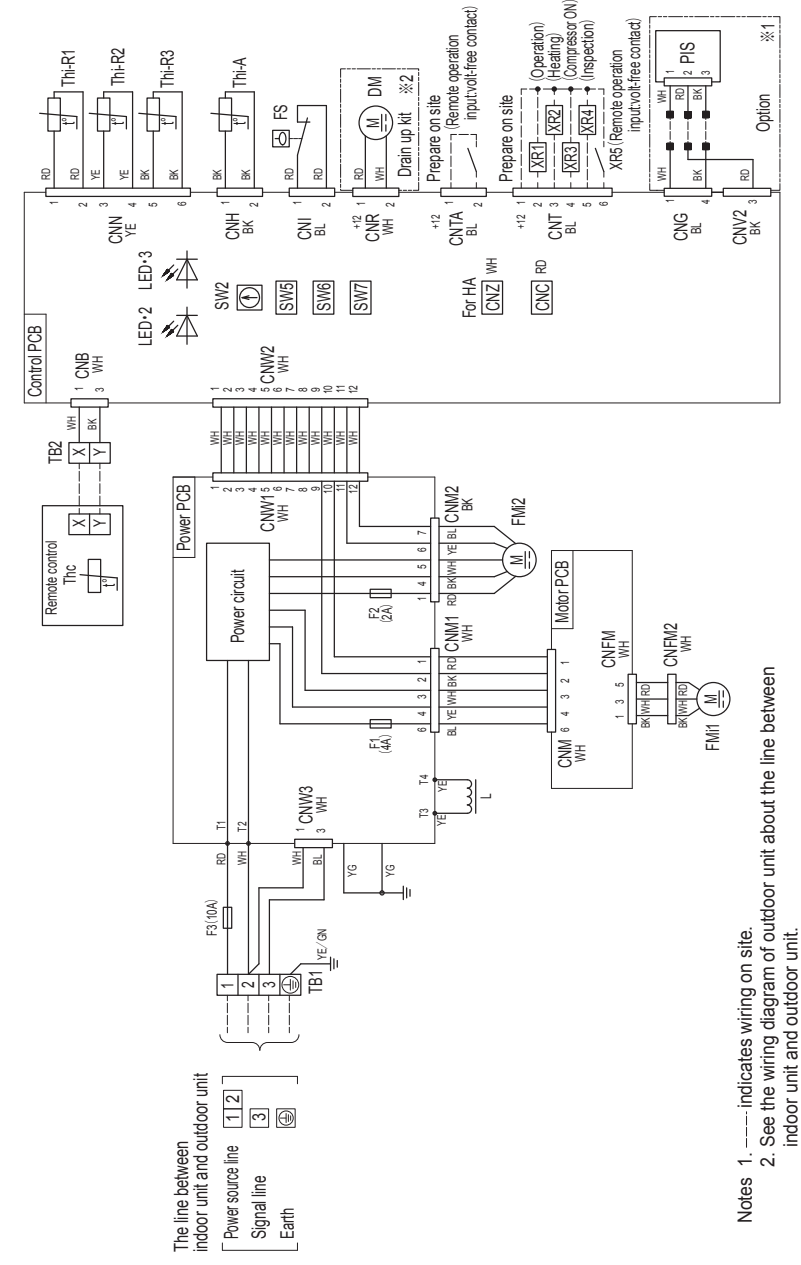
Models FDU200VH, 250VH, 280VH

Meaning of marks

Item	Description
CNB-Z	Connector
DM	Drain pump motor
F1-3	Fuse
FMI1,2	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED･2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED･3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
PIS	Motion sensor
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check,drain pump motor test run
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Temperature sensor (Remote control)
Thi-A	Temperature sensor (Return air)
Thi-R1,2,3	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)
■mark	Closed-end connector

Color Marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow Green

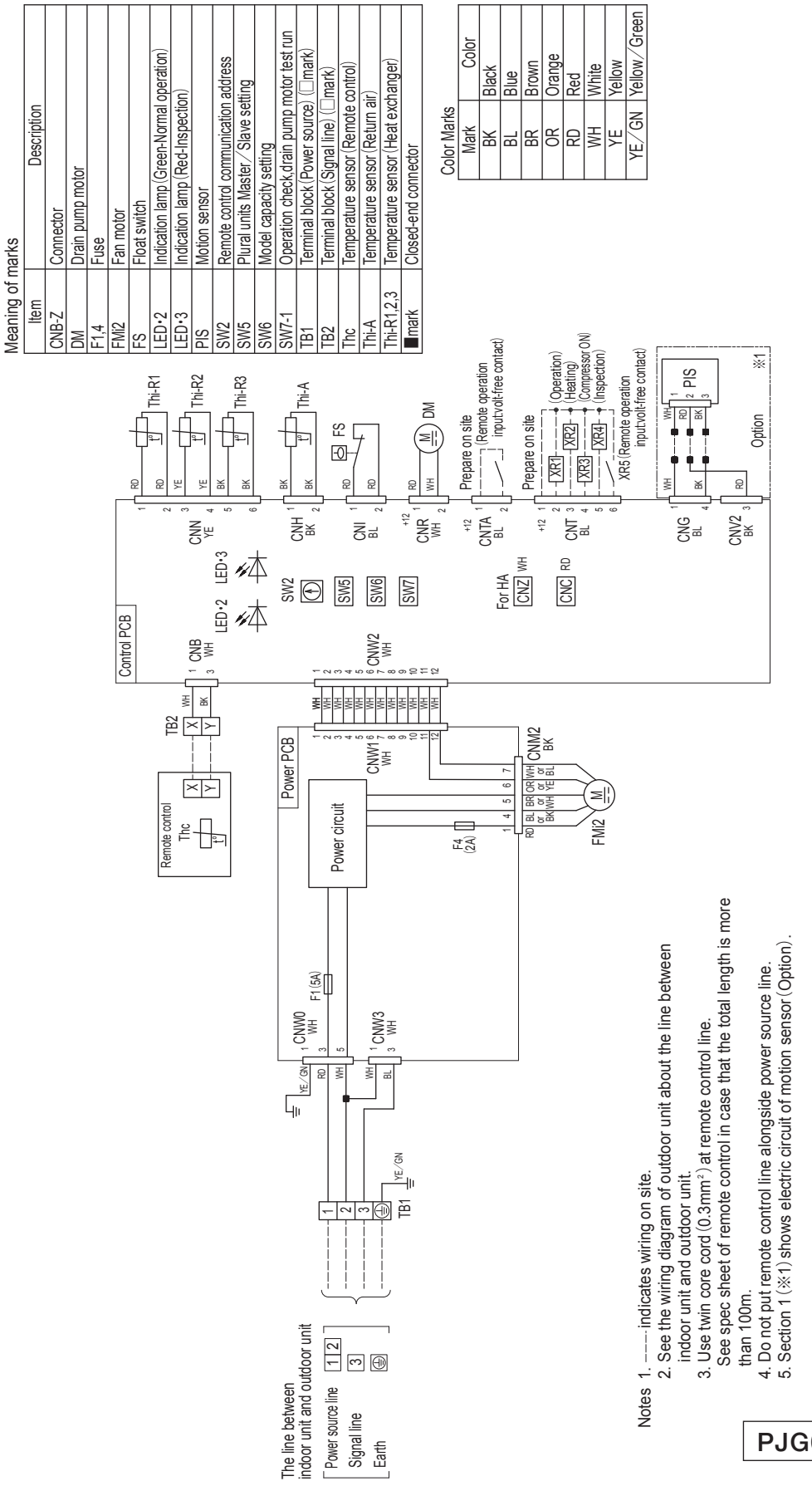


Notes 1. ------ indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outdoor unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line. See spec sheet of remote control in case that the total length is more than 100m.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) shows electric circuit of motion sensor (Option).
6. Section 2 (※2) is not included as standard from factory. This circuit is an option when using drain up kit.

PJG000Z755

(d) Duct connected-Low/Middle static pressure type (FDUM)

Model FDUM71VH



PJG000Z489

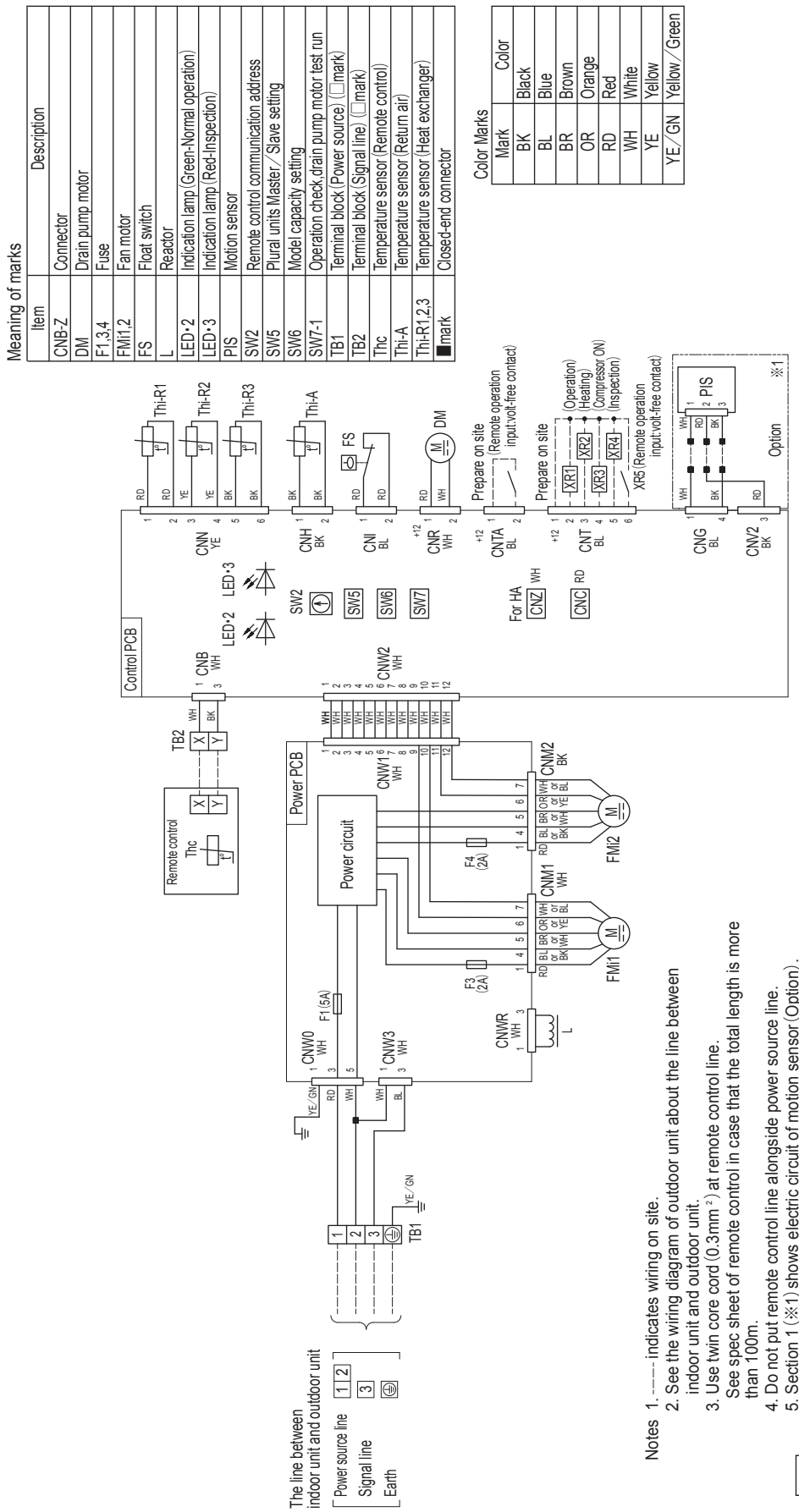
Models FDUM100VH, 125VH, 140VH

Meaning of marks

Item	Description
CNB-Z	Connector
DM	Drain pump motor
F1,3,4	Fuse
FMi1,2	Fan motor
FS	Float switch
L	Reactor
LED･2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED･3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
PIS	Motion sensor
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master／Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check,drain pump motor test run
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□mark)
Thc	Temperature sensor (Remote control)
Thi-A	Temperature sensor (Return air)
Thi-R1,2,3	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)
■mark	Closed-end connector

Color Marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YE／GN	Yellow／Green

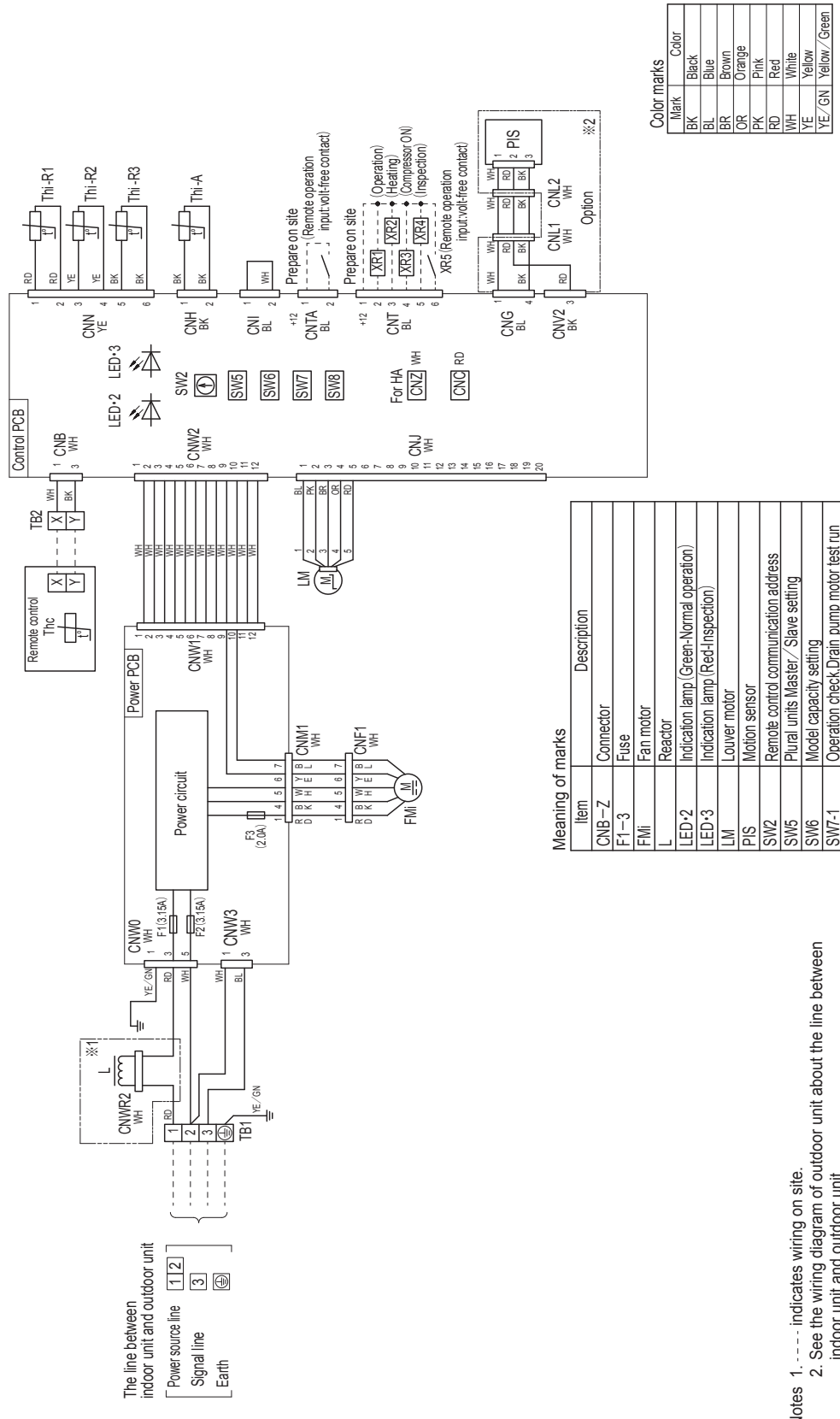


Notes 1. ---- indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outdoor unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm^2) at remote control line.
See spec sheet of remote control in case that the total length is more than 100m.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) shows electric circuit of motion sensor (Option).

PJG000Z490

(e) Ceiling suspended type (FDE)

Models FDE50VH, 60VH, 71VH, 100VH, 125VH, 140VH



Color marks

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
OR	Orange
PK	Pink
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YE/GN	Yellow/Green

Meaning of marks

Item	Description
CNB–Z	Connector
F1–3	Fuse
FMi	Fan motor
L	Reactor
LED•2	Indication lamp (Green-Normal operation)
LED•3	Indication lamp (Red-Inspection)
LM	Louver motor
PIS	Motion sensor
SW2	Remote control communication address
SW5	Plural units Master/Slave setting
SW6	Model capacity setting
SW7-1	Operation check,Drain pump motor test run
SW8-1	Anti-freeze control
TB1	Terminal block (Power source) (□ mark)
TB2	Terminal block (Signal line) (□ mark)
Thc	Temperature sensor (Remote control)
Thi-A	Temperature sensor (Return air)
Thi-R1,2,3	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)

Notes 1. - - - - indicates wiring on site.
2. See the wiring diagram of outdoor unit about the line between indoor unit and outdoor unit.
3. Use twin core cord (0.3mm²) at remote control line. See spec sheet of remote control in case that the total length is more than 100m.
4. Do not put remote control line alongside power source line.
5. Section 1 (※1) is provided on the models 100-140 only.
6. Section 2 (※2) shows electric circuit of motion sensor (Option).

PFA004Z087

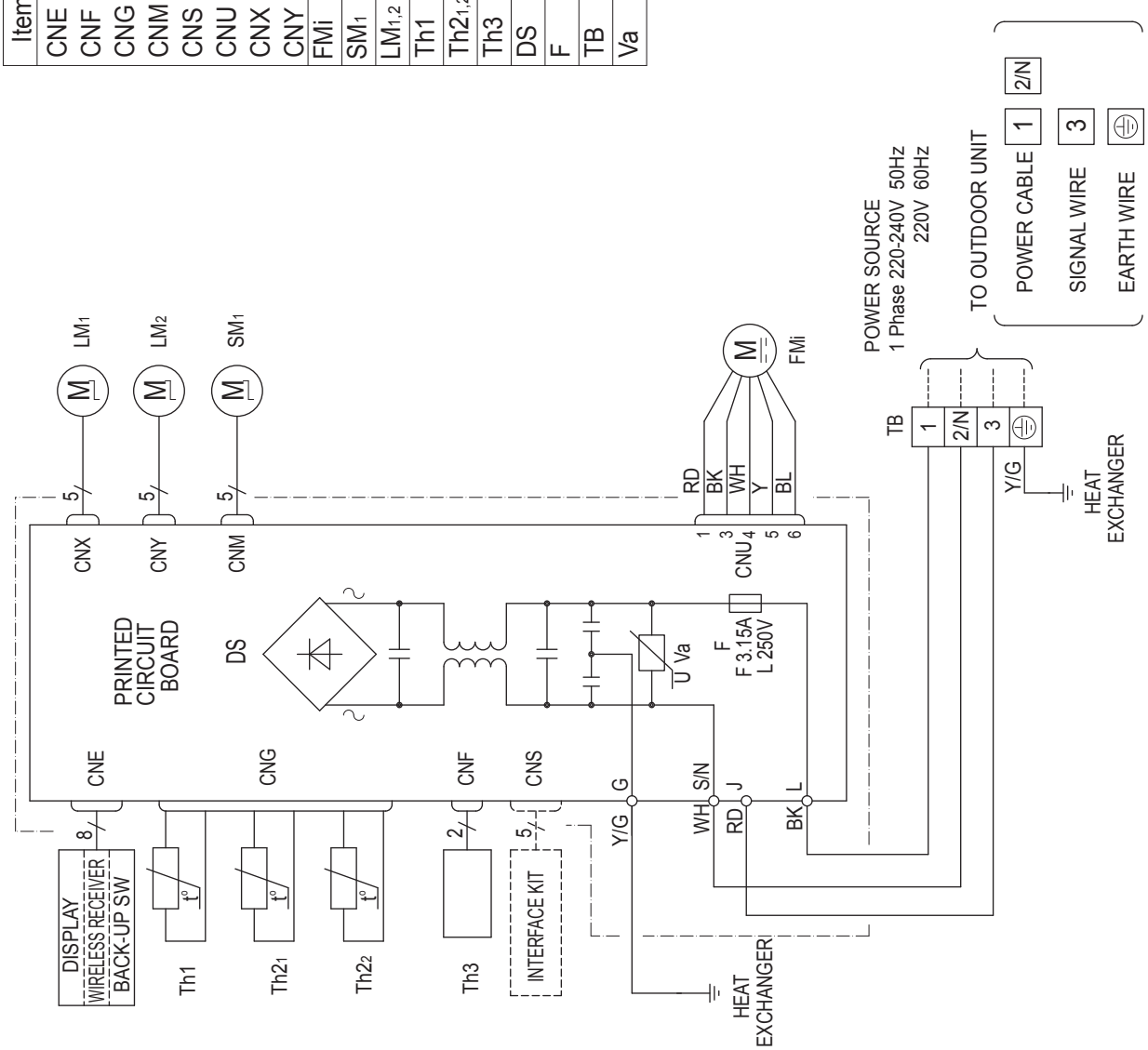
(f) Wall mounted type (SRK)

Model SRK100ZR-W

Item	Description
CNE	Connector
CNF	
CNG	
CNM	
CNS	
CNU	
CNX	
CNY	
FMi	Fan motor
SM_1	Flap motor
$LM_{1,2}$	Louver motor
Th1	Room temperature sensor
$Th2_{1,2}$	Heat exchanger temperature sensor
Th3	Humidity sensor
DS	Diode stack
F	Fuse
TB	Terminal block
Va	Varistor

Color marks

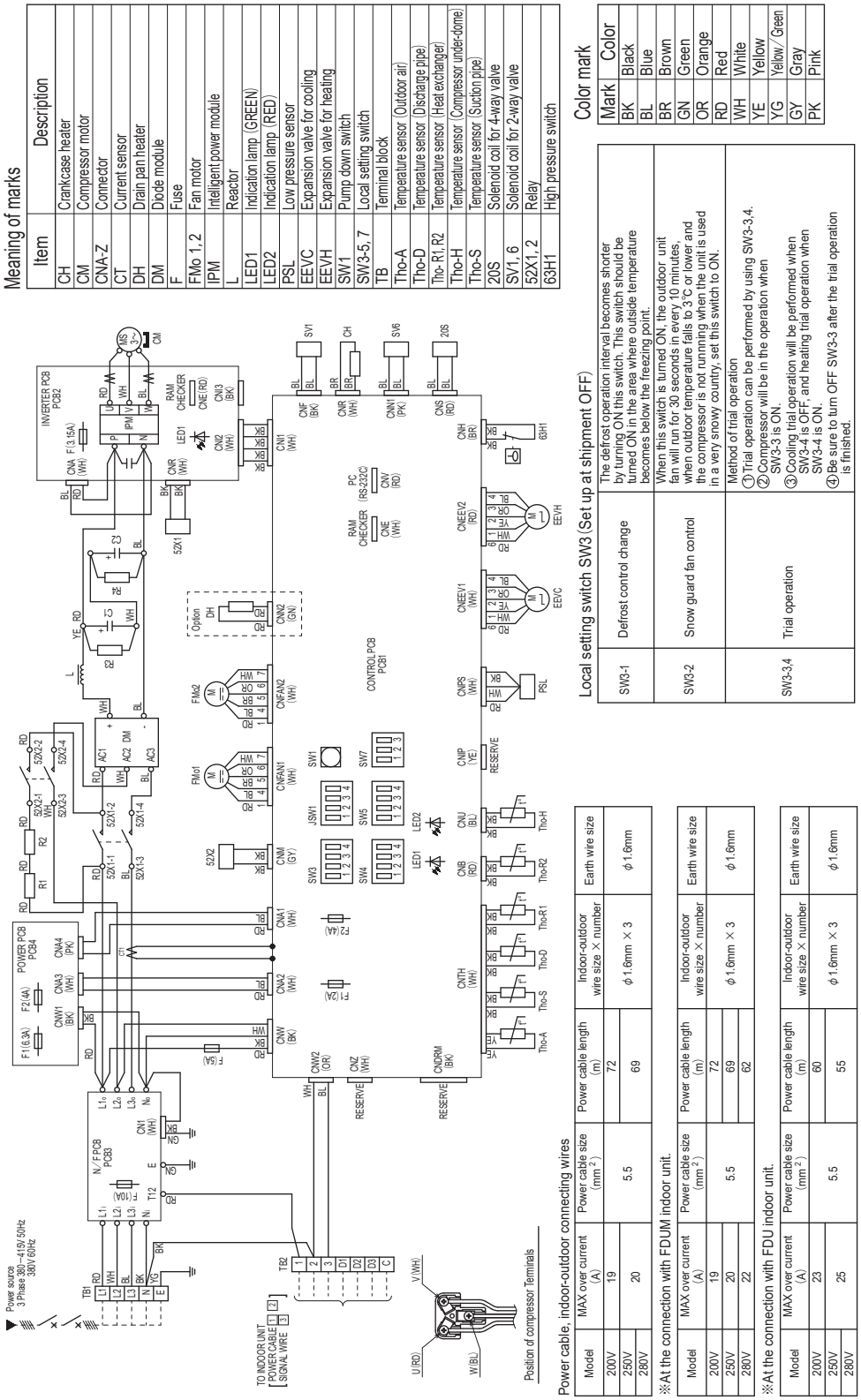
Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
RD	Red
WH	White
Y	Yellow
Y／G	Yellow／Green



RWA000Z417C

(2) Outdoor units

Models FDC200VSA-W, 250VSA-W, 280VSA-W



Meaning of marks

Item	Description
CH	Crankcase heater
CM	Compressor motor
CNA-Z	Connector
CT	Current sensor
DH	Drain pan heater
DM	Diode module
F	Fuse
FMo 1,2	Fan motor
IPM	Intelligent power module
L	Reactor
LED1	Indication lamp (GREEN)
LED2	Indication lamp (RED)
PSL	Low pressure sensor
EEVC	Expansion valve for cooling
EEVH	Expansion valve for heating
SW1	Pump down switch
SW3-5, 7	Local setting switch
TB	Terminal block
Tho-A	Temperature sensor (Outdoor air)
Tho-D	Temperature sensor (Discharge pipe)
Tho-R1, R2	Temperature sensor (Heat exchanger)
Tho-H	Temperature sensor (Compressor under-dome)
Tho-S	Temperature sensor (Suction pipe)
20S	Solenoid coil for 4-way valve
SV1, 6	Solenoid coil for 2-way valve
52X1, 2	Relay
63H1	High pressure switch

Color mark

Mark	Color
BK	Black
BL	Blue
BR	Brown
GN	Green
OR	Orange
RD	Red
WH	White
YE	Yellow
YG	Yellow / Green
GY	Gray
PK	Pink

Local setting switch SW3 (Set up at shipment OFF)

SW3-1	Defrost control change	The defrost operation interval becomes shorter by turning ON this switch. This switch should be turned ON in the area where outside temperature becomes below the freezing point.
SW3-2	Snow guard fan control	When this switch is turned ON, the outdoor unit fan will run for 30 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3°C or lower and the compressor is not runnning when the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.
SW3-3,4	Trial operation	Method of trial operation ①Trial operation can be performed by using SW3-3,4. SW3-3 is ON. ②Compressor will be in the operation when SW3-3 is ON. ③Cooling trial operation will be performed when SW3-4 is OFF, and heating trial operation when SW3-4 is ON. ④Be sure to turn OFF SW3-3 after the trial operation is finished.

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires

Model	MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm²)	Power cable length (m)	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number	Earth wire size
200V	19	5.5	72	φ1.6mm × 3	φ1.6mm
250V	20		69		
280V	20		69		

※At the connection with FDUM indoor unit.

Model	MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm²)	Power cable length (m)	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number	Earth wire size
200V	19	5.5	72	φ1.6mm × 3	φ1.6mm
250V	20		69		
280V	22		62		

※At the connection with FDU indoor unit.

Model	MAX over current (A)	Power cable size (mm²)	Power cable length (m)	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number	Earth wire size
200V	23	5.5	60	φ1.6mm × 3	φ1.6mm
250V	25		55		
280V	25		55		

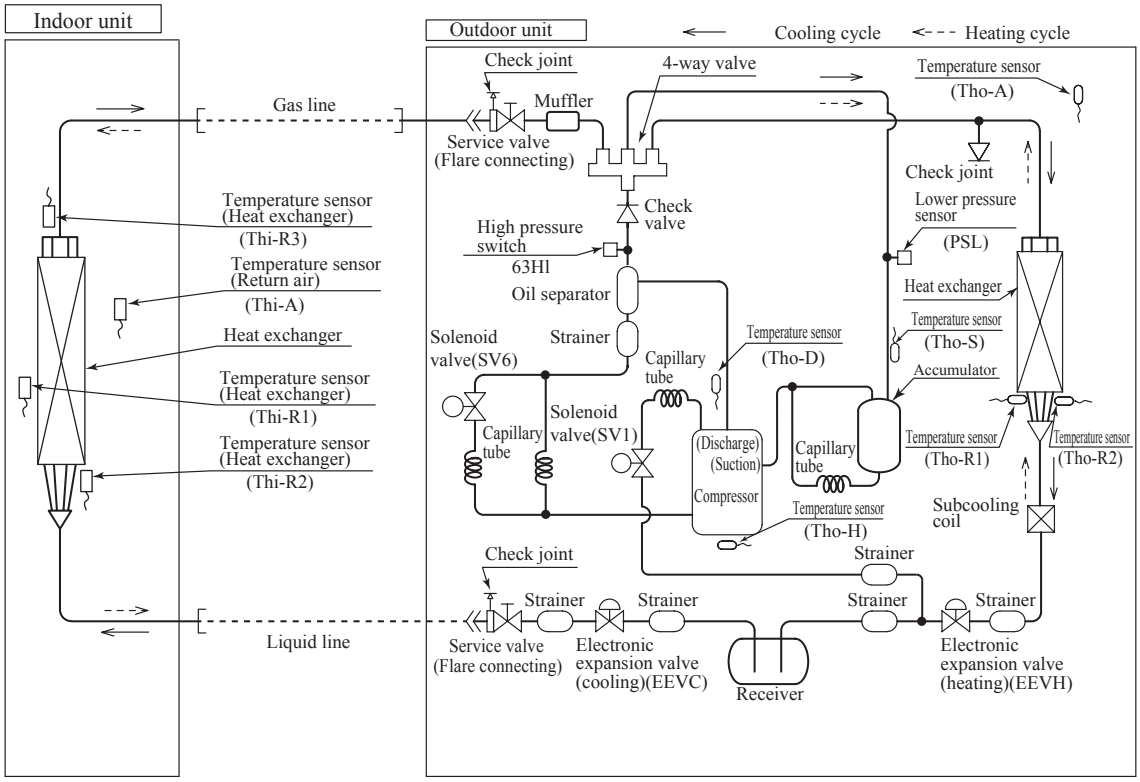
- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear of circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, please follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.

PCB004Z471 A

4. PIPING SYSTEM

(1) Single type

Models 200, 250, 280

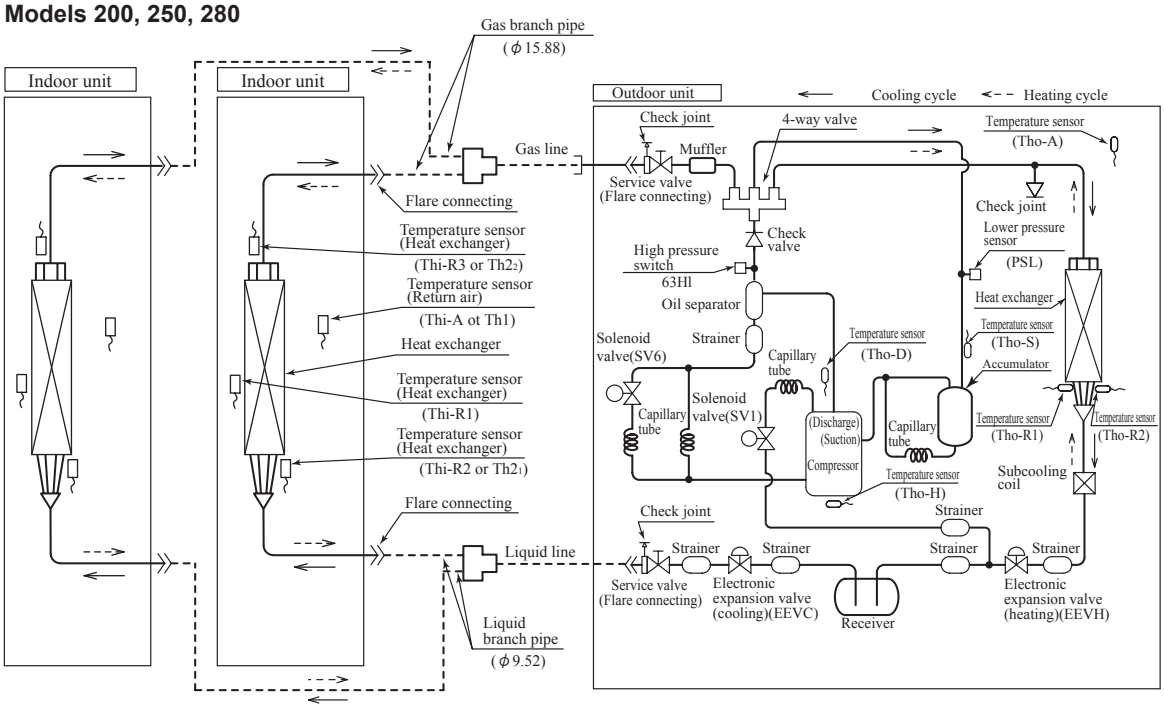


●Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size

Model	Gas line	Liquid line
200	In case of ϕ22.22 : 35m In case of ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58 : 70m(200, 250) 60m(280)	In case of ϕ9.52 : 40m In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m
250, 280		In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m(250) 60m(280)

(2) Twin type

Models 200, 250, 280

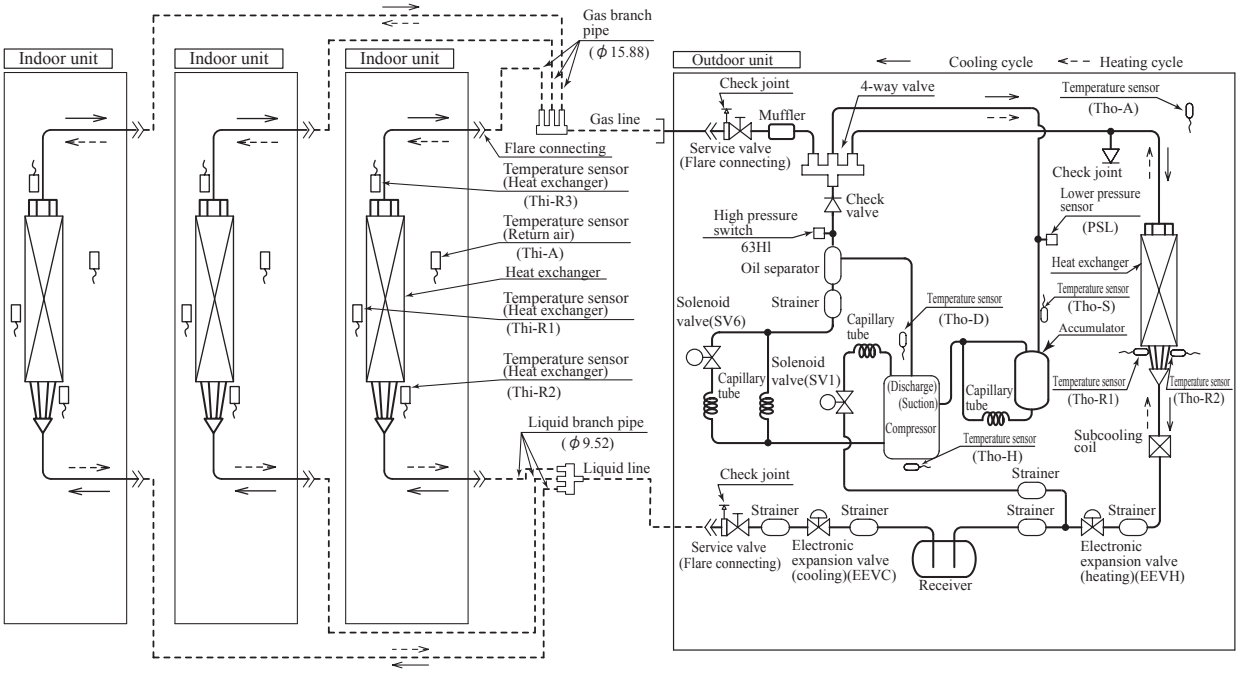


●Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size

Model	Gas line	Liquid line
200	In case of ϕ22.22 : 35m In case of ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58 : 70m(200, 250) 60m(280)	In case of ϕ9.52 : 40m In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m
250, 280		In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m(250) 60m(280)

(3) Triple type

Model 200

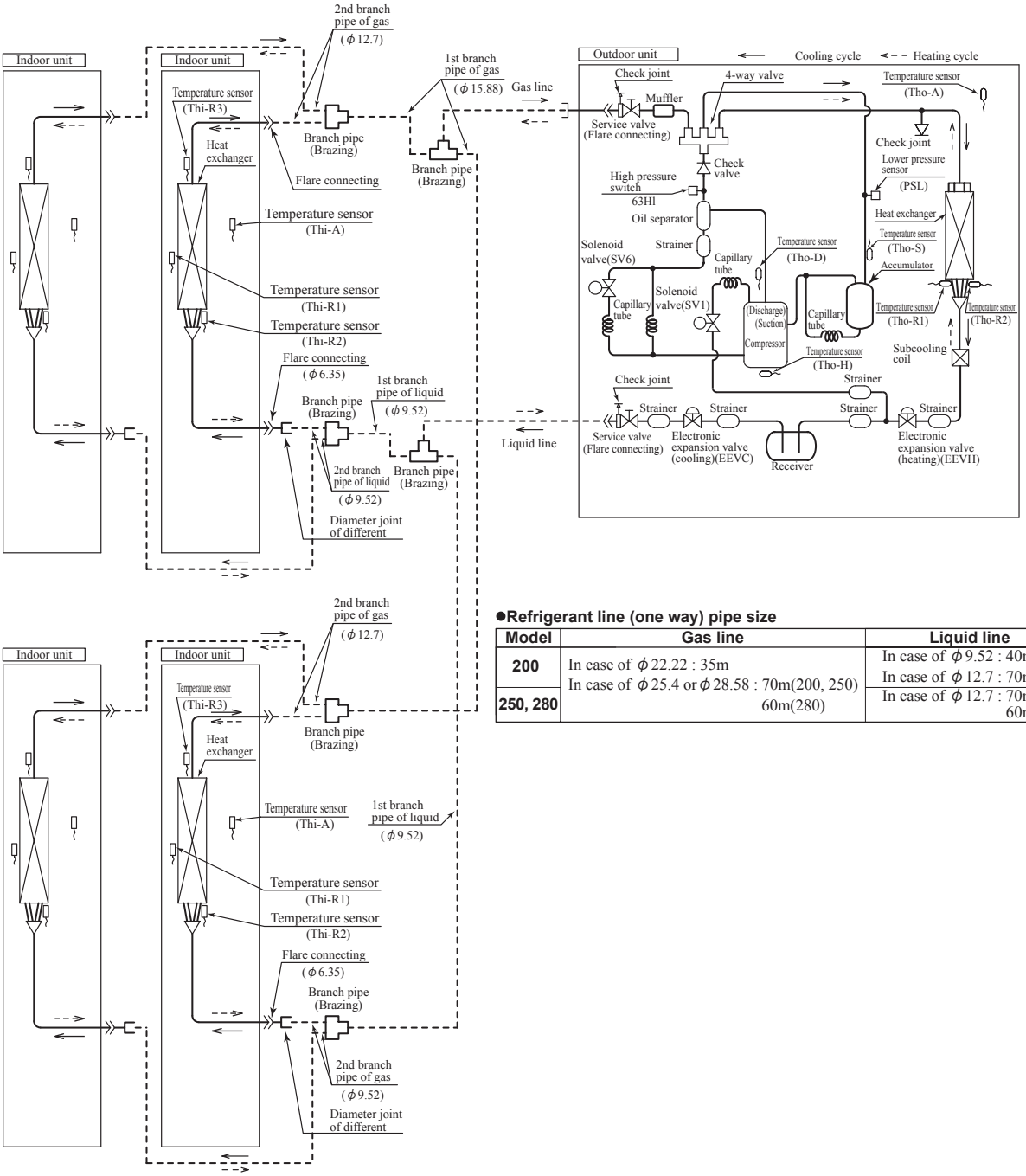


●**Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size**

Gas line	Liquid line
In case of ϕ22.22 : 35m In case of ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58 : 70m	In case of ϕ9.52 : 40m In case of ϕ12.7 : 70m

(4) Double twin type

Models 200, 250, 280



●**Refrigerant line (one way) pipe size**

Model	Gas line	Liquid line
200	In case of φ22.22 : 35m In case of φ25.4 or φ28.58 : 70m(200, 250)	In case of φ9.52 : 40m In case of φ12.7 : 70m
250, 280	60m(280)	In case of φ12.7 : 70m(250) 60m(280)

Preset point of the protective devices

Parts name	Mark	Equipped unit	200, 250, 280 model
Temperature sensor (for protection over-loading in heating)	**Thi-R (Tho-A)**	Indoor unit (Outdoor unit)	OFF 56˚C (OFF 16˚C) ON 63˚C (ON 17˚C)
Temperature sensor (for frost prevention)	**Thi-R (Th2)**	Indoor unit	OFF 10˚C (OFF 8˚C) ON 1.0˚C (ON 2.5˚C)
Temperature sensor (for protection high pressure in cooling)	**Tho-R**	Outdoor unit	OFF 50˚C ON 64˚C
Temperature sensor (for detecting discharge pipe temperature)	**Tho-D**	Outdoor unit	OFF 90˚C ON 135˚C
High pressure switch (for protection)	**63H1**	Outdoor unit	OFF 3.15MPa ON 4.15MPa
Low pressure sensor (for protection)	**PSL**	Outdoor unit	OFF 0.227MPa ON 0.079MPa

Note(1) Values in ( ) shown in case of SRK model.

5. APPLICATION DATA

5.1 Installation of indoor unit

(1) Ceiling cassette-4 way type(FDT)

PJF012D051 B

This manual is for the installation of the indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor unit), refer to page 161. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor unit) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 165. This unit must always be used with the panel.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. | ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air-conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short-circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air-conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
  Do not install the motion sensor mounting panel at following places. It could cause detection error, incapacity of detection, or characteristic degradation.
  • Place where vibration is applied to it for a long period of time.
  • Place where static electricity or electromagnetic wave generates.
  • Place where it is exposed to high temperature or humidity for a long period of time.
  • Dusty place or where the lens face could be fouled or damaged.
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air-conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air-conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

①Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  - ○Unit type/Power source specification
  - ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

When moving the indoor unit, hold only the hanging hardware (4 places) only, with care not to apply forces to any other parts of the unit (particularly the refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and resin parts).

Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Level gauge	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover(small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
								
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For unit height position adjustment and hanging support	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- In case of the panel having the motion sensor, the installation height must be no higher than 4 m. It could reduce the sensitivity of motion sensor, disabling the detection.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of air flow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air-conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
  If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air-conditioner might not work properly.)

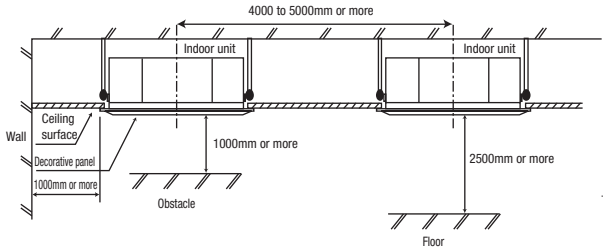
②Check if the place where the air-conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4 to 5m.

Space for installation and service

- When it is not possible to keep enough space between indoor unit and wall or between indoor units, close the air supply port where it is not possible to keep space and confirm there is no short-circuit of air flow.
- Install the indoor unit at a height of more than 2.5m above the floor.



Where there are pipe joints on the way of embedded piping, provide adequate openings for inspection of the joints.

Set blow-out pattern

- Select the most proper number of blow-out air supply port direction from 4 way, 3 way or 2 way according to the shape of the room and installation position. (1 way is not available.)
- If it is necessary to change the number of air supply port, prepare the covering materials. (sold as accessory)
- Instruct the user not to use low fan speed when 2 way or 3 way air supply is used.
- Do not use 2 way air supply port under high temperature and humidity environment. (Otherwise it could cause condensation and leakage of water.)
- It is possible to set the air flow direction port by port independently. Refer to the user's manual for details.

③Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  - ○For grid ceiling
    When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  - ○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
    When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10 or M8) on site.

Ceiling opening, Suspension bolts pitch, Pipe position

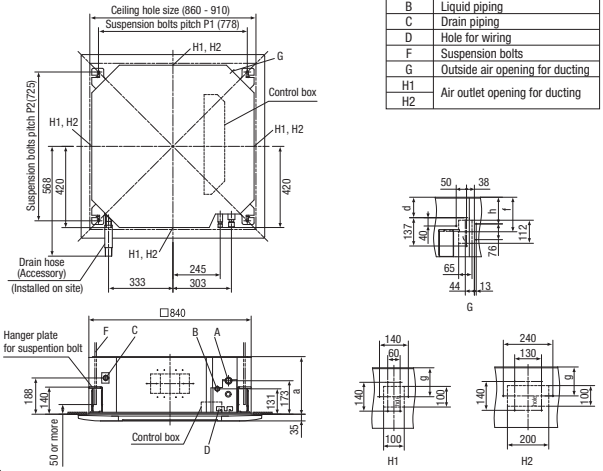
(mm)

※It is possible the suspension bolts pitch to adjust accoding to the this table.

Type \ Mark	P1	P2
1	770	725-770
2	770-800	725

Series	Type	a	d	f	g	h
Single Split (PAC) series	40 to 71 type	236	37	105	88	67
	100 to 140 type	298	99	167	140	129
VRF (KX) series	28 to 71 type	236	37	105	88	67
	90 to 160 type	298	99	167	140	129

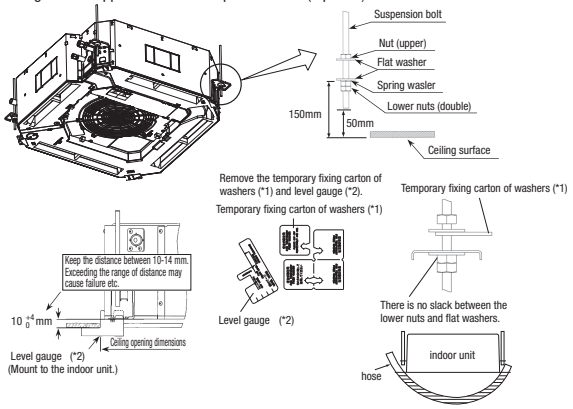
Symbol	
A	Gas piping
B	Liquid piping
C	Drain piping
D	Hole for wiring
F	Suspension bolts
G	Outside air opening for ducting
H1 H2	Air outlet opening for ducting



④Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

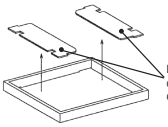
1. Set the suspension bolt length to about 50 mm from the ceiling.
2. Temporarily locate the lower nuts of the suspension bolts (4 places) at a position approximately 150 mm from the ceiling.
3. Temporarily locate the upper nuts of the suspension bolts (4 places) at positions sufficiently distance from the lower nuts so that they do not interfere with the suspension of the indoor unit and with its height adjustment.
4. Set the upper nuts of the suspension bolts and upper washers (4 places) at positions sufficiently distance from the lower nuts. Then, push and insert the temporary fixing carton of washers (*1) onto suspension bolts. Make sure that the upper washers do not slide down.
5. Suspend the indoor unit.
6. After suspending the indoor unit, mount the level gauge (*2) to the air outlet of the indoor unit, and adjust the suspension height of the indoor unit. Loosen the upper nuts (4 places), and adjust the suspension height using the lower nuts (4 places). Confirm there is no slack between the lower nuts and flat washers of the indoor unit hanger plate (4 places).
7. Remove the temporary fixing carton of washers (from all 4 places).
8. Make sure that the indoor unit is installed horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit using a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water.
   (Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3 mm.)
9. Tighten the upper nuts of the suspension bolts (4 places).

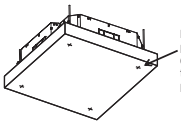


④Installation of indoor unit (continued)

Protection of the indoor unit

- If it is not possible to install the panel for a while or if attaching the ceiling board after installing the indoor unit, protect the indoor unit by using upper carton.





Caution

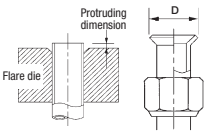
- Do not adjust the unit height by adjusting the upper nuts. Doing so will cause unexpected stress on the indoor unit and cause the unit to become deformed, prevent the panel from being installed, and be generated fan interference noise.
- Make sure that the indoor unit is installed horizontally and set the appropriate gap between the underside of the unit and the ceiling plane. Improper installation may cause air leakage, dew condensation, water leakage and noise.
- Even after the panel has been installed, the unit height can still be finely adjusted. Refer to the panel installation manual for details.
- Make sure there is no gap between the panel and the ceiling surface, and between the panel and the indoor unit. Any gap may cause air and/or water to leak, or condensation to form.

⑤Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product.
  Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
  1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the nut attached to the unit.
  2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R32 or R410A.

⚠WARNING : When flared joints are reused indoors, the flare part shall be re-fabricated. (only for R32)



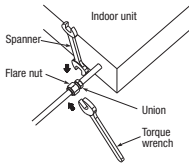
Pipe diameter d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R32 For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 – 0.5	0.7 – 1.3	8.9 – 9.1	14 – 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 – 13.2	34 – 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 – 16.6	49 – 61
15.88	1			19.3 – 19.7	68 – 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 – 24.0	100 – 120

- Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- Do not use any refrigerant other than the designated refrigerant.
  Using other refrigerant except the designated refrigerant, may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- Use special tools for R32 or R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   - Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
   - Make sure to use flare nuts assembled on the unions. Usage of other flare nuts could cause refrigerant leakage.

   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   - Make sure to hold the nut on indoor unit pipe side using double spanner method as indicated when fastening / loosening flare nuts in order to prevent unintentional twisting of the copper pipe.
   - When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above.

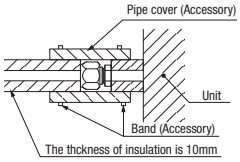


3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   - Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
     ※Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
   - Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
   - In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes. Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinforced.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

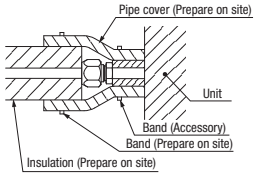
⑤Refrigerant pipe (continued)

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



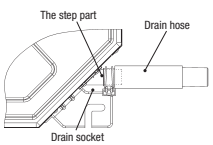
⑥Drain pipe

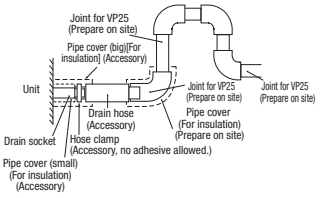
Caution

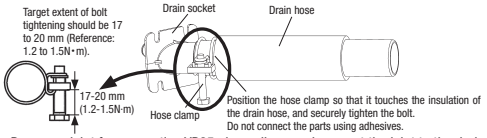
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly.
  Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

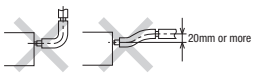
1. Make sure that the drain hose (the soft PVC side) is inserted into the end of the step part of the drain socket.
   Fix the hose clamp so that its bolt is located on the outside of the indoor unit, and the bolt are fastened in a vertical orientation.
   - Do not apply adhesives on this end.
2. Position the hose clamp so that it touches the insulation of the drain hose, and then tighten the bolt.
3. Turn the bolt several times until it is securely tightened, but do not tighten it excessively.



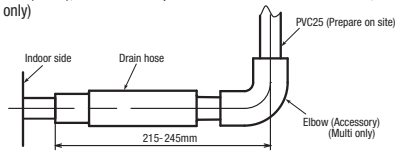




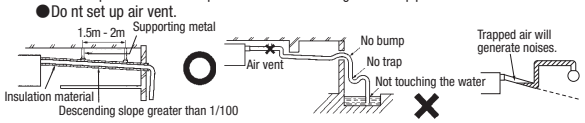
4. Prepare a joint for connecting VP25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the rigid PVC side), and adhere and connect VP25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
     It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



   - As for drain pipe, apply VP25 (OD32).
     If apply PVC25 (OD25), connect the expanded connector to the drain hose, with adhesive.
     (Multi unit only)

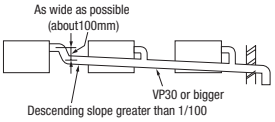


5. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - Do nt set up air vent.



⑥Drain pipe (continued)

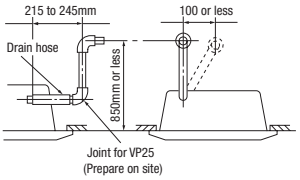
●When sharing a drain pipe for more than 1 unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



6. Insulate the drain pipe.
   ● Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
   ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

Drain up

● The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 850mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.

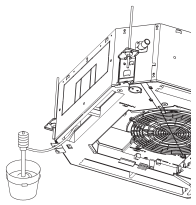


Drain test

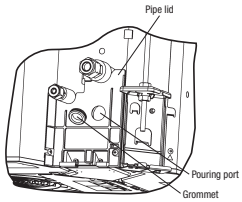
● After installing the drain pipe, make sure that drain system works correctly and that no water leaks from the joint and drain pan. Check whether the motor sound of the drain pump is normal.
● Conduct a drain test when installing, even during the heating season.
● In the case of new buildings, be sure to complete the test before fixing the ceiling.

1. Pour about 1,000 cc of test water into the drain pan of the indoor unit. Exercise care not to allow electrical equipment such as the drain pump and other components to become wet while filling water.
   Pour test water through the pouring port of the pipe lid using a feed water pump or a similar device, or through the refrigerant pipe joint.

●In case of pouring water from the air outlet



●In case of pouring water from the pouring port of the pipe lid



2. Make sure that water drains out completely and that no water leaks from any joints of the drain pipe during the test.
   Test to confirm that the water drains out correctly while listening to the drain pump motor operating sound.
   At the drain socket (transparent), it is possible to check whether the water drains out correctly.
3. Unplug the rubber plug on the indoor unit so that the remaining water drains from the drain pan after the draining test.
   After checking the water drainage, fix the rubber plug correctly. Installation work for the drain pipe must be performed for the entire drain pipe up to the indoor unit.
   If the pipe lid has been removed in order to pour water, mount the pipe lid again.

Drain pump operation

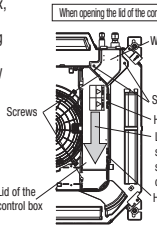
●In case electrical wiring work completed
Drain pump can be operated by the wired remote control.
For the operation method, refer to Operation for drain pump in the installation manual for wiring work.
●In case electrical wiring work not completed
Drain pump will run continuously when the dip switch"SW7-1" on the indoor unit PCB is turned ON, the connector CnB is disconnected, and then the power source (230VAC on the terminal block ① and ②) is turned ON.
Make sure to turn OFF "SW7-1" and reconnect the connector CnB after the test.

⑦Wiring-out position and wiring connection

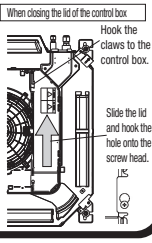
● Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
● Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
● Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
● Be sure to do D type earth work.
● For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Loosen the 2 screws of the lid of the control box, and slide the lid in the direction of the arrow shown in the figure. It will then be possible to open the lid.
2. Unhook the lid from the control box, and remove the lid.
3. Remove the 2 screws from the wiring cover, and remove the wiring cover.
4. Hold each wire inside the unit, and securely fasten them to the terminal block.
5. Fix the wiring using clamps.
6. Install the wiring cover and the lid of the control box.

When opening the lid of the control box



When closing the lid of the control box

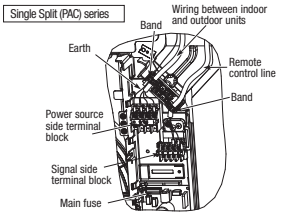


Main fuse specification

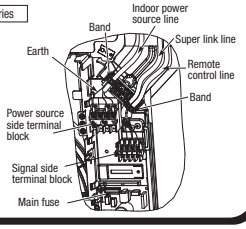
Specification	Part No.
T3.15A L250V	SSA564A149AF

⑦Wiring-out position and wiring connection (continued)

Single Split (PAC) series



VRF (KX) series



⑧Panel installation

●Install the panel on the indoor unit after electrical wiring work.
●Refer to the attached manual for panel installation for details.

⑨Check list after installation

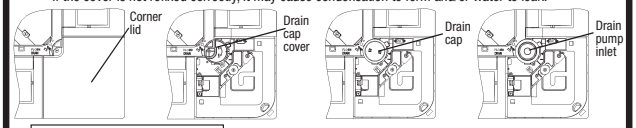
●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if;	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Power source voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

⑩How to check the dirt of drain pan and cleanimg the inlet of the drain pump (Maintenance)

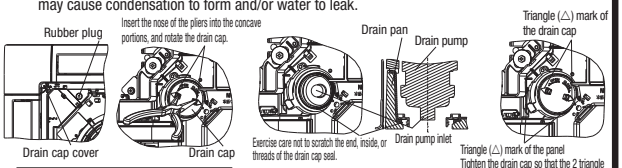
The method of checking the dirt of drain pan

●It is possible to check dirt on the drain pan and drain pump inlet without removing the panel.
1. Open the inlet grille and remove the corner lid on the drain pan side.
2. Remove the drain cap cover (1 screw) from the panel corner.
3. Check the dirt on the drain pan from the drain cap, and check the drain pump inlet. If the drain pan is very dirty, remove the drain pan and clean it.
4. After checking, refix the drain cap cover securely.
   If the cover is not refixed correctly, it may cause condensation to form and/or water to leak.



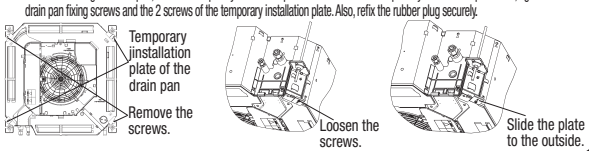
Cleaning of drain pump inlet

●It is possible to clean the drain pump inlet and surrounding area by removing the drain cap only; it is not necessary to remove the panel and drain pan.
●Before removing the drain cap, remove the rubber plug and drain water from the drain pan.
1. Remove the drain cap cover as described above.
2. Insert the nose of the pliers into the concave portions (2 places) of the drain cap, and rotate the pliers about 1 turn in the CCW direction. The drain cap is removed.
3. When cleaning the drain pump inlet, use a soft plastic tool. If a metallic tool is used, the drain cap mounting portion may be scratched and water may leak.
4. Before mounting the drain cap, rinse it and **remove any foreign material from the inside of the cap.** If the drain cap is installed with foreign material inside it, it may cause water to leak.
5. Insert the nose of the pliers into the concave portions of the drain cap and rotate the pliers to install the drain cap. Rotate the drain cap about 1 turn in the CW direction until it stops rotating. If the drain cap is not rotated for 1 or more turns, the cap will not have been installed correctly.
   Remove the drain cap, and then install it again correctly.
6. After tightening the drain cap, make sure the triangle (△) mark of the drain cap comes close to the triangle mark on the panel. If these triangle marks are not close to each other, tighten the drain cap further.
7. Refix the drain cap cover and rubber plug securely. If the cover is not refixed correctly, it may cause condensation to form and/or water to leak.



Notes for removing the drain pan

●Before removing the drain pan, drain water from the drain pan. Remove the rubber plug and drain water.
●The drain pan is installed by the temporary installation plate. Remove the 2 drain pan fixing screws, and loosen the 2 screws of the temporary installation plate.
Slide the temporary installation plate to the outside of the drain pan. And then,it is possible to remove the drain pan.
●When reinstalling the drain pan, slide the temporary installation plate to the inside and temporarily fix the drain pan. Then, tighten the 2 drain pan fixing screws and the 2 screws of the temporary installation plate. Also, refix the rubber plug securely.



PJF012D037 B

• Panel installation

Read this manual together with the indoor unit's installation manual.

⚠ WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal. Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.**
- **Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work. Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.**

Function

The Anti draft panel has the anti draft mechanism. If the Anti draft panel is installed and the anti draft function is set, the anti draft function will be oprerated and reduce the draft feeling. (Refer to ⑯ Panel setting for details.)

- Standard panel : without the anti draft mechanism
- Anti draft panel : with the anti draft mechanism

① Before installation

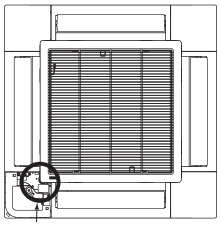
- Follow installation manual carefully, and install the panel properly.
- Check the following items.

○ Accessories

Accessories

Bolt		4 pieces	For panel installation
Strap		4 pieces	For avoiding the corner panel from falling
Screw		4 pieces	For fixing the corner panel

Note: Accessories are laid in the position removing the corner lid.



Accessories holding position

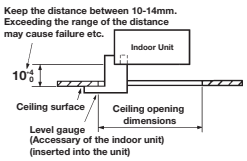
② Checking the indoor unit installation position

- Read this manual together with the air-conditioner installation manual carefully.
- Check if the opening size for the indoor unit is correct with the level gauge supplied in the indoor unit.
- Check if the gap between the plane and the indoor unit is correct by inserting the level gauge into the air outlet port of the indoor unit. (See below drawing)
- Adjust the installation elevation if necessary.
- Remove the level gauge before installing the panel.

Caution

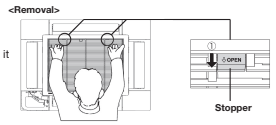
If there is a height difference beyond the design limit between the installation level of the indoor unit and the panel, the panel may be subject to excessive stress during installation and it may cause distortion and damage.

- The installation level of the indoor unit can be adjusted finely from the opening provided on the corner, even after panel is Installed. (Refer to ⑥ Installing the panel for details.)



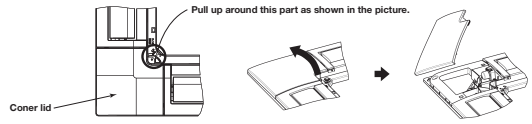
③ Removing the inlet grille

1. Hold the stoppers on the inlet grille (2 places) toward OPEN direction, open the inlet grille.
2. Remove the hooks of the inlet grille from the panel while it is in the open position.



④ Removing the corner lid

- Pull the corner lid toward the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it. (Same way for all 4 corner lids)



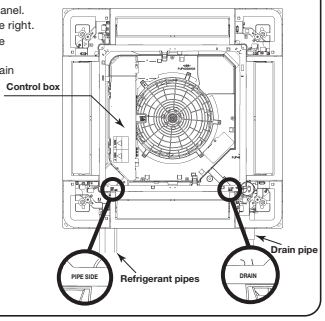
⑤ Orientation of the panel installation

Take note that there is an orientation to install the panel.

- Install the panel with the orientation shown on the right.
- Align the "PIPE SIDE" mark (on the panel) with the refrigerant pipes on the indoor unit.
- Align the "DRAIN" mark (on the panel) with the drain pipe on the indoor unit.

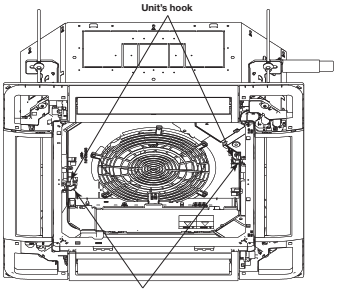
CAUTION

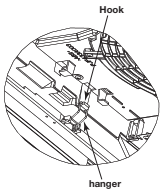
In case the orientation of the panel is not correct, it will lead to air leakage and also it is not possible to connect the flap motor wiring.

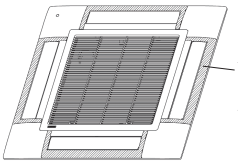


⑥ Installing the panel

1. Temporary hanging
   - Lift up the hanger (2 places) on the panel for temporary support.
   - Hang the panel on the hook on the indoor unit.







The Anti draft panel moves the parts of the anti draft mechanism (shaded area,4 places).Note that they may break if they are moved forcibly by hand. Although the parts (shaded area) of the Standard panel are separate parts from the body, they do not move.

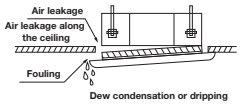
Caution

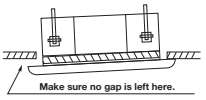
- The parts (shaded area), of the anti draft mechanism around the air outlet, are separate parts. Handle the panel with care. Especialy, the shaded area of the Anti draft panel move. Note that they may break if they are moved forcibly by hand.

2. Fix the panel on the indoor unit
   - Fasten the panel on the indoor unit with the 4 bolts supplied with the panel.

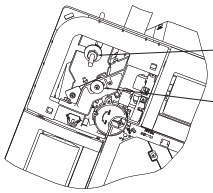
Caution

- Improperly tightened fixing bolts cause the problems listed below, so make sure that bolts are securely tightened.
- If there is a gap between the ceiling and the panel even after the fixing bolts are tightened, adjust the installation level of the indoor unit again.





- It is possible to adjust the installation height of the indoor unit with the panel installed as long as there is no influence on the drain pipe inclination and/or the indoor unit levelness.

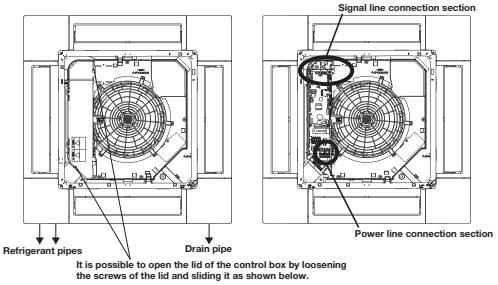


Caution

Do not give any stress on the panel when adjusting the height of the indoor unit to avoid unexpected distortion. It may cause the distortion of panel or failing to close the inlet grille, and the parts of the anti draft mechanism.

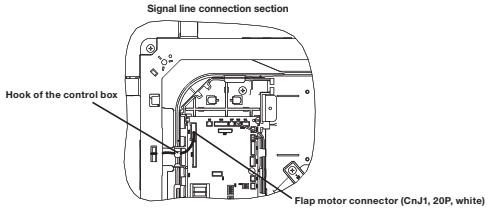
⑦ Electrical wiring

The wiring work varies depending on the panel type. Select the wiring work appropriate for the panel type.
The connection positions of the indoor unit are as shown below irrespective of the panel type.



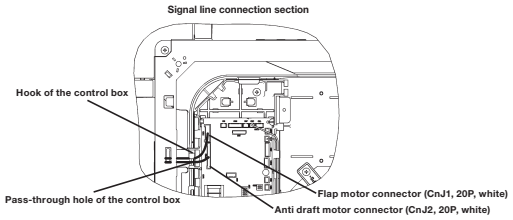
<For the Standard panel>
1. Loosen 2 screws on the control box lid of the indoor unit, and remove the lid by sliding it.
2. Pass the flap motor wiring (20-wire) through the hook of the control box, and connect to CnJ1 (20P, white).
3. Fix the control box lid of the indoor unit, and tighten 2 screws.

For the Standard panel



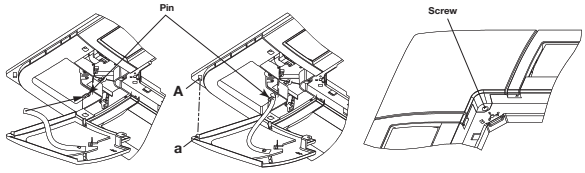
<For the Anti draft panel>
1. Loosen 2 screws on the control box lid of the indoor unit, and remove the lid by sliding it.
2. Pass the flap motor cable (20-wire) through the hook of the control box, and connect to CnJ1 (20P, white).
3. Pass the anti draft motor cable (20-wire) through the hook of the control box, and connect to CnJ2 (20P, white).
4. Fix the control box lid of the indoor unit, and tighten the 2 screws.

For the Anti draft panel



⑧ Installing a corner lid

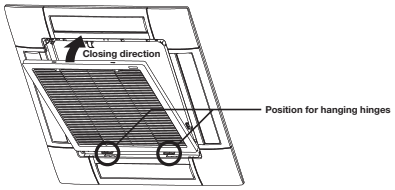
1. To avoid unexpected falling of the corner lid, put the strap onto the corner lid's pin with turning the strap up.
2. Then hang the strap of a corner lid onto the panel's pin.
3. First insert the part "a" of a corner lid into the part "A" of the panel, and then engage 2 hooks.
4. Fix with screw.



⑨ Installing the inlet grille

To attach the inlet grille, follow the procedure described in ⑤ Removing the inlet grille in the reverse order.
1. Hang the hooks of the inlet grille in the hole of the panel. (The hooks of the grille can be hanged in 4 side of the panel as following.)
2. After the grille is hanged, close the grille while the stoppers(2 places) on the grille are kept pressed to "OPEN" direction. When the grille comes to the original position, release the stoppers to hold the grille. Make sure to hear the sound of "CLICK" in both stoppers.

<Installation>



Caution

- Installing the inlet grille from the hinge side.
- Be careful in the inlet grille Installing, unstable installing may cause grille falling.
- Repair or replace the distorted, broken stopper at once, or the grille falling may occur.

⑩ Panel setting

<Flap swing range setting (Individual flap cotrol setting)>

It is possible to change the swing range of the flap by the wired remote control. Once the upper and lower limit positions are set, the flap will swing within the set range.It is also possible to set the different range to each flap.

<Anti draft setting>

The anti draft function will not be operated if the anti draft panel is installed and its wirings are only connected. To operate the anti draft function, enable the anti draft setting by using the wired or wireless remote control.

Note: It is not possible to set by the following remote control models or older.
Wired:RC-EX1A, RC-E5, RCH-E3
Wireless: RCN-E1R

Once you have enabled the settings in this mode, the anti draft function is operated when the air-conditioner is started, and the parts of the anti draft mechanism are always open when the air-conditioner is operating. When the air-conditioner is stopped, they are closed. It is possible to enabled or disabled the anti draft function for each air outlet.

For the setting details, refer to the user's manual supplied with the remote control.

(2) Ceiling cassette-4 way compact type(FDTC)

PJF012D509 B

This manual is for the installation of the indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor unit), refer to page 161. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor unit) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 165.
This unit must always be used with the panel.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. | ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air-conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short-circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air-conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air-conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
  Do not install the motion sensor mounting panel at following places. It could cause detection error, incapacity of detection, or characteristic degradation.
  • Place where vibration is applied to it for a long period of time.
  • Place where static electricity or electromagnetic wave generates.
  • Place where it is exposed to high temperature or humidity for a long period of time.
  • Dusty place or where the lens face could be fouled or damaged.
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air-conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air-conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

①Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  - ○Unit type/Power source specification
  - ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

When moving the indoor unit, hold only the hanging hardware (4 places) only, with care not to apply forces to any other parts of the unit (particularly the refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and resin parts).

Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Level gauge	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover(big)	Pipe cover(small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
								
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For unit hight position adjustment and hanging suport	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- In case of the panel having the motion sensor, the installation height must be no higher than 4 m. It could reduce the sensitivity of motion sensor, disabling the detection.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of air flow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air-conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%. This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air-conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation. (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air-conditioner might not work properly.)

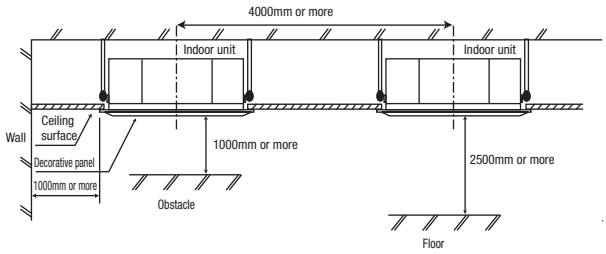
②Check if the place where the air-conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④When plural indoor units are installed nearby, keep them away for more than 4m.

Space for installation and service

- When it is not possible to keep enough space between indoor unit and wall or between indoor units, close the air supply port where it is not possible to keep space and confirm there is no short-circuit of air flow.
- Install the indoor unit at a height of more than 2.5m above the floor.



Where there are pipe joints on the way of embedded piping, provide adequate openings for inspection of the joints.

Set blow-out pattern

- Select the most proper number of blow-out air supply port direction from 4 way, 3 way or 2 way according to the shape of the room and installation position. (1 way is not available.)
- If it is necessary to change the number of air supply port, prepare the covering materials. (sold as accessory)
- Instruct the user not to use low fan speed when 2way or 3way air supply is used.
- Do not use 2way air supply port under high temperature and humidity environment. (Otherwise it could cause condensation and leakage of water.)
- It is possible to set the air flow direction port by port independently. Refer to tne user's manual for details.

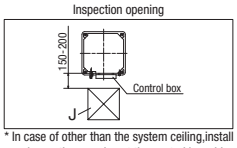
③Preparation before installation

- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  - ○For grid ceiling
    When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  - ○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
    When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10 or M8) on site.

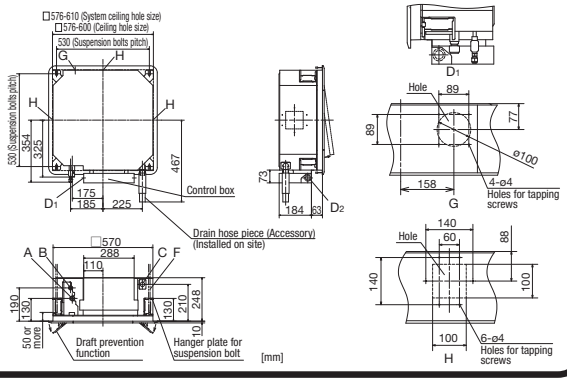
Ceiling opening, Suspension bolts pitch, Pipe position

Symbol	Content
A	Gas piping
B	Liquid piping
C	Drain piping
D_1	Power source connection
D_2	Remote control code and signal wiring connection
F	Suspension bolts
G	Outside air opening for ducting
H	Air outlet opening for ducting
J	Inspection opening

Inspection opening



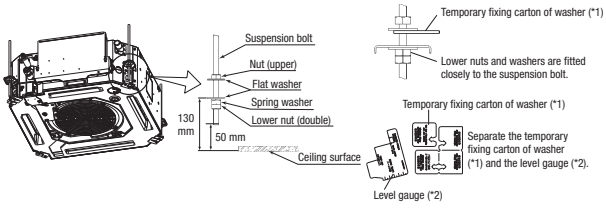
* In case of other than the system ceiling,install an inspection opening at the control box side.



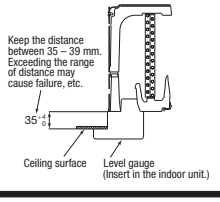
④Installation of indoor unit

Work procedure

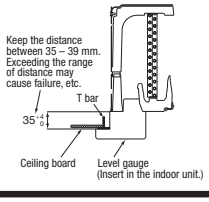
1. This unit is designed to install on a system ceiling.
   If necessary, remove T bars temporarily before installing the unit.
   When it is installed on a ceiling other than the system ceiling, install an inspection port at the control box side.
2. Determine the position of suspension bolts (530 mm × 530 mm).
3. Use 4 suspension bolts, and fix them such that each bolt can withstand a pull-out load of 500 N.
4. Set the suspension bolt length to about 50 mm from the ceiling.
5. Temporarily locate the lower nuts of the suspension bolts (4 places) at a position approximately 130 mm from the ceiling.
6. Temporarily locate the upper nuts of the suspension bolts (4 places) at positions sufficiently distance from the lower nuts so that they do not interfere with the suspension of the indoor unit and with its height adjustment.
7. Set the upper nuts of the suspension bolts and upper washers (4 places) at positions sufficiently distance from the lower nuts. Then, push and insert the temporary fixing carton of washers (*1) onto suspension bolts. Make sure that the upper washers do not slide down.
8. Suspend the indoor unit.
9. After suspending the indoor unit, mount the level gauge (*2) to the air outlet of the indoor unit, and adjust the suspension height of the indoor unit. Loosen the upper nuts (4 places), and adjust the suspension height using the lower nuts (4 places). Confirm there is no slack between the lower nuts and flat washers of the indoor unit hanger plate (4 places).
10. Remove the temporary fixing carton of washers (from all 4 places).
11. Make sure that the indoor unit is installed horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit using a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water. (Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3 mm.)
12. Tighten the upper nuts of the suspension bolts (4 places).



<In case of other than the system ceiling>



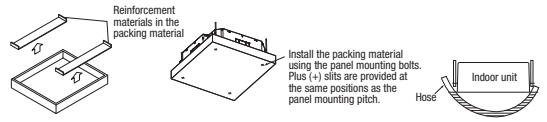
<In case of the system ceiling:>



④Installation of indoor unit (continued)

Protection of the indoor unit

● If it is not possible to install the panel for a while or if attaching the ceiling board after installing the indoor unit, protect the indoor unit by using upper carton.



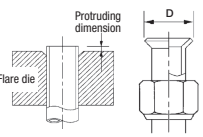
Caution

● Do not adjust the unit height by adjusting the upper nuts. Doing so will cause unexpected stress on the indoor unit and cause the unit to become deformed, prevent the panel from being installed, and be generated fan interference noise.
● Make sure that the indoor unit is installed horizontally and set the appropriate gap between the underside of the unit and the ceiling plane. Improper installation may cause air leakage, dew condensation, water leakage and noise.
● Make sure there is no gap between the panel and the ceiling surface, and between the panel and the indoor unit. Any gap may cause air and/or water to leak, or condensation to form.

⑤Refrigerant pipe

Caution

●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product.
Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the nut attached to the unit.
2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R32 or R410A.
⚠WARNING : When flared joints are reused indoors, the flare part shall be re-fabricated. (only for R32)

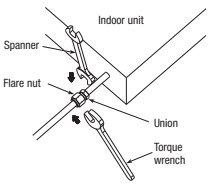


Pipe diameter d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R32 For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 – 0.5	0.7 – 1.3	8.9 – 9.1	14 – 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 – 13.2	34 – 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 – 16.6	49 – 61
15.88	1			19.3 – 19.7	68 – 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 – 24.0	100 – 120

●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
●Do not use any refrigerant other than the designated refrigerant.
Using other refrigerant except the designated refrigerant, may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
●Use special tools for R32 or R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
●Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
● Make sure to use flare nuts assembled on the unions. Usage of other flare nuts could cause refrigerant leakage.
※Do a flare connection as follows:
●Make sure to hold the nut on indoor unit pipe side using double spanner method as indicated when fastening / loosening flare nuts in order to prevent unintentional twisting of the copper pipe.
● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above.

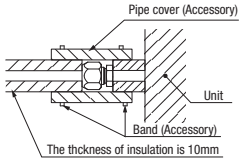


3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
※ Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes. Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

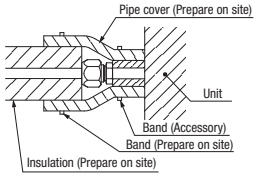
⑤Refrigerant pipe (continued)

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



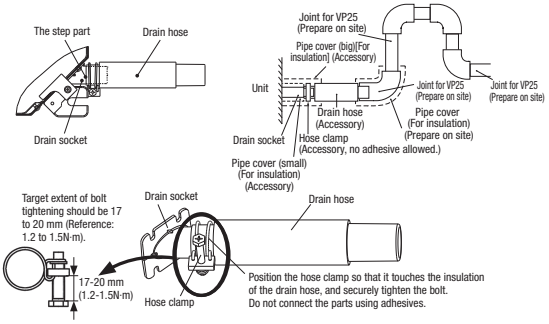
⑥Drain pipe

Caution

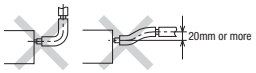
● Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly.
Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods,etc.
● Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
● Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
● Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
● Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
● Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

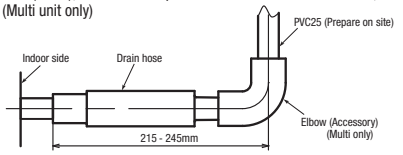
1. Make sure that the drain hose (the soft PVC side) is inserted into the end of the step part of the drain socket.
Fix the hose clamp so that its bolt is located on the outside of the indoor unit, and the bolt are fastened in a vertical orientation.
●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
2. Position the hose clamp so that it touches the insulation of the drain hose, and then tighten the bolt.
3. Turn the bolt several times until it is securely tightened, but do not tighten it excessively.



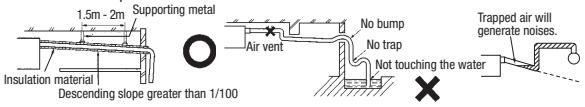
4. Prepare a joint for connecting VP25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the rigid PVC side), and adhere and connect VP25 pipe (prepare on site).
※As for drain pipe, apply VP25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
● Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose.
It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
● The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



● As for drain pipe, apply VP25 (OD32).
If apply PVC25 (OD25), connect the expanded connector to the drain hose, with adhesive. (Multi unit only)

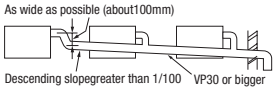


5. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
● Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
● Do nt set up air vent.



⑥Drain pipe (continued)

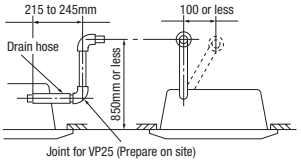
● When sharing a drain pipe for more than 1 unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



6. Insulate the drain pipe.
● Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
※ After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

Drain up

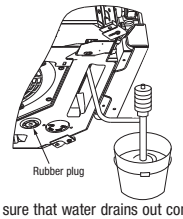
● The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 850mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



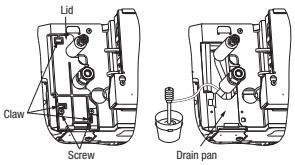
Drain test

● After installing the drain pipe, make sure that drain system works correctly and that no water leaks from the joint and drain pan. Check whether the motor sound of the drain pump is normal.
● Conduct a drain test when installing, even during the heating season.
● In the case of new buildings, be sure to complete the test before fixing the ceiling.
1. Pour about 1,000 cc of test water into the drain pan of the indoor unit. Exercise care not to allow electrical equipment such as the drain pump and other components to become wet while filling water.
Pour test water through the pipe lid using a feed water pump or a similar device, or through the refrigerant pipe joint.

● In case of pouring water from the air outlet



● In case of pouring water from the pipe lid
(1) Remove screws at 2 places.
(2) Release the claws, and remove the lid.



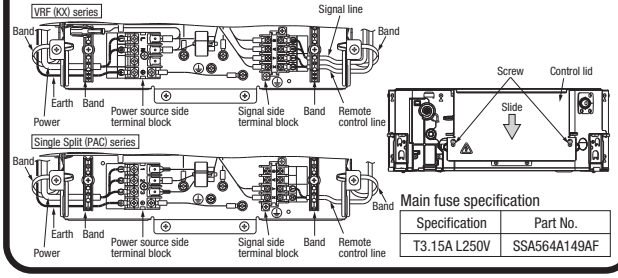
2. Make sure that water drains out completely and that no water leaks from any joints of the drain pipe during the test.
Test to confirm that the water drains out correctly while listening to the drain pump motor operating sound. At the drain socket (transparent), it is possible to check whether the water drains out correctly.
3. Unplug the rubber plug on the indoor unit so that the remaining water drains from the drain pan after the draining test.
After checking the water drainage, fix the rubber plug correctly. Installation work for the drain pipe must be performed for the entire drain pipe up to the indoor unit.
If the pipe lid has been removed in order to pour water, mount the pipe lid again.

Drain pump operation

● In case electrical wiring work completed
Drain pump can be operated by the wired remote control.
For the operation method, refer to Operation for drain pump in the installation manual for wiring work.
● In case electrical wiring work not completed
Drain pump will run continuously when the dip switch"SW7-1" on the indoor unit PCB is turned ON, the connector CnB is disconnected, and then the power source (230VAC on the terminal block ① and ②) is turned ON.
Make sure to turn OFF "SW7-1" and reconnect the connector CnB after the test.

⑦Wiring-out position and wiring connection

● Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
● Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
● Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
● Be sure to do D type earth work.
● For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.
1. Loosen screws (2 pcs.) on the control box of the unit.
2. Remove the control lid by sliding it in the arrow direction in the figure.
3. Introduce the wiring in the control box, and connect it securely to the terminal block.
4. Fix the wiring with bands as shown below.
5. Install the control lid, with care not to pinch the wiring, and fix the lid with screws (2 pcs.).



Main fuse specification

Specification	Part No.
T3.15A L250V	SSA564A149AF

⑧Panel installation

● Install the panel on the indoor unit after electrical wiring work.
● Refer to the attached manual for panel installation for details.

⑨Check list after installation

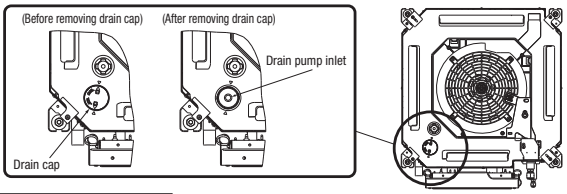
● Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if;	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Power source voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

⑩How to check the dirt of drain pan and cleanimg the inlet of the drain pump (Maintenance)

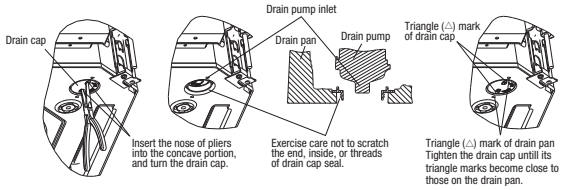
The method of checking the dirt of drain pan

1. Remove the panel according to the installation manual of the panel.
2. Check the dirt on the drain pan from the drain cap, and check the drain pump inlet. If the drain pan is very dirty, remove the drain pan and clean it.



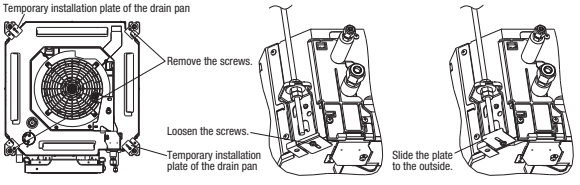
Cleaning of drain pump inlet

● It is possible to clean the drain pump inlet and surrounding area by removing the drain cap only; it is not necessary to remove the drain pan.
● Before removing the drain cap, remove the rubber plug and drain water from the drain pan.
1. Insert the nose of the pliers into the concave portions (2 places) of the drain cap, and rotate the pliers about 1 turn in the CCW direction. The drain cap is removed.
2. When cleaning the drain pump inlet, use a soft plastic tool. If a metallic tool is used, the drain cap mounting portion may be scratched and water may leak.
3. Before mounting the drain cap, rinse it and **remove any foreign material from the inside of the cap.** If the drain cap is installed with foreign material inside it, it may cause water to leak.
4. Insert the nose of the pliers into the concave portions of the drain cap and rotate the pliers to install the drain cap. Rotate the drain cap about 1 turn in the CW direction until it stops rotating. If the drain cap is not rotated for 1 or more turns, the cap will not have been installed correctly. Remove the drain cap, and then install it again correctly.
5. After tightening the drain cap, make sure the triangle (△) mark of the drain cap comes close to the triangle mark on the drain pan. If these triangle marks are not close to each other, tighten the drain cap further.
6. Refix the rubber plug securely. If the cover is not refixed correctly, it may cause condensation to form and/or water to leak.



Notes for removing the drain pan

● Before removing the drain pan, drain water from the drain pan. Remove the rubber plug and drain water.
● The drain pan is installed by the temporary installation plate. Remove the 2 drain pan fixing screws, and loosen the 2 screws of the temporary installation plate.
Slide the temporary installation plate to the outside of the drain pan. And then,it is possible to remove the drain pan.
● When reinstalling the drain pan, slide the temporary installation plate to the inside and temporarily fix the drain pan. Then, tighten the 2 drain pan fixing screws and the 2 screws of the temporary installation plate. Also, refix the rubber plug securely.



• Panel installation

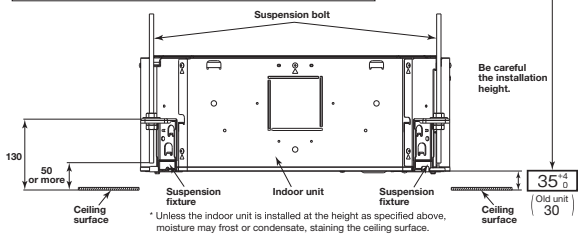
PJF012D503B

Read this manual together with the indoor unit's installation manual.

* Caution before use

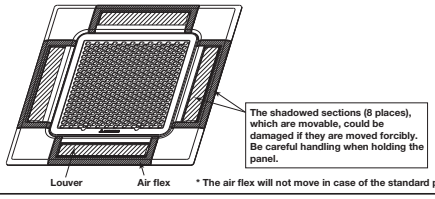
①Be careful the installation height when installing the indoor unit.
Also note that the installation height of this indoor unit is different from that of current (old) unit.

Installation height from the ceiling surface to the indoor unit.
・Old unit: 30 mm ⇒ This unit: 35$^{+4}_{0}$ mm



* Unless the indoor unit is installed at the height as specified above, moisture may frost or condensate, staining the ceiling surface.

②Do not attempt to move forcibly the louver and the air flex.



⚠ WARNING

- **Fasten the wiring to the terminal securely and hold the cable securely so as not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal. Loose connection or hold will cause abnormal heat generation or fire.**
- **Make sure the power source is turned off when electric wiring work. Otherwise, electric shock, malfunction and improper running may occur.**

Function

The draft prevention panel has the draft prevention mechanism. If the draft prevention panel is installed and the draft prevention function is set, the draft prevention function will be oprerated and reduce the draft feeling. (Refer to ⑪ Panel setting for details.)
・Standard panel : without the draft prevention mechanism
・Draft prevention panel : with the draft prevention mechanism

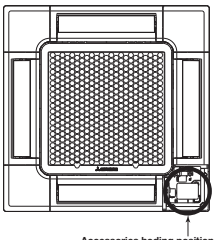
① Before installation

・Follow installation manual carefully, and install the panel properly.
・Check the following items.
○ Accessories

Accessories

Bolt		4 pieces	For panel installation
Strap		4 pieces	For avoiding the corner panel from falling
Grille hook		1 piece	For avoiding the grille from falling
Screw		4 pieces	For fixing the corner panel

Note: Accessories are laid in the position removing the corner lid.

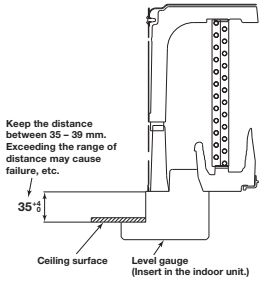


② Checking the indoor unit installation height

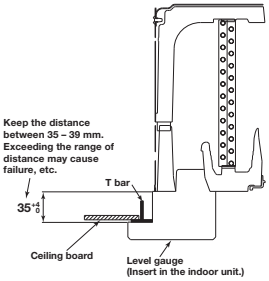
・Read this manual together with the air-conditioner installation manual carefully.
・Check if the opening size for the indoor unit is correct with the level gauge supplied in the indoor unit.
・Check if the gap between the plane and the indoor unit is correct by inserting the level gauge into the air outlet port of the indoor unit. (See below drawing)
・Adjust the installation elevation if necessary.
・Remove the level gauge before installing the panel.

Caution
If there is a height difference beyond the design limit between the installation level of the indoor unit and the panel, the panel may be subject to excessive stress during installation and it may cause distortion and damage.

<In case of other than the system ceiling>

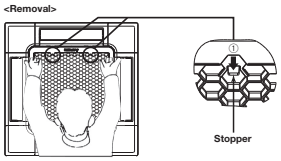


<In case of the system ceiling>



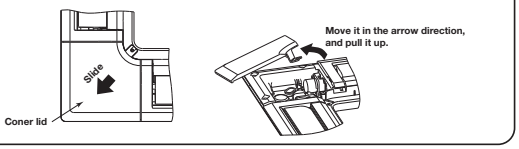
③ Removing the inlet grille

1. While placing a finger behind the stopper (2 places) and pressing it in the direction of arrow ①, pull the grille downward to open the grille.
2. Release the hooks of the inlet grille from the panel while it is in the open position.



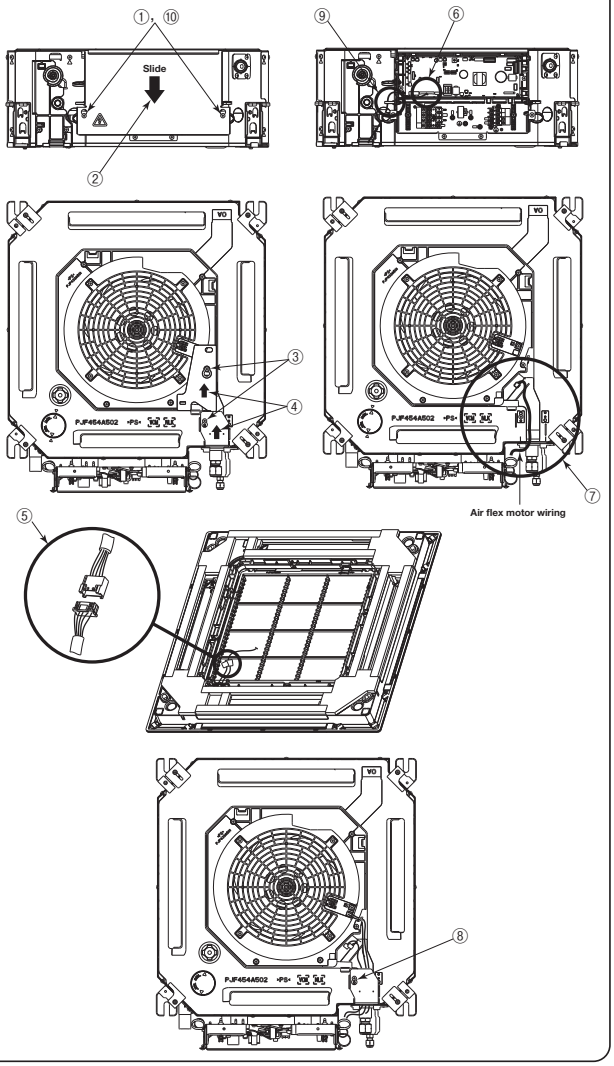
④ Removing the corner lid

・ Pull the corner lid toward the direction indicated by the arrow and remove it. (Same way for all 4 corner lids)



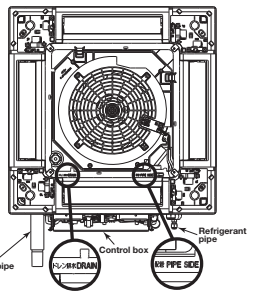
⑤ Before installing the panel <Only Draft prevention panel>

① Loosen screws (2 pcs.) on the control lid of the unit.
② Slide the control lid in the arrow direction in the figure, and remove it.
③ Loosen screws on the wiring cover (2 places).
④ Slide the wiring cover (2 places) in the arrow direction in the figure, and remove it.
⑤ Disconnect the relay connector of the air flex motor wiring attached to the panel.
⑥ Connect the air flex motor wiring to CNJ2 (20 P, gray) on PCB in the control box of the unit.
⑦ Pass the air flex motor wiring as shown in the figure.
⑧ Install the wiring cover (1 place) with care not to pinch wiring, and fix it with a screw.
⑨ Fix the air flex motor wiring with a band as shown in the figure.
⑩ Install the control lid with care not to pinch wiring, and fix with screws (2 places,).



⑥ Orientation of the panel installation

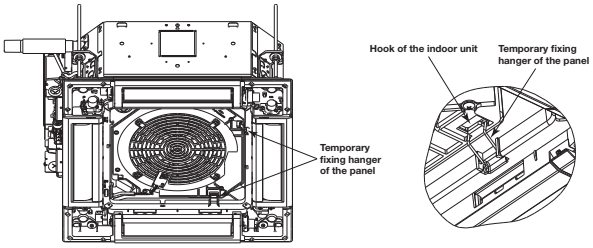
Take note that there is an orientation to install the panel.
- Install the panel with the orientation shown on the right.
- Align the "PIPE SIDE" mark (on the panel) with the refrigerant pipes on the indoor unit.
- Align the "DRAIN" mark (on the panel) with the drain pipe on the indoor unit.



CAUTION
In case the orientation of the panel is not correct, it will lead to air leakage and also it is not possible to connect the motor wiring.

⑦ Installing the panel

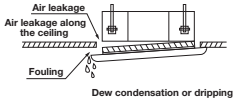
1. Temporary hanging
   - Lift up the hanger (2 places) on the panel for temporary support.
   - Hang the panel on the hook on the indoor unit.



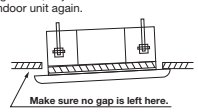
2. Fix the panel on the indoor unit
   - Fasten the panel on the indoor unit with the 4 bolts supplied with the panel.

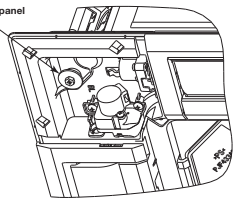
Caution
Be careful not to pinch the motion sensor wiring.

Caution
- Improperly tightened fixing bolts cause the problems listed below, so make sure that bolts are securely tightened.



- If there is a gap between the ceiling and the panel even after the fixing bolts are tightened, adjust the installation level of the indoor unit again.





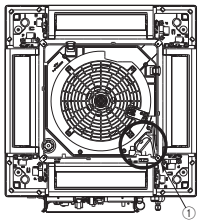
Caution
Do not give any stress on the panel when adjusting the height of the indoor unit to avoid unexpected distortion. It may cause the distortion of panel or failing to close the inlet grille, and the parts of the draft prevention mechanism.

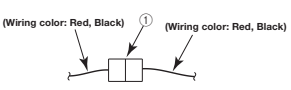
⑧ Electrical wiring

The wiring work varies depending on the panel type. Select the wiring work appropriate for the panel type.

<For the standard panel>
① Connect the connector of the louver motor wiring (Wiring color: Red, Black) at the panel side to the connector CnJ3 (20 P, White) of the louver motor wiring (Wiring color: Red, Black) at the unit side.

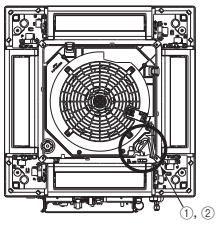
For the Standard panel

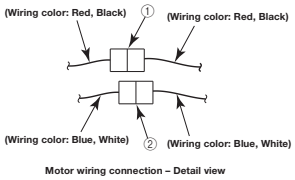




<For the draft prevention panel>
① Connect the connector of the louver motor wiring (Wiring color: Red, Black) at the panel side to the connector CnJ3 (20 P, White) of the louver motor wiring (Wiring color: Red, Black) at the unit side.
② Connect the connector of the air flex motor wiring (Wiring color: Blue, White) at the panel side to the connector CnJ4 (20 P, White) of the air flex motor wiring (Wiring color: Blue, White) at the unit side.

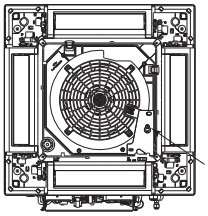
For the Draft prevention panel

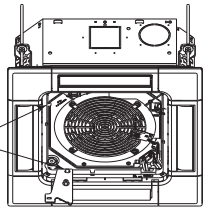




Motor wiring connection – Detail view

Install the wiring cover with care not to pinch wiring, and fix it with screws.

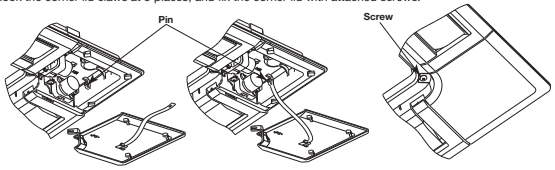




*** If the wiring cover is hung at the hook on panel, it will become easier to work.**

⑨ Installing a corner lid

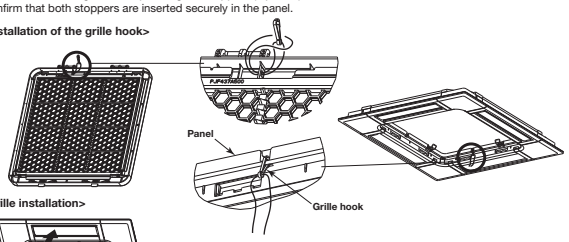
1. To avoid unexpected falling of the corner lid, put the strap onto the corner lid's pin with turning the strap up.
2. Then hang the strap of a corner lid onto the panel's pin.
3. Hook the corner lid claws at 3 places, and fix the corner lid with attached screws.



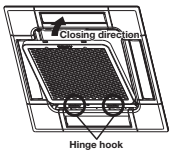
⑩ Installing the inlet grille

The panel and the inlet grille have no directional limitation to install. (Hinges of the inlet grille can be hooked at any side.)
Install the inlet grille in the reverse order of the steps described at ⑨ Removing the inlet grille .
① Attach the fall grille hook to the panel.
② Insert the hinges of inlet grille in the insert holes on the panel.
Close then the inlet grille while pressing the stoppers (2 places).
Confirm that both stoppers are inserted securely in the panel.

<① Installation of the grille hook>



<② Grille installation>



Caution
- Install the grille hook securely at the panel.
- The inlet grille must be installed starting from the hinge side.
- Install the inlet grille securely. It may drop if it is installed insecurely.
- When the stoppers have been deformed or damaged, repair them immediately, Unless they are repaired properly, the inlet grille may drop off.

⑪ Panel setting

<Louver swing range setting (Individual louver control setting)>

It is possible to change the swing range of the louver by the wired remote control. Once the upper and lower limit positions are set, the louver will swing within the set range.It is also possible to set the different range to each louver.

<Draft prevention setting>

The draft prevention function will not be operated if the draft prevention panel is installed and its wirings are only connected. To operate the draft prevention function, enable the draft prevention setting by using the wired or wireless remote control.

Note: It is not possible to set by the following remote control models or older.
Wired:RC-EX3, RC-E5, RCH-E3
Wireless: RCN-E1R

Once you have enabled the settings in this mode, the draft prevention function is operated when the air-conditioner is started, and the parts of the draft prevention mechanism are always open when the air-conditioner is operating. When the air-conditioner is stopped, they are closed. It is possible to enabled or disabled the draft prevention function for each air outlet.

For the setting details, refer to the user's manual supplied with the remote control.

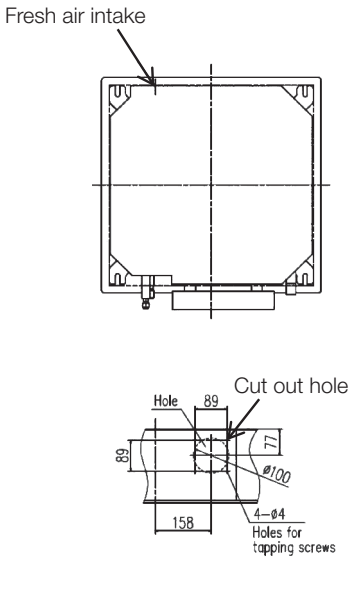
FRESH AIR INTAKE (Location for installation) FOR FDTC

At the time of installation use the duct hole (cut out) located at the positions shown in follwing diagram, as and when required.

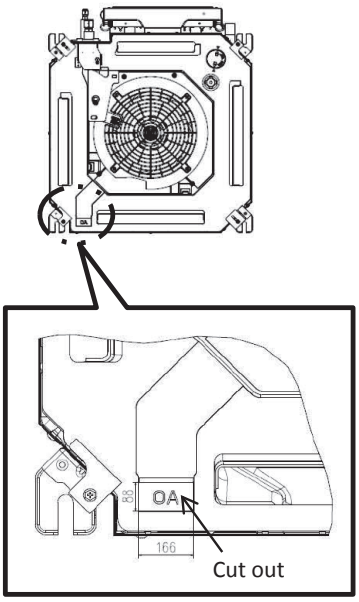
(1) Temperature conditions for OA spacer

- **Adjust the temperature conditions of mixed air with outdoor air and indoor air within the usage range of suction air temperature for the air-conditioner.**
- **The usage temperature conditions of intake outdoor air and indoor air around the ducts are shown in the following table.**
- **If the temperature conditions of intake outdoor air do not satisfy, process the outdoor air before intaking.**

Operation mode	Usage temperature conditions	
	Intake outdoor air	Indoor air around the ducts
Heating	5ºC DB or higher	18.5ºC WB or lower and 60% RH or lower
Cooling	29ºC DB or lower and 80% RH or lower	20ºC DB or higher



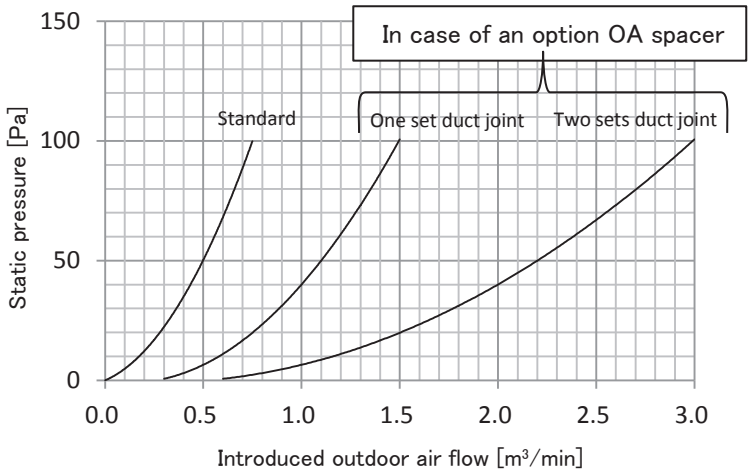
Detail drawing of fresh air intake



Detail of cut out

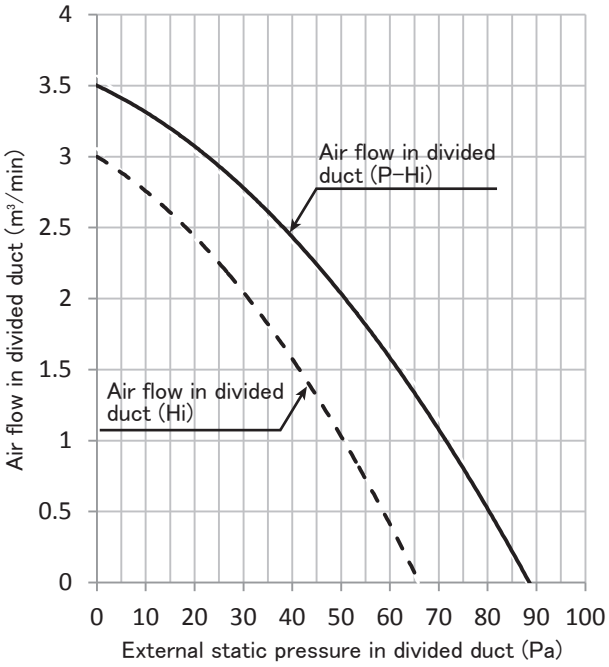
■Fresh air intake amount & static pressure characteristics

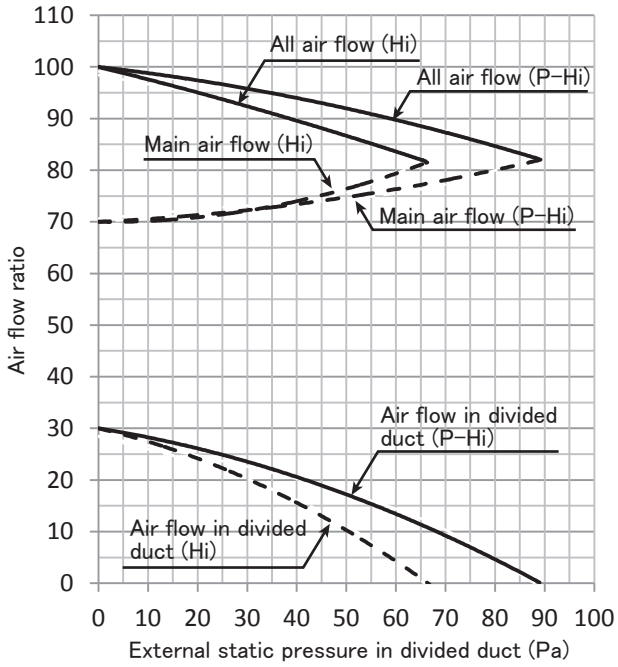
FDTC50VH, 60VH



CHARACTERISTICS OF AIR FLOW IN DIVIDED DUCT FOR FDTC

Models FDTC50VH, 60VH





■Divided duct connection method

1. Open some one during 4 knock out holes, and please connect a divided duct.
   It isn't possible to use more than one hole at the same time.
2. Please make the wind shielding a blowout vent or the side where a divided duct was connected.
3. The shotage of the external static pressure by pressure loss for a connected divided duct and blowout unit is made up by a booster fan.
   example : When 2.5m³/min of ventilation by divided duct is needed in model FDTC60VH (In case of connection duct ϕ 125 x 5m)
   ①Duct resistance : Pressure loss by a flexible duct =35Pa (7Pa/m x 5m)
   ②Blowout unit : Pressure loss by a blowout unit =10Pa
   ③External static pressure when being 2.5m³/min =17Pa (See upper table.)
   ⇒Correspondence by a booster fan =①+②-③ =28Pa

PJG012D039

(3) Duct connected-High static pressure type (FDU)

(a) Indoor unit

•This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit and an outdoor air processing unit (FDU-F).

•For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 161.
For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 165.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

● Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.

● The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.

●The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.

●After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air-conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short-circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air-conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air-conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air-conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc.
  Do not install the motion sensor mounting panel at following places. It could cause detection error, incapacity of detection, or characteristic degradation.
  • Place where vibration is applied to it for a long period of time.
  • Place where static electricity or electromagnetic wave generates.
  • Place where it is exposed to high temperature or humidity for a long period of time.
  • Dusty place or where the lens face could be fouled or damaged.
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air-conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air-conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

○This model is middle static ducted type air-conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air-conditioning unit.

①Before installation

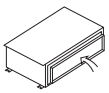
●Install correctly according to the installation manual.

●Confirm the following points:

○Unit type/Power source specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For drain pipe					
	FDU · FDU-F	FDUA				
Flat washer (M10)	Hose clamp	Soket	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
						
8	2	1	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For drain soket mounting	For drain pipe mounting	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of airflow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air-conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.

  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air-conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.

  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air-conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air-conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

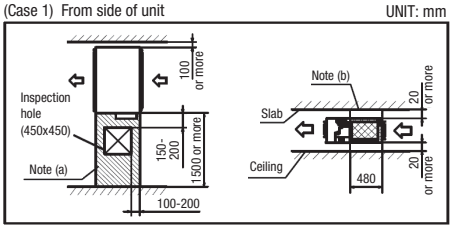
Space for installation and service

●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.

(Indoor Unit)

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

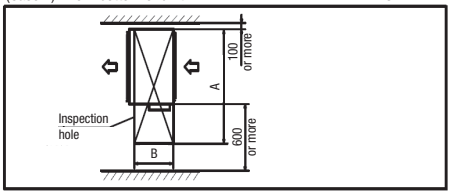
(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)

(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm

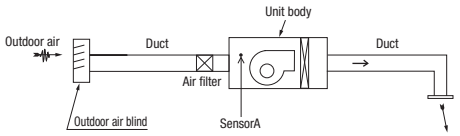


(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1900
B	880

③Cautions for the handling and installation place of outdoor air processing unit

①This unit monitors the outdoor air temperature at the position of sensor A in the figure, and controls the start and stop with the thermostat based on the value of sensor A and the setting temperature by the remote control.



Remote control's setting temperature indicates the outdoor air temperature that controls the start and stop of operation by the thermostat.

When the thermostat is turned off, the operation is changed to the fan mode so that the outdoor air is blown out directly into the room. For example if the remote control is set to 22°C in cooling operation, and if the outdoor air temperature is 22°C or lower at that time, the unit will go into fan operation.

②When there is a difference between the air-conditioning temperature in the room during cooling operation and the temperature of air blown out from the outdoor air processing unit, dewing water may drip from the unit. To prevent the dewing, provide a sufficient heat insulation means at the air blow outlet.

③Since the air blow outlet on the outdoor air processing unit may blow out the outdoor air directly, orient the outlet in such a way that it will not blow air directly to persons in the room.

④Since the unit controls the thermostat start and stop by monitoring the outdoor air temperature, it is prohibited to monitor the room temperature by means of the room temperature monitoring by changing the thermostat setting at the remote control side and the optional remote thermistor. Otherwise, dewing water may drip from the unit at lower outdoor air temperatures during cooling operation.

⑤Install the remote control of the outdoor air processing unit at a place closer to the administrator to avoid the end user from using the remote control.

When handing over the unit to the end user, make sure to explain sufficiently about the foregoing cautions, the installation place of the remote control for the outdoor air processing unit and the position of air blow outlet.

④Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.

○For grid ceiling

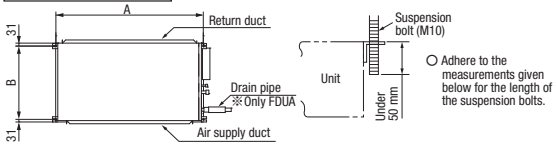
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.

When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

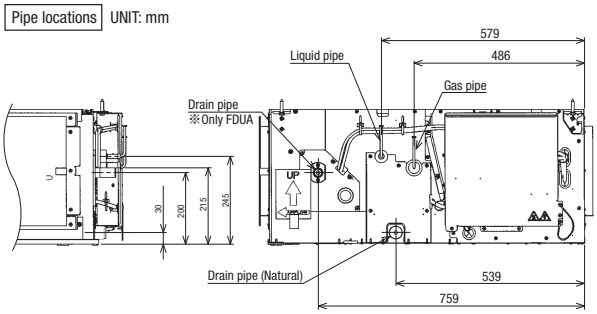
Suspension Bolt Location



UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1634
B	831

Pipe locations UNIT: mm



⑤Installation of indoor unit

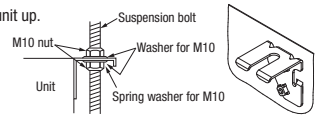
Work procedure

1. Prepare a hole of specified size on the ceiling.
2. Install suspension bolts at specified positions.
3. Make sure to use four suspension bolts.
4. Adjust the indoor unit position in order to fit with it.
5. Make sure to install the indoor unit horizontally. Confirm the levelness of the indoor unit with a level gauge or transparent hose filled with water. Keep the height difference at both ends of the indoor unit within 3mm.
6. Tighten four upper nuts and fix the unit after height and levelness adjustment.

Installation

[Hanging]

Hang the unit up.

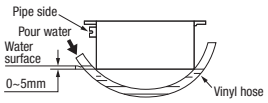


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

⑥Duct work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air-conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.

●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

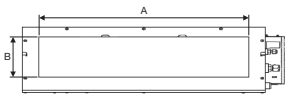
②Blowout duct

●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.

●Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1450
B	250



●Duct should be at their minimum length.

●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.

●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

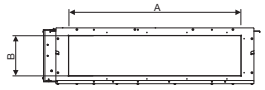
③Inlet port

●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.

●Inlet port size for each unit is as shown below.

UNIT: mm

Single type	200, 250, 280
Multi type	224, 280
FDU-F	1800, 2400
A	1450
B	250

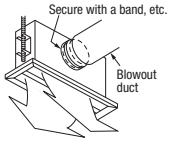


●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.

●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.

●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.

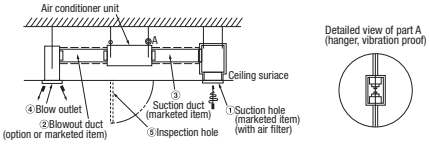


⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.

⑥Make sure to insulate ducts, in order to prevent dewing on them.

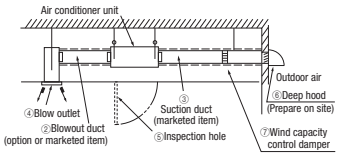
⑦Connect the duct with care not to touch the blower (fan motor) with fingers. Or, when inhaling air directly from the suction side, install an air filter at the air suction inlet.

FDU · FDUA



⑥Duct work (continued)

FDU-F



Bad example of duct work

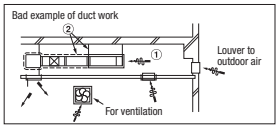
①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.

a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)

b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..

c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



⑦Refrigerant pipe

Caution

●Use the new refrigerant pipe.
When re-using the existing pipe system for R22 or R407C, pay attention to the following items.
・Change the flare nuts with the attached ones, and reprocess the flare parts.
・Do not use thin-walled pipes.

●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.

●Do not use any refrigerant other than the designated refrigerant.
Using other refrigerant except R32 or R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.

●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.

●Use special tools for R32 or R410A refrigerant.

●The indoor unit pipes allow the maintenance panel to be removed. Therefore, regardless of the piping direction, there should be a straight section of 400 mm or more.

Work procedure

1. When brazing work, perform it while cool down around the brazing port with wet towels to prevent the overheating.
2. After check the gas leak test, install the heat insulation (prepare on site) to the brazing port of the indoor unit.
   ●Be sure to perform the heat insulation both of gas side piping with liquid side piping.
   ※If heat insulation does not install to the pipes, dew condensation may occurs and it may cause the water leakage.
   The thickness of the heat insulation should be more than 20mm.
3. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.
   ○The brazing port size of the indoor unit.

Single unit	Liquid/Gas	Size	Multi unit	Liquid/Gas	Size
Type 200	Liquid piping	ϕ9.52	Type 224	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52
	Gas piping	ϕ25.4		Gas piping	ϕ19.05
Type 250 280	Liquid piping	ϕ12.7	Type 280	Liquid piping	ϕ 9.52
	Gas piping	ϕ25.4		Gas piping	ϕ22.22

※Please refer to the installation sheet of outdoor units for details.

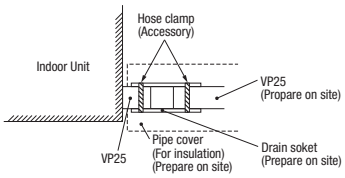
⑧Drain pipe

Caution

- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

1. Insert the supplied drain hose (the end made of soft PVC) to the step of the drain socket on the indoor unit and fix it securely with the clamp.
   - ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.

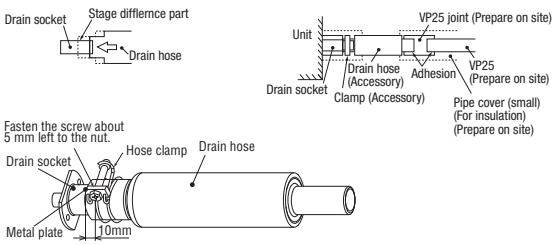


○The cases of FDUA and mouting a Drain-up KIT (optional parts)

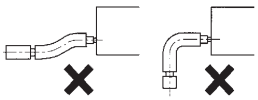
Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.

Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw about 5mm left to the nut.

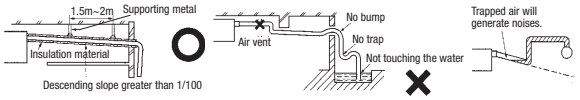
- ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
- ●Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



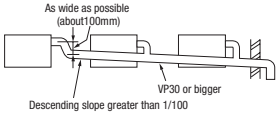
2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - ●Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose. It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - ●The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.



3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - ●Do not set up air vent.



- ●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



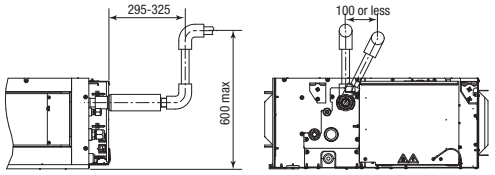
⑧Drain pipe (continued)

4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - ●Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.

Drain up

○The cases of FDUA and mounting a drain-up KIT (optional parts)

- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



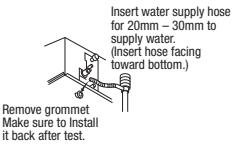
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

Procedures

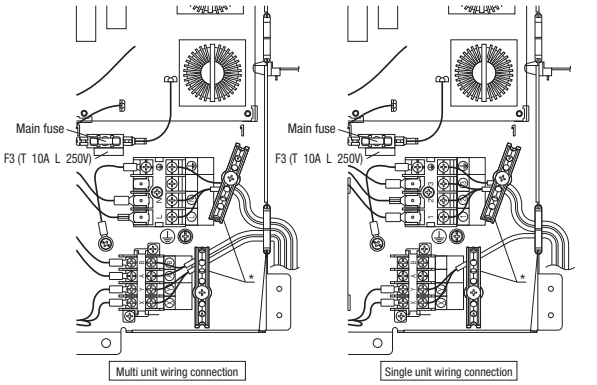
1. Supply about 2000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.



⑨Wiring-out position and wiring connection

- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.



* Please fix the wiring in the band not to move even if it pulls.

Main fuse specification

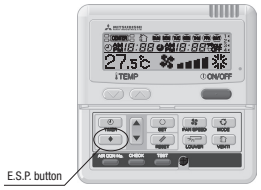
Specification	Part No.
T 10A L 250V	SSA 564A149AL

⑩External static pressure setting

You can set External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) by method of MANUAL SETTING on remote control. Indoor unit will control fan-speed to keep rated air flow volume at each fan speed setting (Lo-Uhi)

You can set required E.S.P. by wired remote control that calculated with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.

- How to set E.S.P. by wired remote control
  ① Push "◆" marked button(E.S.P. button).
  ② Select indoor unit No. by using ◆◆ button.
  ③ Select setting No. by using ◆◆ button and set E.S.P. by ( ) button.
  See detailed procedure in technical manual.



Notice

You can not set E.S.P. by wireless remote control.

With E.S.P. setting, confirm that actual E.S.P. agrees with E.S.P. setting.
When E.S.P. setting is higher than actual E.S.P., the airflow rate becomes excessively higher. This will cause water leakage if water splashes.
When E.S.P. setting is lower than actual E.S.P., the airflow rate becomes excessively lower and the cooling or heating may become ineffective.
In order to reduce the risk above the factory E.S.P. setting is set within the range of 80 – 150 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 8 – 15). Be sure to use within the range of 80 – 150 Pa in actual operations. If actual E.S.P. is lower than 80 Pa, it may cause water leakage.

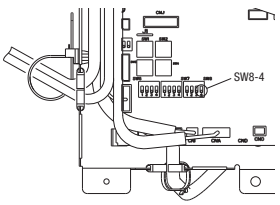
Setting No.	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
E.S.P (Pa)	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150

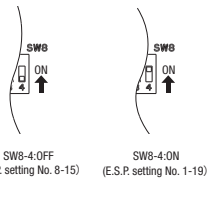
※ If 1 – 7 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 8.
If 16 – 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 15.
Factory default is No. 8.

The Case of FDU-F

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
E.S.P. (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120

※ If 13-20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 12.
※ Factory default is No. 8.





SW8-4:OFF (E.S.P. setting No. 8-15)

SW8-4:ON (E.S.P. setting No. 1-19)

⑩External static pressure setting

If SW8-4 is turned to "ON", E.S.P. setting range can be changed to 10 – 200 Pa (E.S.P. setting No. 1 – 19). This should not be used when actual E.S.P. cannot be confirmed, because the risk above becomes higher.

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
E.S.P. (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	200

※ If 20 is selected for the setting No. on the remote control, the setting No. shows No. 19.

⑪Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

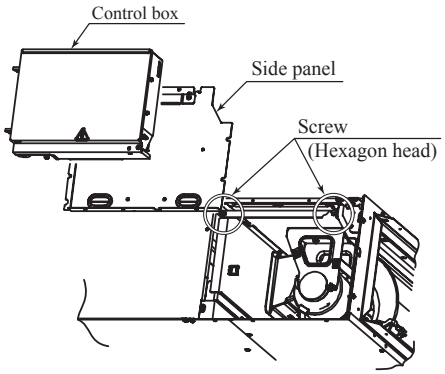
Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Power source voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
No mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks airflow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	
Is setting of E.S.P finished?	Excessive air flow, water drop blow out	

(b) Replacement procedure of the fan unit

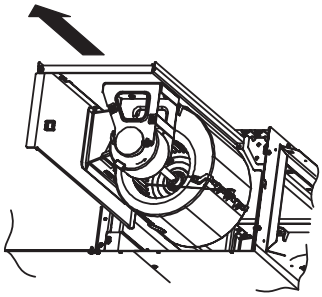
Notes(1) The unit is a heavy item. It must be supported securely and handled with care not to drop when it is necessary to replace.
(2) For the maintenance space, refer to page 146.

Models FDU200VH, 250VH, 280VH

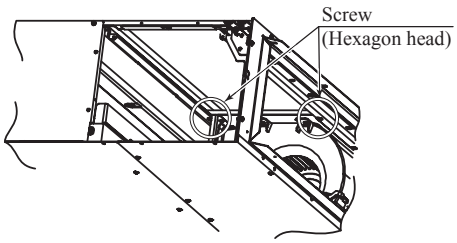
(i) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the unit located at the near side.



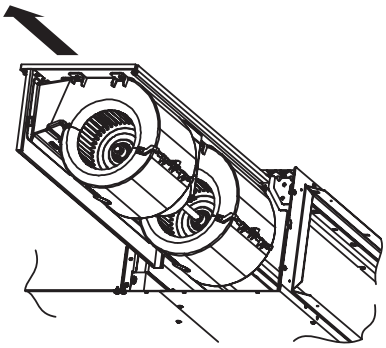
(ii) Take out the fan unit located at the near side in the arrow direction.



(iii) Remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the fan unit located at the far side.



(iv) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



PJG012D021A

(4) Duct connected-Low/Middle static pressure type (FDUM)

(a) Indoor unit

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 161. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 165.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. | ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **Check the density refered by the foumula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density exceeds the limit density, please consult the dealer and installate the ventilation system.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air-conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock or fire due to a short circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it could cause electric shocks or fire.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air-conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air-conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air-conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
  Do not install the motion sensor at following places. It could cause detection error, incapacity of detection, or characteristic degradation.
  · Place where vibration is applied to it for a long period of time.
  · Place where static electricity or electromagnetic wave generates.
  · Place where it is exposed to high temperature or humidity for a long period of time.
  · Dusty place or where the lens face could be fouled or damaged.
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air-conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air-conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

○This model is middle static ducted type air-conditioning unit. Therefore, do not use this model for direct blow type air-conditioning unit.

①Before installation

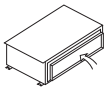
●Install correctly according to the installation manual.

●Confirm the following points:

○Unit type/Power source specification ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items

Accessory item

For hanging	For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe			
Flat washer (M10)	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Pipe cover (big)	Pipe cover (small)	Drain hose	Hose clamp
							
8	1	1	4	1	1	1	1
For unit hanging	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid tube	For pipe cover fixing	For heat insulation of drain socket	For heat insulation of drain socket	For drain pipe connecting	For drain hose mounting



Accessory parts are stored inside this suction side.

②Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.

- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of air flow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air-conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air-conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above. If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air conditioner might not work properly.)

② Check if the place where the air-conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

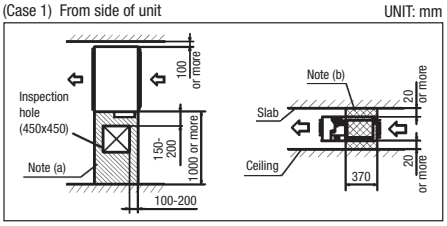
Space for installation and service

●Make installation altitude over 2.5m.

(Indoor Unit)

Select either of two cases to keep space for installation and services.

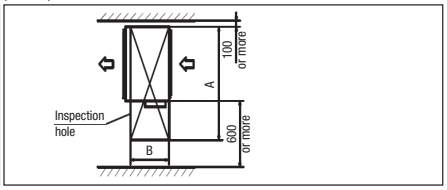
(Case 1) From side of unit UNIT: mm



Notes (a) There must not be obstacle to draw out fan motor. (marked area)

(b) Install refrigerant pipe, drain pipe, and wiring so as not to cross marked area.

(Case 2) From bottom of unit UNIT: mm



(Size of inspection hole) UNIT: mm

Single type	40-50	60, 71	100-140
Multi type	22-56	71, 90	112-160
A	1100	1300	1720
B	620		725

③Preparation before installation

●If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.

○For grid ceiling

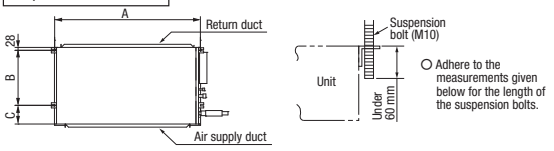
When the suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.

When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.

●Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

Suspension Bolt Location

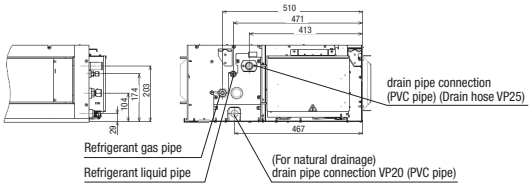


UNIT: mm

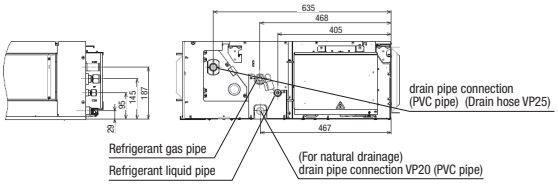
Multi type	22-56	71, 90	112-160
Single type	40-50	60, 71	100-140
A	786	986	1404
B	472	472	530
C	135	135	180

Pipe locations UNIT: mm

Multi type	22-90
Single type	40-71



Multi type	112-160
Single type	100-140

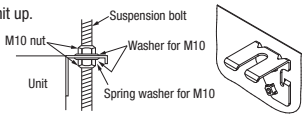


④Installation of indoor unit

Installation

[Hanging]

Hang the unit up.

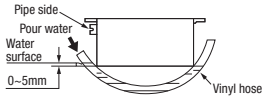


If the measurements between the unit and the ceiling hole do not match upon installation, it may be adjusted with the long holed installation tool.

Adjustment for horizontality

○Either use a level vial, or adjust the level according to the method below.

●Adjust so the bottom side of the unit will be leveled with the water surface as illustrated below.



Let the pipe side be slightly sloped.

○If the unit is not leveled, it may cause malfunctions or inoperation of the float switch.

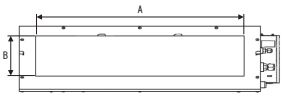
⑤Duct work

①A corrugated board (for preventing sputtering) is attached to the main body of the air-conditioner (on the outlet port). Do not remove it until connecting the duct.
- ●An air filter can be provided on the main body of the air-conditioner (on the inlet port). Remove it when connecting the duct on the inlet port.

②Blowout duct
- ●Use rectangular duct to connect with unit.
  Duct size for each unit is as shown below.

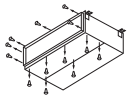
UNIT: mm

Single type	40-50	60, 71	100-140
Multi type	22-56	71, 90	112-140
A	682	882	1202
B	172	172	172

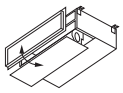


- ●Duct should be at their minimum length.
- ●We recommend to use sound and heat insulated duct to prevent it from condensation.
- ●Connect duct to unit before ceiling attachment.

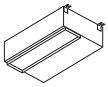
③Inlet port
- ●When shipped the inlet port lies on the back.
- ●When connecting the duct to the inlet port, remove the air filter if it is fitted to the inlet port.
- ●When placing the inlet port to carry out suction from the bottom side, use the following procedure to replace the suction duct joint and the bottom plate.



●Remove the screws which fasten the bottom plate and the duct joint on the inlet port side of the unit.



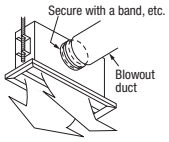
●Replace the removed bottom plate and duct joint.



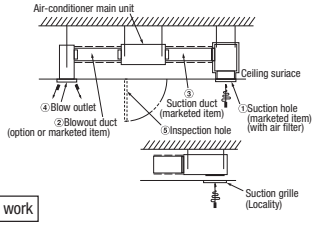
●Fit the duct join with a screw; fit the bottom plate.

- ●Make sure to insulate the duct to prevent dewing on it.

④Install the specific blowout duct in a location where the air will circulate to the entire room.
- ●Conduct the installation of the specific blowout hole and the connection of the duct before attaching them to the ceiling.
- ●Insulate the area where the duct is secured by a band for dew condensation prevention.



⑤Make sure provide an inspection hole on the ceiling. It is indispensable to service electric equipment, motor, functional components and cleaning of heat exchanger.



Bad example of duct work

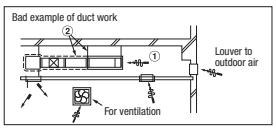
①If a duct is not provided at the suction side but it is substituted with the space over the ceiling, humidity in the space will increase by the influence of capacity of ventilation fan, strength of wind blowing against the out door air louver, weather (rainy day) and others.

a)Moisture in air is likely to condense over the external plates of the unit and to drip on the ceiling. Unit should be operated under the conditions as listed in the above table and within the limitation of wind volume. When the building is a concrete structure, especially immediately after the construction, humidity tends to rise even if the space over the ceiling is not substituted in place of a duct. In such occasion, it is necessary to insulate the entire unit with glass wool (25mm). (Use a wire net or equivalent to hold the glass wool in place.)

b)It may run out the allowable limit of unit operation (Example: When outdoor air temperature is 35°C DB, suction air temperature is 27°C WB) and it could result in such troubles as compressor overload, etc..

c)There is a possibility that the blow air volume may exceed the allowable range of operation due to the capacity of ventilation fan or strength of wind blowing against external air louver so that drainage from be heat exchanger may fall to reach the drain pan but leak outside (Example: drip on to the ceiling) with consequential water leakage in the room.

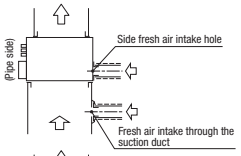
②If vibration damping is not conducted between the unit and the duct, and between the unit and the slab, vibration will be transmitted to the duct and vibration noise may occur. Also, vibration may be transmitted from the unit to the slab. Vibration damping must be performed.



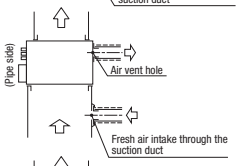
⑤Duct work (continued)

Connecting the air intake/vent ducts

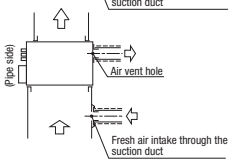
①Fresh Air Intake
[for air intake duct only]
○Use the side fresh air intake hole, or supply through a part of the suction duct.



[for simultaneous air intake/vent]
○Intake air through the suction duct.
(the side cannot be used)



②Air Vent
○Use the side air vent hole.
(always use together with the air intake)



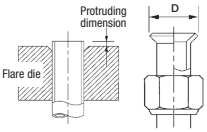
○Insulate the duct to protect it from dew condensation.

⑥Refrigerant pipe

Caution

- ●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product.
  Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
  1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit.
  2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R32 or R410A.

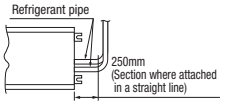
⚠WARNING : When flared joints are reused indoors, the flare part shall be re-fabricated. (only for R32)



Pipe diameter d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R32 For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 – 0.5	0.7 – 1.3	8.9 – 9.1	14 – 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 – 13.2	34 – 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 – 16.6	49 – 61
15.88	1			19.3 – 19.7	68 – 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 – 24.0	100 – 120

- ●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
- ●Do not use any refrigerant other than R32 or R410A.
  Using other refrigerant except R32 or R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
- ●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
- ●Use special tools for R32 or R410A refrigerant.

Piping work

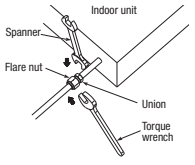


When conducting piping work, make sure to allow the pipes to be aligned in a straight line for at least 250 mm, as shown in the left illustration. (This is necessary for the drain pump to function)

Work procedure

1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
   ※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
   - ●Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
   ※Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
   - ●Make sure to use flare nuts assembled on the unions. Usage of other flare nuts could cause refrigerant leakage.

   ※Do a flare connection as follows:
   - ●Make sure to hold the nut on indoor unit pipe side using double spanner method as indicated when fastening / loosening flare nuts in order to prevent unintentional twisting of the copper pipe.
   - ●When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above.



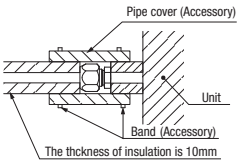
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
   - ●Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
     ※ Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
   - ●Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
   - ●In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes. Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.

⑥Refrigerant pipe (continued)

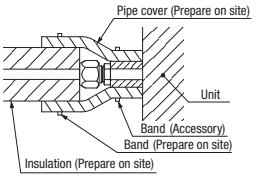
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
   As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



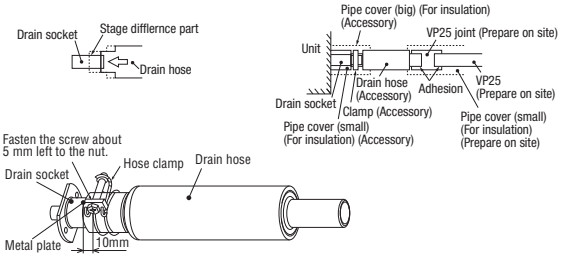
⑦Drain pipe

Caution

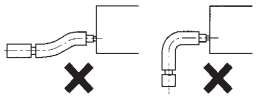
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful and inflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

Work procedure

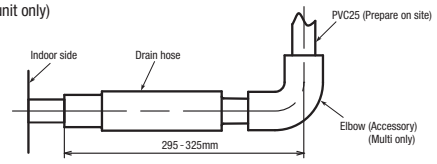
1. Make sure to insert the drain hose (the end mode of soft PVC) to the end of the step part of drain socket.
   Attach the hose clamp to the drain hose around 10mm from the end, and fasten the screw about 5mm left to the nut.
   - ●Do not apply adhesives on this end.
   - ●Do not use acetone-based adhesives to connect to the drain socket.



2. Prepare a joint for connecting VP25 pipe, adhere and connect the joint to the drain hose (the end made of rigid PVC), and adhere and connect VP25 pipe (prepare on site).
   ※As for drain pipe, apply VP25 made of rigid PVC which is on the market.
   - ●Make sure that the adhesive will not get into the supplied drain hose. It may cause the flexible part broken after the adhesive is dried up and gets rigid.
   - ●The flexible drain hose is intended to absorb a small difference at installation of the unit or drain pipes. Intentional bending, expanding may cause the flexible hose broken and water leakage.

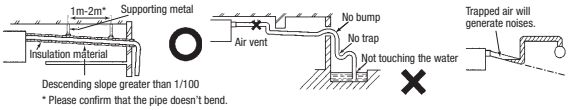


   - ●As for drain pipe, apply VP25 (OD32).
     If apply PVC25 (OD25), connect the expanded connector to the drain hose, with adhesive. (Multi unit only)

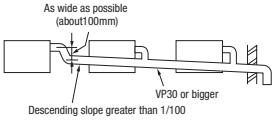


⑦Drain pipe (continued)

3. Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway.
   - ●Pay attention not to give stress on the pipe on the indoor unit side, and support and fix the pipe as close place to the unit as possible when connecting the drain pipe.
   - ●Do not set up air vent.



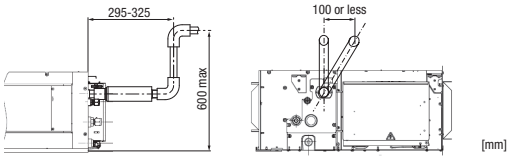
   - ●When sharing a drain pipe for more than one unit, lay the main pipe 100mm below the drain outlet of the unit. In addition, select VP30 or bigger size for main drain pipe.



4. Insulate the drain pipe.
   - ● Be sure to insulate the drain socket and rigid PVC pipe installed indoors otherwise it may cause dew condensation and water leakage.
     ※After drainage test implementation, cover the drain socket part with pipe cover (small size), then use the pipe cover (big size) to cover the pipe cover (small size), clamps and part of the drain hose, and fix and wrap it with tapes to wrap and make joint part gapless.

Drain up

- The position for drain pipe outlet can be raised up to 600mm above the ceiling. Use elbows for installation to avoid obstacles inside ceiling. If the horizontal drain pipe is too long before vertical pipe, the backflow of water will increase when the unit is stopped, and it may cause overflow of water from the drain pan on the indoor unit. In order to avoid overflow, keep the horizontal pipe length and offset of the pipe within the limit shown in the figure below.



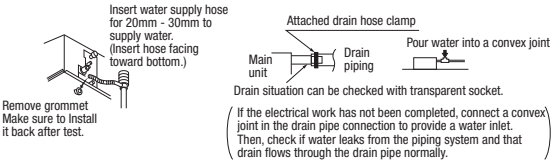
Otherwise, the construction point makes it same as drain pipe construction.

Drain test

1. Conduct a drain test after completion of the electrical work.
2. During the trail, make sure that drain flows properly through the piping and that no water leaks from connections.
3. In case of a new building, conduct the test before it is furnished with the ceiling.
4. Be sure to conduct this test even when the unit is installed in the heating season.

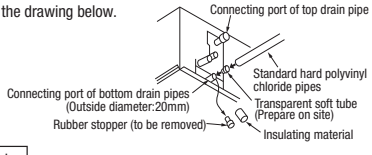
Procedures

1. Supply about 1000 cc of water to the unit through the air outlet by using a feed water pump.
2. Check the drain while cooling operation.



Outline of bottom drain piping work

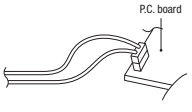
- If the bottom drain piping can be done with a descending gradient (1/50-1/100), it is possible to connect the pipes as shown in the drawing below.



Uncoupling the drain motor connector

- Uncouple the connector CnR for the drain motor as illustrated in the drawing on the right.

(Note: If the unit is run with the connector coupled, drain water will be discharged from the upper drain pipe joint, causing a water leak.)

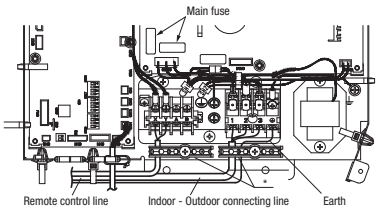


⑧Wiring-out position and wiring connection

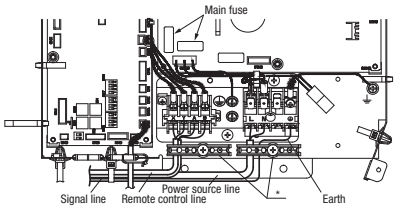
- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country.
  Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- Be sure to do D type earth work.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove a lid of the control box (2 screws).
2. Hold each wiring inside the unit and fasten them to terminal block securely.
3. Fix the wiring with clamps.
4. Install the removed parts back to original place.

Single unit wiring connection



Multi unit wiring connection



* Please fix the wiring in the band not to move even if it pulls.

Main fuse specification

Model	Specification	Part No.
22-56	T3.15A L250V	SSA564A149AF
71-160	T5A L250V	SSA564A149AH

⑨External static pressure setting

You can set External Static Pressure (E.S.P.) by either method of MANUAL SETTING or AUTOMATIC SETTING by remote control.
Indoor unit will control fan-speed to keep rated air flow volume at each fan speed setting (Lo-Uhi)

1. MANUAL SETTING
   You can set required E.S.P. by wired remote control that calculated with the set air flow rate and pressure loss of the duct connected.
   Select No.1-10 (10Pa-100Pa) from following table according to calculation result.
   Refer to technical manual for details of air flow characteristic.

Setting No.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
External Static Pressure (Pa)	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100

※ When you set No.11-19 by remote control, unit will control fan-speed with setting of No.10 Factory default is at No.5.

- How to set E.S.P by wired remote control
  ① Push "◆" marked button(E.S.P button).
  ② Select indoor unit No. by using ⬍ button.
  ③ Select setting No. by using ⬍ button and set E.S.P. by ⟲ button.
  See detailed procedure in technical manual.

Notice
You can not set E.S.P. by wireless remote control.

Caution
Be sure to set E.S.P. according to actual duct connected.
Wrong settings causes excessive air flow volume or water drop blown out.

2. AUTOMATIC SETTING
   Indoor unit will recognize E.S.P. by itself automatically and select appropriate fan speed No.1-10.

⑨External static pressure setting (continued)

- How to start automatic setting
  ①, ②Same setting as MANUAL SETTING.
  ③ Select [AUT] by using ⬍ button and press ⟲ button .
  ② After setting E.S.P. at "AUT", operate unit in FAN mode with certain fan speed (Lo-Uhi).

Indoor unit fan will run automatically and recognize E.S.P. by itself.
The operation for automatic E.S.P. recognition will last about 6 minutes, and it will be stopped after recognition is completed.

Caution
- Be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING by remote control AFTER ducting work is completed. When duct specification is changed after AUTOMATIC SETTING, be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING again after power resetting and turning on again.
- Be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING before trial cooling operation. (See ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK INSTRUCTION about trial cooling operation)
- Before AUTOMATIC SETTING, be sure to check that return air filter in duct is installed and damper is opened.
  Wrong procedure causes excessive air flow or water drop blown out.

Notice
- During operation for automatic recognition (the Auto Operation), fan rotates with certain speeds regardless of set fan speed by remote control.
- When duct is set with low static pressure (around 10-50Pa), even if indoor unit operate with higher air flow volume than rated one, but it is not abnormal.
- When you changed operation mode or stop operation with ON/OFF button during Auto Operation, the Auto operation will be canceled.
- In such case, be sure to execute AUTOMATIC SETTING again according to above procedure.

⑩Check list after installation

●Check the following items after all installation work completed.

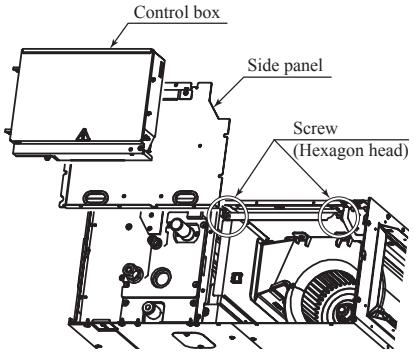
Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Power source voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
No mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks air flow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	
Is setting of E.S.P finished?	Excessive air flow, water drop blow out	

(b) Replacement procedure of the fan unit

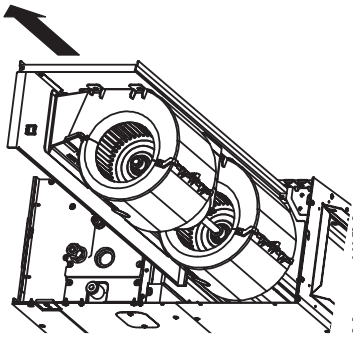
Notes(1) The unit is a heavy item. It must be supported securely and handled with care not to drop when it is necessary to replace.
(2) For the maintenance space, refer to page 152.

(i) Model FDUM71VH

1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) in the figure.

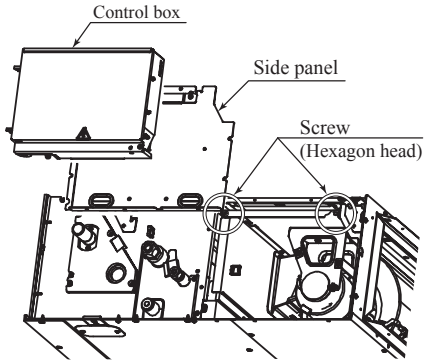


2) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.

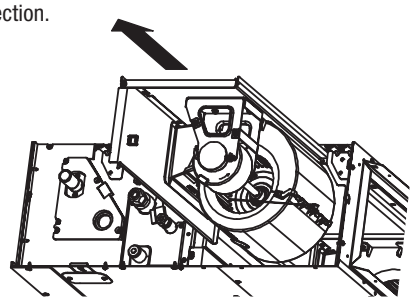


(ii) Models FDUM100VH, 125VH, 140VH

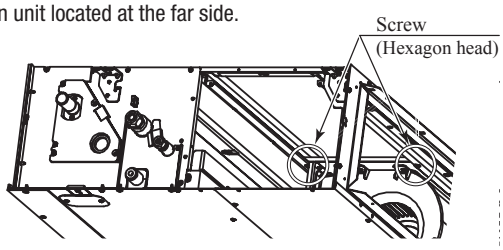
1) Remove the control box and the side panel, and remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the unit located at the near side.



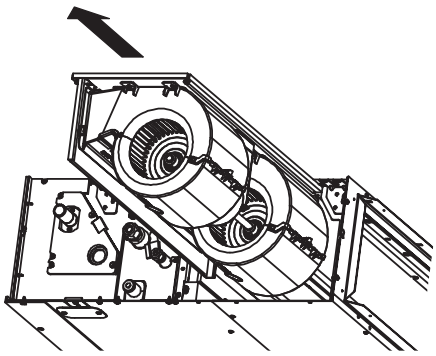
2) Take out the fan unit located at the near side in the arrow direction.



3) Remove the screws marked in the circles (2 places) from the fan unit located at the far side.



4) Take out the fan unit in the arrow direction.



(5) Ceiling suspended type (FDE)

PFA012D636B△C

This manual is for the installation of an indoor unit.
For electrical wiring work (Indoor), refer to page 161. For electrical wiring work (Outdoor) and refrigerant pipe work installation for outdoor unit, refer to page 165.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .
  ⚠WARNING: Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown as follows:
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- After completing the installation, do commissioning to confirm there are no abnormalities, and explain to the customers about "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS", correct operation method and maintenance method (air filter cleaning, operation method and temperature setting method) with user's manual of this unit.
  Ask your customers to keep this installation manual together with the user's manual. Also, ask them to hand over the user's manual to the new user when the owner is changed.

⚠WARNING

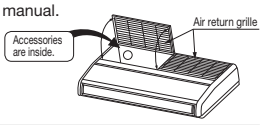
- **Installation should be performed by the specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it may lead to serious trouble such as water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Install the system correctly according to these installation manuals.**
  Improper installation may cause explosion, injury, water leakage, electric shock, and fire.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage, referred by the formula (accordance with ISO5149).**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit, please consult the dealer and install the ventilation system, otherwise lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Use the genuine accessories and the specified parts for installation.**
  If parts unspecified by our company are used it could cause water leakage, electric shock, fire, and injury due to overturn of the unit.
- **Ventilate the working area well in case the refrigerant leaks during installation.**
  If the refrigerant contacts the fire, toxic gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability.
- **Install the unit in a location that can hold heavy weight.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Install the unit properly in order to be able to withstand strong winds such as typhoons, and earthquakes.**
  Improper installation may cause the unit to fall leading to accidents.
- **Do not mix air in to the cooling cycle on installation or removal of the air-conditioner.**
  If air is mixed in, the pressure in the cooling cycle will rise abnormally and may cause explosion and injuries.
- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Check for refrigerant gas leakage after installation is completed.**
  If the refrigerant gas leaks into the house and comes in contact with a fan heater, a stove, or an oven, toxic gas is produced.
- **Use the specified pipe, flare nut, and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (R22) could cause the unit failure and serious accident due to explosion of the cooling cycle.
- **Tighten the flare nut according to the specified method by with torque wrench.**
  If the flare nut were tightened with excess torque, it could cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **Do not put the drainage pipe directly into drainage channels where poisonous gases such as sulfide gas can occur.**
  Poisonous gases will flow into the room through drainage pipe and seriously affect the user's health and safety. This can also cause the corrosion of the indoor unit and a resultant unit failure or refrigerant leak.
- **Connect the pipes for refrigeration circuit securely in installation work before compressor is operated.**
  If the compressor is operated when the service valve is open without connecting the pipe, it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the system.
- **Stop the compressor before removing the pipe after shutting the service valve on pump down work.**
  If the pipe is removed when the compressor is in operation with the service valve open, air would be mixed in the refrigeration circuit and it could cause explosion and injuries due to abnormal high pressure in the cooling cycle.
- **Only use prescribed option parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Do not run the unit when the panel or protection guard are taken off.**
  Touching the rotating equipment, hot surface, or high voltage section could cause an injury to be caught in the machine, to get burned, or electric shock.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure, electric shock and fire due to a short-circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire and electric shocks.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the indoor unit near the location where there is possibility of flammable gas leakages.**
  If the gas leaks and gathers around the unit, it could cause fire.
- **Do not install and use the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or flammable gas (such as thinner, petroleum etc.) may be generated or accumulated, or volatile flammable substances are handled.**
  It could cause the corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts etc. And inflammable gas could cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not use the indoor unit at the place where water splashes such as laundry.**
  Indoor unit is not waterproof. It could cause electric shock and fire.
- **Do not use the indoor unit for a special purpose such as food storage, cooling for precision instrument, preservation of animals, plants, and a work of art.**
  It could cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not install nor use the system near equipments which generate electromagnetic wave or high harmonics.**
  Equipments like inverter equipment, private power generator, high-frequency medical equipment, or telecommunication equipment might influence the air-conditioner and cause a malfunction and breakdown. Or the air-conditioner might influence medical equipments or telecommunication equipments, and obstruct their medical activity or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the remote control at the direct sunlight.**
  It could cause breakdown or deformation of the remote control.
- **Do not install the indoor unit at the place listed below.**
  · Places where flammable gas could leak.
  · Places where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floated.
  · Place where the substances which affect the air-conditioner are generated such as sulfide gas, chloride gas, acid, alkali or ammonic atmospheres.
  · Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
  · On vehicles and ships
  · Places where machinery which generates high harmonics is used.
  · Places where cosmetics or special sprays are frequently used.
  · Highly salted area such as beach.
  · Heavy snow area
  · Places where the system is affected by smoke from a chimney.
  · Altitude over 1000m
- **Do not install the indoor unit in the locations listed below (Be sure to install the indoor unit according to the installation manual for each model because each indoor unit has each limitation)**
  · Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  · Locations where vibration can be amplified due to insufficient strength of structure.
  · Locations where the infrared receiver is exposed to the direct sunlight or the strong light beam. (in case of the infrared specification unit)
  · Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  · Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect performance or function and etc..
  Do not install the motion sensor at following places. It could cause detection error, incapacity of detection, or characteristic degradation.
  · Place where vibration is applied to it for a long period of time.
  · Place where static electricity or electromagnetic wave generates.
  · Place where it is exposed to high temperature or humidity for a long period of time.
  · Dusty place or where the lens face could be fouled or damaged.
- **Do not put any valuables which will break down by getting wet under the air-conditioner.**
  Condensation could drop when the relative humidity is higher than 80% or drain pipe is clogged, and it damages user's belongings.
- **Do not use the base frame for the outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged after a long period of use.**
  It could cause the unit falling down and injury.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld sputter when brazing work is done near the unit.**
  If sputter entered into the unit during brazing work, it could cause damage (pinhole) of drain pan and leakage of water. To avoid damaging, keep the indoor unit packed or cover the indoor unit.
- **Install the drain pipe to drain the water surely according to the installation manual.**
  Improper connection of the drain pipe may cause dropping water into room and damaging user's belongings.
- **Do not share the drain pipe for indoor unit and GHP (Gas Heat Pump system) outdoor unit.**
  Toxic exhaust gas would flow into room and it might cause serious damage (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen) to user's health and safety.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **For drain pipe installation, be sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100, not to make traps, and not to make air-bleeding.**
  Check if the drainage is correctly done during commissioning and ensure the space for inspection and maintenance.
- **Ensure the insulation on the pipes for refrigeration circuit so as not to condense water.**
  Incomplete insulation could cause condensation and it would wet ceiling, floor, and any other valuables.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit where is likely to be a nest for insects and small animals.**
  Insects and small animals could come into the electronic components and cause breakdown and fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Pay extra attention, carrying the unit by hand.**
  Carry the unit with 2 people if it is heavier than 20kg. Do not use the plastic straps but the grabbing place, moving the unit by hand. Use protective gloves in order to avoid injury by the aluminum fin.
- **Make sure to dispose of the packaging material.**
  Leaving the materials may cause injury as metals like nail and woods are used in the package.
- **Do not operate the system without the air filter.**
  It may cause the breakdown of the system due to clogging of the heat exchanger.
- **Do not touch any button with wet hands.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not touch the refrigerant piping with bare hands when in operation.**
  The pipe during operation would become very hot or cold according to the operating condition, and it could cause a burn or frostbite.
- **Do not clean up the air-conditioner with water.**
  It could cause electric shock.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

① Before installation

- Install correctly according to the installation manual.
- Confirm the following points:
  - ○Unit type/Power source specification
  - ○Pipes/Wires/Small parts ○Accessory items



Accessory item

For unit hanging		For refrigerant pipe			For drain pipe					For air return grille
Flat washer (M10)	Paper pattern	Pipe cover (large)	Pipe cover (small)	Strap	Drain hose (with clamp)	Hose clamp	Fixing bracket	Screw	Heay insulation	Screw
8	1	1	1	4	1	1	1	2	1	4
For unit hanging	For unit hanging and adjustment	For heat insulation of gas pipe	For heat insulation of liquid pipe	For fixing of pipe cover	For drain pipe connection	For drain hose mounting	For fixing of drain hose	For installing of fixing bracket	For drain hose	For fixing air return grille

② Selection of installation location for the indoor unit

① Select the suitable areas to install the unit under approval of the user.
- Areas where the indoor unit can deliver hot and cold wind sufficiently. Suggest to the user to use a circulator if the ceiling height is over 3m to avoid warm air being accumulated on the ceiling.
- In case of having the motion sensor, the installation height must be no higher than 4 m. It could reduce the sensitivity of motion sensor, disabling the detection.
- Areas where there is enough space to install and service.
- Areas where it can be drained properly. Areas where drain pipe descending slope can be taken.
- Areas where there is no obstruction of air flow on both air return grille and air supply port.
- Areas where fire alarm will not be accidentally activated by the air-conditioner.
- Areas where the supply air does not short-circuit.
- Areas where it is not influenced by draft air.
- Areas not exposed to direct sunlight.
- Areas where dew point is lower than around 28°C and relative humidity is lower than 80%.
  This indoor unit is tested under the condition of JIS (Japan Industrial Standard) high humidity condition and confirmed there is no problem. However, there is some risk of condensation drop if the air-conditioner is operated under the severer condition than mentioned above.
  If there is a possibility to use it under such a condition, attach additional insulation of 10 to 20mm thick for entire surface of indoor unit, refrigeration pipe and drain pipe.
- Areas where TV and radio stays away more than 1m. (It could cause jamming and noise.)
- Areas where any items which will be damaged by getting wet are not placed such as food, table wares, server, or medical equipment under the unit.
- Areas where there is no influence by the heat which cookware generates.
- Areas where not exposed to oil mist, powder and/or steam directly such as above fryer.
- Areas where lighting device such as fluorescent light or incandescent light doesn't affect the operation.
  (A beam from lighting device sometimes affects the infrared receiver for the wireless remote control and the air-conditioner might not work properly.)

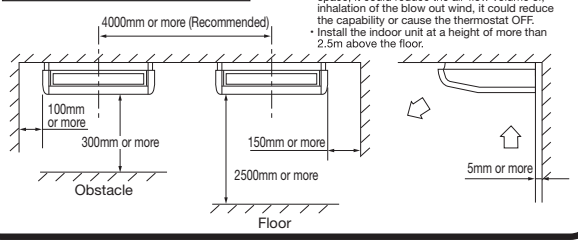
② Check if the place where the air-conditioner is installed can hold the weight of the unit. If it is not able to hold, reinforce the structure with boards and beams strong enough to hold it. If the strength is not enough, it could cause injury due to unit falling.

③ If there are 2 units of wireless type, keep them away for more than 6m to avoid malfunction due to cross communication.

④ When plural indoor units are installed nearby, it is recommended to separate each other more than 4m.

Space for installation and service

- In case of not installing in the above installation space, it could reduce the air flow volume or, inhalation of the blow out wind, it could reduce the capability or cause the thermostat OFF.
- Install the indoor unit at a height of more than 2.5m above the floor.

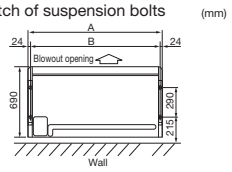


③ Preparation before installation

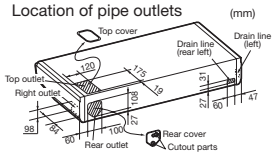
- If suspension bolt becomes longer, do reinforcement of earthquake resistant.
  - ○For grid ceiling
    When suspension bolt length is over 500mm, or the gap between the ceiling and roof is over 700mm, apply earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
  - ○In case the unit is hanged directly from the slab and is installed on the ceiling plane which has enough strength.
    When suspension bolt length is over 1000mm, apply the earthquake resistant brace to the bolt.
- Prepare four (4) sets of suspension bolt, nut and spring washer (M10) on site.

Pitch of suspension bolts and pipe position

Pitch of suspension bolts (mm)



Location of pipe outlets (mm)



③ Preparation before installation (continued)

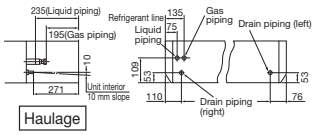
(mm)

Series	type	A	B
Single Split (PAC) series	40 to 50type	1070	1022
	60 to 71type	1320	1272
	100 to 140type	1620	1572
VRF (KX) series	36 to 56type	1070	1022
	71type	1320	1272
	112 to 140type	1620	1572

※Pipes can be taken out in 3 directions (rear, right or top).
- Cut out holes using nippers, etc.
- Cut out holes to take out pipes along the cutoff line on the rear cover.
- Cut out the top face cover aligning to the piping position.
- When taking pipe out to right-hand side, cut out a hole along the groove at the inside of side panel.
- After installing pipes and wires, seal clearances around pipes and wires with putty, etc. to shut off dust.

Make sure to install the covers at rear and top in order to protect the inside of unit from intrusion of dust or protect wires from damages by sharp edges. When taking them out to the right-hand side, remove burrs or sharp edges from the cutout.

Pipe position (mm)

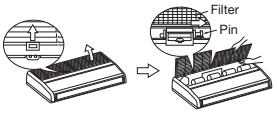


Haulage

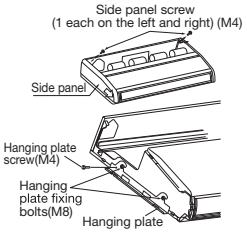
- Move the box as close to the installation area as possible packed.
- If it must be unpacked, wrap the unit with a nylon sling, and be careful not to damage the unit.
  ※Do not hold fragile plastic parts, such as the side panel, blow louver, etc.
- If you need to lay the unit on a floor after unpacking, always put it with the intake grille facing upward.

Preparation before instalation

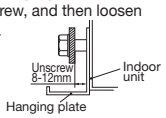
1. Remove the air return grille.
Slide stoppers (4 places) of the catches, then pull out the pins (4 or 6 places).



2. Remove the side panel.
Remove the screw and detach the side panel by sliding it toward the direction indicated by the arrow mark.



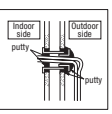
3. Remove the hanging plate.
Remove the screw, and then loosen the fixing bolts.



④ Installation of indoor unit

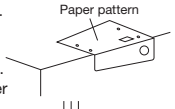
⚠ WARNING
Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, dust, insects, small animals, and highly humid air may enter the room from outside, which could result in fire or other hazards.

⚠ CAUTION
Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty.
If not sealed properly, furniture and other fixtures may be damaged by water leakage or condensation.

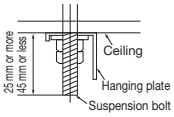


Work procedure

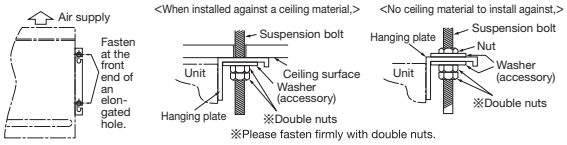
1. Select the suspension bolt locations and the pipe hole location.
   (1) Use enclosed paper pattern as a reference, and drill the holes for the suspension bolts and pipe.
   ※Decide the locations based on direct measurements.
   (2) Once the locations are properly placed, the paper pattern can be removed.



2. Install the suspension bolts in place.
3. Fix with 4 suspension bolts.
4. Check the measurements given at the right figure for the length of the suspension bolts.

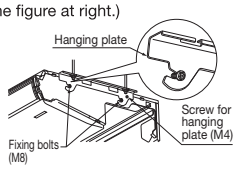


5. Fasten the hanging plate onto the suspension bolts.



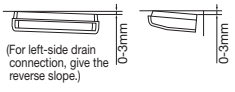
※Please fasten firmly with double nuts.

6. Install the unit to the hanging plate. (See the figure at right.)
   (1) Slide the unit in from front side to get it hanged on the hanging plate with the bolts.
   (2) Fasten the four fixing bolts (M8: 2 each on the left and right sides) firmly.
   (3) Fasten the two screws (M4: 1 each on the left and right sides).



⚠**WARNINIG** : Hang a side panel on from the panel side to the rear side and then fasten it securely onto the indoor unit with screws.

※To ensure smooth drain flow, install the unit with a descending slope toward the drain outlet.

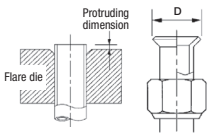


⚠ **CAUTION** : Do not give the reversed slope, which may cause water leaks.

⑤ Refrigerant pipe

Caution

●Be sure to use new pipes for the refrigerant pipes. Use the flare nut attached to the product.
Regarding whether existing pipes can be reused or not, and the washing method, refer to the instruction manual of the outdoor unit, catalogue or technical data.
1) In case of reuse: Do not use old flare nut, but use the one attached to the unit.
2) In case of reuse: Flare the end of pipe replaced partially for R32 or R410A.
⚠WARNING : When flared joints are reused indoors, the flare part shall be re-fabricated. (only for R32)

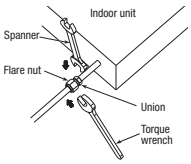


Pipe diameter d mm	Min. pipe wall thickness mm	Protruding dimension for flare, mm		Flare O.D. D mm	Flare nut tightening torque N·m
		Rigid (Clutch type)			
		For R32 For R410A	Conventional tool		
6.35	0.8	0 – 0.5	0.7 – 1.3	8.9 – 9.1	14 – 18
9.52	0.8			12.8 – 13.2	34 – 42
12.7	0.8			16.2 – 16.6	49 – 61
15.88	1			19.3 – 19.7	68 – 82
19.05	1.2			23.6 – 24.0	100 – 120

●Use phosphorus deoxidized copper alloy seamless pipe (C1220T) for refrigeration pipe installation. In addition, make sure there is no damage both inside and outside of the pipe, and no harmful substances such as sulfur, oxide, dust or a contaminant stuck on the pipes.
●Do not use any refrigerant other than R32 or R410A.
Using other refrigerant except R32 or R410A (R22 etc.) may degrade inside refrigeration oil. And air getting into refrigeration circuit may cause over-pressure and resultant it may result in bursting, etc.
●Store the copper pipes indoors and seal the both end of them until they are brazed in order to avoid any dust, dirt or water getting into pipe. Otherwise it will cause degradation of refrigeration oil and compressor breakdown, etc.
●Use special tools for R32 or R410A refrigerant.

Work procedure

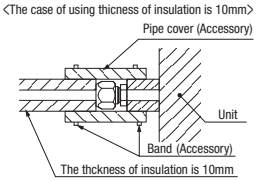
1. Remove the flare nut and blind flanges on the pipe of the indoor unit.
※ Make sure to loosen the flare nut with holding the nut on pipe side with a spanner and giving torque to the nut with another spanner in order to avoid unexpected stress to the copper pipe, and then remove them. (Gas may come out at this time, but it is not abnormal.)
● Pay attention whether the flare nut pops out. (as the indoor unit is sometimes pressured.)
2. Make a flare on liquid pipe and gas pipe, and connect the refrigeration pipes on the indoor unit.
● When pulling out pipes backward or upward, install them passing through the attached cover together with the electrical cabling.
● Seal the gap with putty, or other, to protect from dust, etc.
※ Bend radius of pipe must be 4D or larger. Once a pipe is bent, do not readjust the bending. Do not twist a pipe or collapse to 2/3D or smaller.
● Make sure to use flare nuts assembled on the unions. Usage of other flare nuts could cause refrigerant leakage.
※ Do a flare connection as follows:
● Make sure to hold the nut on indoor unit pipe side using double spanner method as indicated when fastening / loosening flare nuts in order to prevent unintentional twisting of the copper pipe.
● When fastening the flare nut, align the refrigeration pipe with the center of flare nut, screw the nut for 3-4 times by hand and then tighten it by spanner with the specified torque mentioned in the table above.



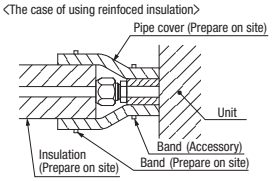
3. Cover the flare connection part of the indoor unit with attached insulation material after a gas leakage inspection, and tighten both ends with attached straps.
● Make sure to insulate both gas pipes and liquid pipes completely.
※ Incomplete insulation may cause dew condensation or water dropping.
● Use heat-resistant (120 °C or more) insulations on the gas side pipes.
● In case of using at high humidity condition, reinforce insulation of refrigerant pipes.
Surface of insulation may cause dew condition or water dropping, if insulations are not reinfoced.
4. Refrigerant is charged in the outdoor unit.
As for the additional refrigerant charge for the indoor unit and piping, refer to the installation manual attached to the outdoor unit.

Caution:
Refrigerating machine oil should not be applied to the threads of union or external surface of flare. It is because, even if the same tightening torque is applied, the oil is likely to decrease the slide friction force on the threads and increase, in turn, the axial component force so that it could crack the flare by the stress corrosion.
Refrigerating machine oil may be applied to the internal surface of flare only.

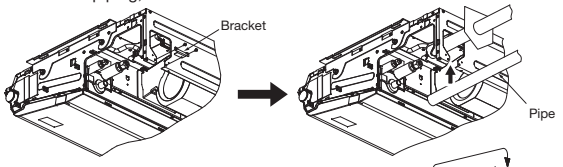
<The case of using thicness of insulation is 10mm>



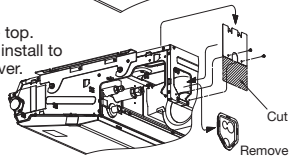
<The case of using reinfoced insulation>



The pipe can be connected from three different directions. (back, reight, top)
● When the pipe is routed through the back.
If the bracket is removed, piping work will become easy.
※After piping, reinstall the removed bracket.



● When the pipe is routed through the top.
Cut the removed top cover, and install to the rear panel instead of rear cover.



⑥ Drain pipe

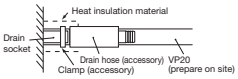
●The drain pipes may pull out either from back, right or left side.

Caution

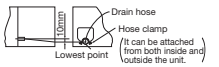
- Install the drain pipe according to the installation manual in order to drain properly. Imperfection in draining may cause flood indoors and wetting the household goods, etc.
- Do not put the drain pipe directly into the ditch where toxic gas such as sulfur, the other harmful andinflammable gas is generated. Toxic gas would flow into the room and it would cause serious damage to user's health and safety (some poisoning or deficiency of oxygen). In addition, it may cause corrosion of heat exchanger and bad smell.
- Connect the pipe securely to avoid water leakage from the joint.
- Insulate the pipe properly to avoid condensation drop.
- Check if the water can flow out properly from both the drain outlet on the indoor unit and the end of the drain pipe after installation.
- Make sure to make descending slope of greater than 1/100 and do not make up-down bend and/or trap in the midway. In addition, do not put air vent on the drain pipe. Check if water is drained out properly from the pipe during commissioning. Also, keep sufficient space for inspection and maintenance.

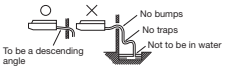
Work procedure

1. Insert drain hose completely to the base, and tighten the drain hose clamp securely. (adhesive must not be used.)
※When plumbing on the left side, move the rubber plug and the cylindrical insulating materials by the pipe connecting hole on the left side of the unit to the right side.
⚠ Beware of a possible outflow of water that may occur upon removal of a drain plug.



2. Fix the drain hose at the lowest point with a hose clamp supplied as an accessory.
※Give a drain hose a gradient of 10mm as illustrated in the right drawing by laying it without leaving a slack.





● Take head of electrical cables so that they may not run beneath the drain hose.
⚠ A drain hose must be clamped down with a hose clamp. There is a possibility that drain water overflows.
3. Connect VP20(prepare on site) to drain hose. (adhesive must not be used.)
※ Use commercially available rigid PVC general pipe VP20 for drain pipe.
4. Do not to make the up-down bending and trap in the mid-way while assuming that the drain pipes is downhill. (more than 1/100)
● Never set up air vent.
5. Insulate the drain pipe.
● Insulate the drain hose clamp with the heat insulation supplied as accessories.
● When the unit is installed in a humid place, consider precautions against dew condensation such as heat insulation for the drain pipe.

Drain test

●After installation of drain pipe, make sure that drain system work in good condition and no water leakage from joint and drain pan.
●Do drain test even if installation of heating season.

⑦ Wiring-out position and wiring connection

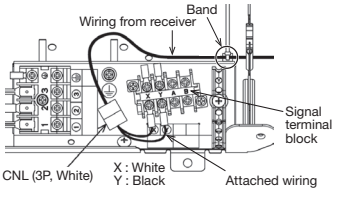
- Electrical installation work must be performed according to the installation manual by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country, and be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installation in the country. Be sure to use an exclusive circuit.
- Use specified cord, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cord securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.
- Do not put both power source line and signal line on the same route. It may cause miscommunication and malfunction.
- Be sure to do D type earth work.
- For the details of electrical wiring work, see attached instruction manual for electrical wiring work.

1. Remove wiring from clips.
2. Remove the control box (Screw ①, 2pcs).
3. Pull out the control box by sliding along the groove on the bracket (Direction Ⓐ→Ⓑ).
4. Remove the lid of control box (Screw ②, 2pcs).
5. Hold each wiring inside the unit and connect to the terminal block surely.
6. Fix the wiring by clamp.
7. Install the lid of control box (Screw ②, 2pcs).
8. Return the control box to the original place by sliding along the groove on the bracket (Direction Ⓑ→Ⓐ).
9. Install the removed parts at their original places.

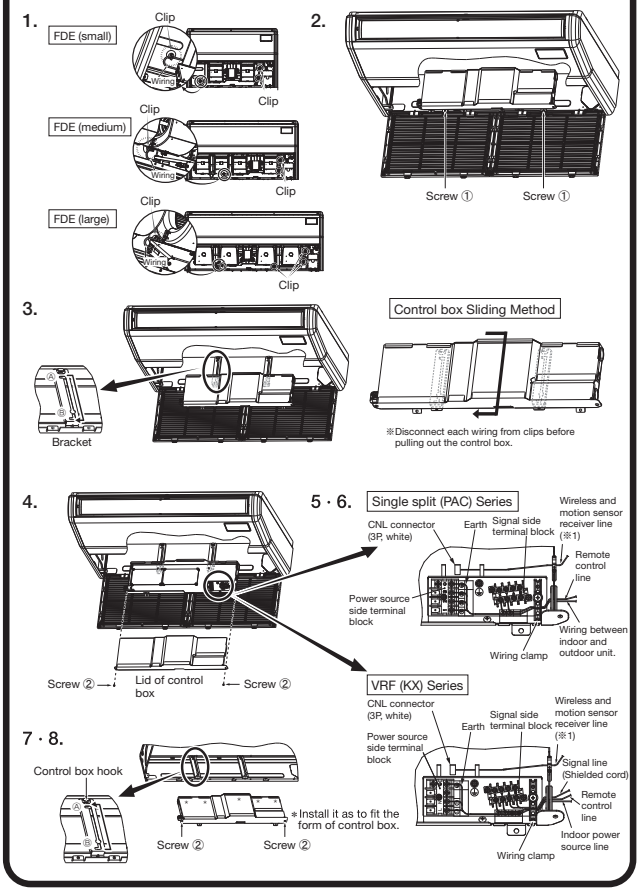
※1 Wiring for the signal receiving section of wireless kit (Option) and motion sensor kit (Option) are connected at the time of shipping from the factory. It is not necessary to disconnect these wiring when wired remote control is connected. When the wired/wireless kits are used together, it becomes necessary to set the slaves and remote control. For the methods of installing the wireless kit and the motion sensor kit, refer to the attached installation manuals.

NOTICE

When installing the Superlink adapter, remove the band fixed the wiring from receiver.



⑦ Wiring-out position and wiring connection (continued)



⑧ Control mode switching

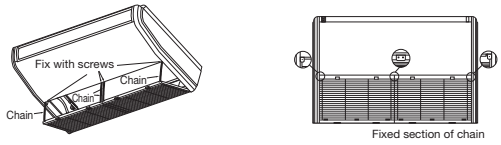
● The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way. (▭ is the default setting)

Switch No.	Control Content	
SW8-4	ON	Indoor unit silent mode
	▭ OFF	Normal operation

⑨ Attaching the air return grille

● The air return grille must be attached when electrical cabling work is completed.

1. Fix the chains tied to the air return grille onto the indoor unit with screws supplied as accessories (4 pieces).
2. Close the air return grille. This completes the unit installtion work.



Fixed section of chain

⑩ Check list after installation

● Check the following items after all installation work completed.

Check if	Expected trouble	Check
The indoor and outdoor units are fixed securely?	Falling, vibration, noise	
Inspection for leakage is done?	Insufficient capacity	
Insulation work is properly done?	Water leakage	
Water is drained properly?	Water leakage	
Power source voltage is same as mentioned in the model name plate?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
There is mis-wiring or mis-connection of piping?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Earth wiring is connected properly?	Electric shock	
Cable size comply with specified size?	PCB burnt out, not working at all	
Any obstacle blocks air flow on air inlet and outlet?	Insufficient capacity	

(6) Wall mounted type (SRK)

Model SRK100ZR-W

RLD012A018 F

Model SRK63,71,80,100ZR
R32/R410A REFRIGERANT USED

- This installation manual deals with an indoor unit installation only. For an outdoor unit installation, refer to page 165.
- This unit is designed for R32 or R410A. See a label on the outdoor unit to check refrigerant information.
- A wired remote control and SC-BIKN2-E must be installed with SRK plural connection. The wireless remote control included in the SRK unit cannot be used in case of SRK plural connection.

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

- Before installation, read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully and strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.
- The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠ WARNING and ⚠ CAUTION .

⚠ WARNING Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in serious consequences such as death or severe injury.

⚠ CAUTION Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, can result in personal injury or property damage.

Both mention the important items to protect your health and safety. Therefore, strictly follow them by any means.

- Be sure to confirm no operation problem on the equipment after completing the installation. If unusual noise can be heard during the test run, consult the dealer.
- Be sure to explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the user's manual.
- Be sure to keep the installation manual together with user's manual at a place where it is easily accessible to the user any time. Moreover, ask the user to hand the manuals to a new user, whenever required.

⚠ WARNING

- **Be sure to use only for residential purpose.**
  If this unit is installed in inferior environment such as machine shop, vehicle (like ship), warehouse, etc., it can malfunction.
- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer completely in accordance with the installation manual.**
  Installation by non qualified person or incorrect installation can cause serious troubles such as water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while performing installation work.**
  Improper safety measures can result in personal injury.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for the installation.**
  Using parts other than those prescribed may cause water leak, electric shock, fire and personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of flammable gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire resulting in property damage and personal injury.
- **When installing the unit in small rooms, make sure that refrigerant density does not exceed the limit (Reference: ISO5149) in the event of leakage.**
  If refrigerant density exceeds the limit, consult the dealer and install the ventilation system.
  Otherwise lack of oxygen can occur resulting in serious accident.
- **Install the unit in a location where unit will remain stable, horizontal and free of any vibration transmission.**
  Unsuitable installation location can cause the unit to fall resulting in material damage and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections.**
  Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shock.
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32 or R410A.**
  Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Do not vent R32 or R410A into atmosphere.**
  R32 is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential(GWP)=675.
  R410A is a fluorinated greenhouse gas with a Global Warming Potential(GWP)=2088.
- **Make sure that no air enters the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
  If air enters the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit will become too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32 or R410A.**
  Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause refrigerant circuit burst resulting in unit failure and personal injury.
- **Be sure to connect both liquid and gas connecting pipes properly before operating the compressor.**
  Do not open the liquid and gas operation valves before completing piping work, and evacuation.
  If the compressor is operated when connecting pipes are not connected and operation valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the flare nuts to specified torque using the torque wrench.**
  Tightening flare nuts with excess torque can cause burst and refrigerant leakage after a long period.
- **During pump down work, be sure to stop the compressor before closing operation valves and removing connecting pipes.**
  If the connecting pipes are removed when the compressor is in operation and operation valves are open, air can be sucked into the refrigerant circuit which can cause anomalous high pressure resulting in burst or personal injury.
- **In the event of refrigerant leakage during installation, be sure to ventilate the working area properly.**
  If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gases will be produced.
- **Electrical work must be carried out by the qualified electrician, strictly in accordance with national or regional electricity regulations.**
  Incorrect installation can cause electric shock, fire or personal injury.
- **Make sure that earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker of appropriate capacities are installed.**
  Circuit breaker should be able to disconnect all poles under over current. Absence of appropriate breakers can cause electric shock, personal injury or property damage.
- **Be sure to switch off the power source in the event of installation, maintenance or service.**
  If the power source is not switched off, there is a risk of electric shock, unit failure or personal injury.
- **Be sure to tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables properly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
  Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Do not process, splice or modify the power cable, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
  Improper power cable or power plug can cause fire or electric shock due to poor connection, insufficient insulation or over-current.
- **Do not perform any change in protective device or its setup condition yourself.**
  Changing protective device specifications can cause electric shock, fire or burst.
- **Be sure to clamp the cables properly so that they do not touch any internal component of the unit.**
  If cables touch any internal component, it can cause overheating and fire.
- **Be sure to install service cover properly.**
  Improper installation can cause electric shock or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Be sure to use the prescribed power and connecting cables for electrical work.**
  Using improper cables can cause electric leak or fire.
- **This appliance must be connected to main power source by means of a circuit breaker or switch with a contact separation of at least 3mm.**
  Improper electrical work can cause unit failure or personal injury.
- **When plugging this unit, a plug conforming to the standard IEC60884-1 must be used.**
  Using improper plug can cause electric shock or fire.
- **Be sure to connect the power source cable with power source properly.**
  Improper connection can cause intrusion of dust or water resulting in electric shock or fire.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
  If the unit weight is more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons.
  Do not carry the unit by the plastic straps. Always use the carry handle.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
  Insects and small animals can enter the electrical parts and cause damage resulting in fire or personal injury. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **If the outdoor unit is installed at height, make sure that there is enough space for installation, maintenance and service.**
  Insufficient space can result in personal injury due to falling from the height.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where neighbours are bothered by noise or air generating from the unit.**
  It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim.
- **Do not install in the locations where unit is directly exposed to corrosive gases (like sulphide gas, chloride gas), sea breeze or salty atmosphere.**
  It can cause corrosion of heat exchanger and damage to plastic parts.
- **Do not install the unit close to the equipments that generate electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves.**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns.
  The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations where:**
  - There are heat sources nearby.
  - Unit is directly exposed to rain or sunlight.
  - There is any obstacle which can prevent smooth air circulation from inlet and outlet side of the unit.
  - Unit is directly exposed to oil mist and steam such as kitchen.
  - Chemical substances like ammonia (organic fertilizer), calcium chloride (snow melting agent) and acid (sulfurous acid etc.), which can harm the unit, will generate or accumulate.
  - Drain water can not be discharged properly.
  - TV set or radio receiver is placed within 1m.
  - Height above sea level is more than 1000m.

  It can cause performance degradation, corrosion and damage of components, unit malfunction and fire.
- **Dispose of all packing materials properly.**
  Packing materials contain nails and wood which can cause personal injury.
  Keep the polybag away from children to avoid the risk of suffocation.
- **Do not put anything on the outdoor unit.**
  Object may fall causing property damage or personal injury.
- **Do not touch the aluminum fin of the outdoor unit.**
  Aluminium fin temperature is high during heating operation. Touching fin can cause burn.
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipe with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending on the operating condition. Touching pipes can cause personal injury like burn (hot/cold).
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power source wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in OFF state in accordance with EN60204-1.

1. ACCESSORIES AND TOOLS

Standard accessories (supplied with indoor unit)

(1)	Installation board	1 pc.	(6)	Batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro) 1.5V]	2 pcs.
(2)	Wireless remote control	1 pc.	(7)	Air-cleaning filters	2 pcs.
(3)	Remote control holder	1 pc.	(8)	Filter holders	2 pcs.
(4)	Tapping screws (for installation board ø4 X 25mm)	10 pcs.	(9)	Insulation (#486 50 X 100 t3)	1 pc.
(5)	Wood screws (for remote control holder ø3.5 X 16mm)	2 pcs.			

Locally procured parts

(a)	Sleeve (1 pc.)
(b)	Sealing plate (1 pc.)
(c)	Inclination plate (1 pc.)
(d)	Putty
(e)	Connecting cable
(f)	Drain hose (extension hose)
(g)	Piping cover (for insulation of connection piping)
(h)	Clamp and screw (for finishing work)
(i)	Electrical tape

Tools for installation Work

Plus headed driver	Hole core drill (65mm in diameter)
Knife	Wrench key (Hexagon) [4mm]
Saw	Flaring tool set*
Tape measure	Gas leak detector*
Torque wrench (14.0-82.0N·m (1.4-8.2kgf·m))	Pipe bender
Plier	Gauge for projection adjustment (Used when flare is made by using conventional flare tool)
Pipe cutter	

* Designed specifically for R32 or R410A

2. SELECTING INSTALLATION LOCATION

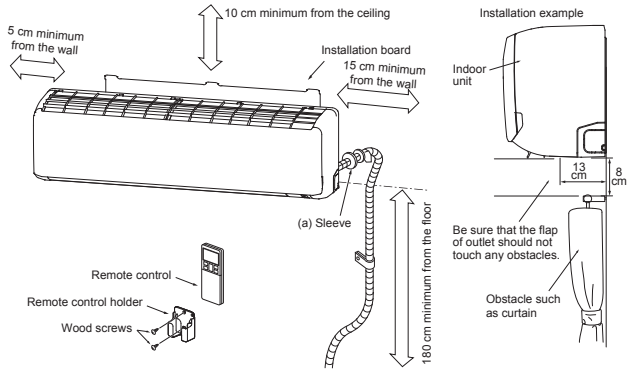
After getting customer's approval, select installation location according to following guidelines.

1. Indoor unit

- Where there is no obstruction to the airflow and where the cooled and heated air can be evenly distributed.
- A solid place where the unit or the wall will not vibrate.
- A place where there will be enough space for servicing. (Where space mentioned on the right side can be secured.)
- Where it is easy to conduct wiring and piping work.
- A place where unit is not directly exposed to sunlight or street light.
- A place where it can be easily drained.
- A place separated at least 1m away from the television or the radio. (To prevent interference to images and sounds.)
- A place where this unit is not affected by the high frequency equipment or electric equipment.
- Avoid installing this unit in place where there is much oil mist.
- A place where there is no electric equipment or household.
- Install the indoor unit on the wall where the height from the floor to the bottom of the unit is more than 180 cm.

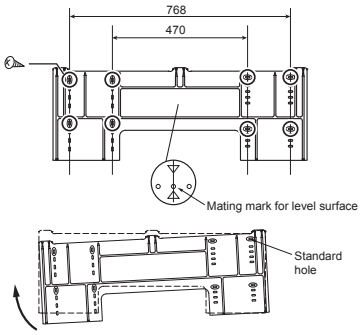
2. Remote control

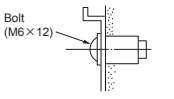
- A place where the air-conditioner can receive the signal surely during operating the remote control.
- A place where it is not affected by the TV, radio etc.
- Do not place where it is exposed to direct sunlight or near heat devices such as a stove.



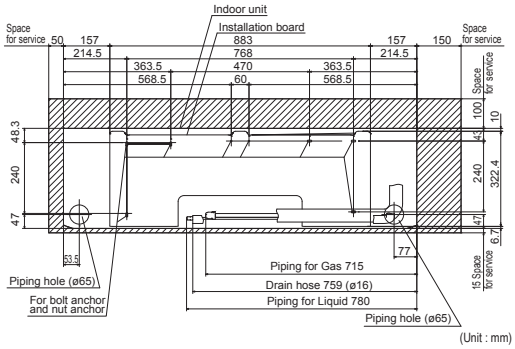
3. INSTALLING INSTALLATION BOARD

- Installation board should be installed on the wall which can support the weight of the indoor unit.
- Adjustment of the installation board in the horizontal direction is to be conducted with 8 screws in a temporary tightened state.
- With the standard hole as a center, adjust the board and level it.





In case of fixing the unit on concrete wall, use nut anchor.

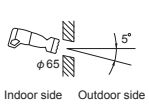


⚠ CAUTION

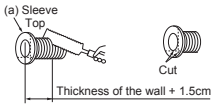
Improper adjustment of the installation board can cause water leakage.

4. DRILLING HOLE AND FIXTURE OF SLEEVE

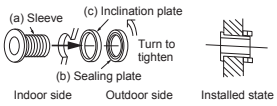
When drilling the wall that contains a metal lath, wire lath or metal plate, be sure to use sealing plate, sleeve and inclination plate (Locally procured parts).



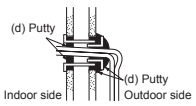
(1) Drill a hole with hole core drill.



(2) Cut sleeve to adjust to wall thickness. In case of rear piping draw out, cut off the lower and the right side portions of the sleeve collar.



(3) Fix sealing plate, sleeve and inclination plate.



(4) After piping work, seal the hole in the wall with putty.

⚠ WARNING

Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, dust, insects, small animals, and highly humid air may enter the room from outside, which could result in fire or other hazards.

⚠ CAUTION

Completely seal the hole in the wall with putty. If not sealed properly, furniture and other fixtures may be damaged by water leakage or condensation.

5. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK

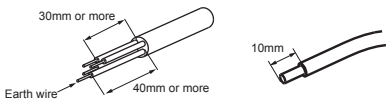
- Before installation, make sure that the power source complies with the air-conditioner's power specification.
- Carry out electrical wiring work according to following guidelines.

1. Preparing cable

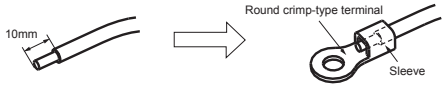
(1) Selecting cable
Select the connecting cable in accordance with the specifications mentioned below.
4-core* 1.5mm² conformed with 60245 IEC57
* 1 Earth wire is included (Yellow/Green).

(2) Arrange each wire length as shown below.
Make sure that each wire is stripped 10mm from the end.

<Connecting cable> <Wire end>



(3) Attach round crimp-type terminal to each wire as shown in the below.
Select the size of round crimp-type terminal after considering the specifications of terminal block and wire diameter.

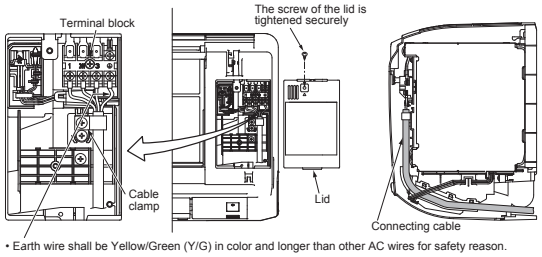


2. Connecting cable

(1) Open the air inlet panel.
(2) Remove the lid.
(3) Remove the cable clamp.
(4) Connect the connecting wires to the terminal block.
(5) Fix the connecting cable by cable clamp.
(6) Fix the lid.
(7) Close the air inlet panel.

NOTE

Take care not to confuse the terminal numbers for indoor and outdoor connections.



• Earth wire shall be Yellow/Green (Y/G) in color and longer than other AC wires for safety reason.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect wiring connection can cause malfunction or fire.

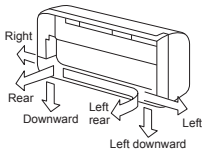
6. FORMING PIPING AND DRAIN HOSE

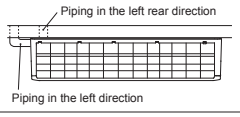
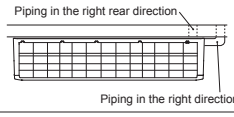
1. Forming piping

Piping is possible in the right, rear, downward, left, left rear or left downward direction.

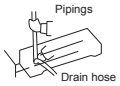
NOTE

Sufficient care must be taken not to damage the panels when connecting pipes.



Left hand side piping	Right hand side piping
	

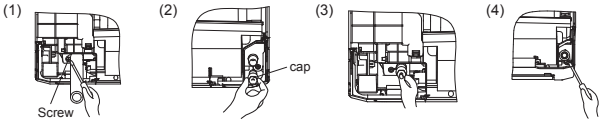
Forming of pipings.
- Hold the bottom of the piping and fix direction before stretching it and shaping it.



Taping of the exterior
- Tape only the portion that goes through the wall.
- Always tape the wiring with the piping.

2. Drain change procedures

(1) Remove the screw and drain hose.
(2) Remove the drain cap by hand or pliers.
(3) Insert the drain cap which was removed at procedure (2) securely using a hexagonal wrench etc.
(4) Install the drain hose and screw securely.



⚠ CAUTION

Incorrect installation of drain hose and cap can cause water leakage.

7. DRAINAGE WORK

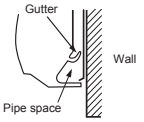
- Arrange the drain hose in a downward angle.
- Avoid the following drain piping.

- Pour water to the drain pan located under the heat exchanger, and ensure that the water is discharged outdoor.
- When extended drain hose is present inside the room, insulate it securely with heat insulator available in the market.

Since this air-conditioner is designed to collect dew drops on the rear surface to the drain pan, do not install the connecting wire above the gutter.

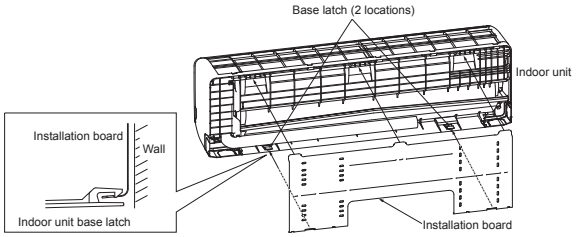
⚠ CAUTION

Incorrect drainage work can cause water leakage.



8. INSTALLING INDOOR UNIT

Installing the indoor unit to installation board

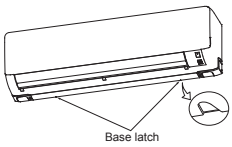


(1) Pass the pipe through the hole in the wall, and hook the upper part of the indoor unit to the installation board.

(2) Gently push the lower part to fix the indoor unit base lower latch to installation board.

Removing the indoor unit from installation board

(1) Push up at the marked portion of the indoor unit base latch, and slightly pull it toward you (both right and left hand sides). (The indoor unit base latch can be removed from the installation board.)
(2) Push up the indoor unit upward so that it can be removed from installation board.



9. CONNECTING PIPING WORK

1. Preparation of connecting pipe

1.1. Selecting connecting pipe

Select connecting pipe according to the following table.

	Model SRK63	Model SRK71/80	Model SRK100
Gas pipe	ϕ12.7	ϕ15.88	ϕ15.88
Liquid pipe	ϕ6.35	ϕ6.35	ϕ9.52

- Pipe wall thickness must be greater than or equal to 0.8 mm (ø15.88:1.0mm).
- Pipe material must be O-type (Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe ICS 23.040.15, ICS 77.150.30).

1.2. Cutting connecting pipe

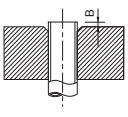
(1) Cut the connecting pipe to the required length with pipe cutter.
(2) Hold the pipe downward and remove the burrs. Make sure that no foreign material enters the pipe.
(3) Cover the connecting pipe ends with the tape.

2. Piping work

2.1. Flaring pipe

(1) Take out flare nuts from the operation valves of indoor unit and engage them onto connecting pipes.
(2) Flare the pipes according to table and figure shown below.
Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional refrigerant.
Although it is recommended to use the flaring tools designed specifically for R32 or R410A, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the dimension B with a flare adjustment gauge.

Copper pipe outer diameter	A
ϕ6.35	9.1
ϕ9.52	13.2
ϕ12.7	16.6
ϕ15.88	19.7

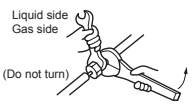


Copper pipe outer diameter	B [Rigid (clutch) type]	
	R32 or R410A	Conventional
ϕ6.35	0-0.5	1.0-1.5
ϕ9.52		
ϕ12.7		
ϕ15.88		

2.2 Connecting pipes

(1) Connect pipes on both liquid and gas sides.
(2) Tighten nuts to specified torque shown in the table below.

Operation valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N·m)
ϕ6.35 (1/4")	14-18
ϕ9.52 (3/8")	34-42
ϕ12.7 (1/2")	49-61
ϕ15.88 (5/8")	68-82

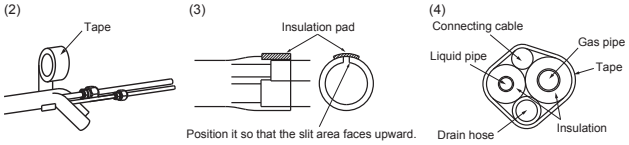


⚠ CAUTION

- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.
- Do not apply excess torque to the flared nuts. The flared nuts may crack resulting in refrigerant leakage.

3. Heating and condensation prevention

(1) Dress the connecting pipes (both liquid and gas pipes) with insulation to prevent it from heating and dew condensation.
Use the heat insulating material which can withstand 120°C or higher temperature. Make sure that insulation is wrapped tightly around the pipes and no gap is left between them.
(2) Wrap the refrigerant pipings of indoor unit with indoor unit heat insulation using tape.
(3) Cover the flare-connected joints (indoor side) with the indoor unit heat insulation and wrap it with an insulation pad (standard accessory provided with indoor unit).
(4) Wrap the connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose with the tape.



NOTE

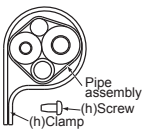
Locations where relative humidity exceeds 70%, both liquid and gas pipes need to be dressed with 20mm or thicker heat insulation materials.

⚠ CAUTION

- Improper insulation can cause condensate(water) formation during cooling operation.
Condensate can leak or drip causing damage to household property.
- Poor heat insulating capacity can cause pipe outer surface to reach high temperature during heating operation. It can cause cable deterioration and personal injury.

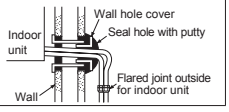
4. Finishing work

(1) Make sure that the exterior portion of connecting pipes, connecting cable and drain hose is wrapped properly with tape. Shape the connecting pipes to match with the contours of the pipe assembly route.
(2) Fix the pipe assembly with the wall using clamps and screws. Pipe assembly should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
(3) Install the service cover securely. Water may enter the unit if service cover is not installed properly, resulting in unit malfunction and failure.



⚠ WARNING (only for R32)

- To avoid the risk of fire or explosion, the flared connection must/shall be installed outdoors.
- Reusable mechanical connectors and flared joints are not allowed indoors.



⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the connecting pipes do not touch the components within the unit. If pipes touch the internal components, it may generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

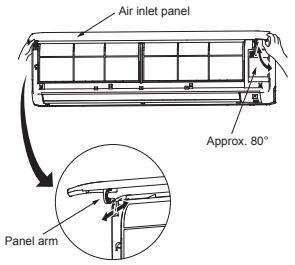
10. HOW TO OPEN, CLOSE, REMOVE AND INSTALL THE AIR INLET PANEL

1. Open
Pull the air inlet panel at both ends of lower part and release latches, then pull up the panel until you feel resistance.
(The panel stops at approx. 60° open position)

2. Close
Hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.

3. Removing
Open the panel by 80° (as shown in the right illustration) and then pull it forward.

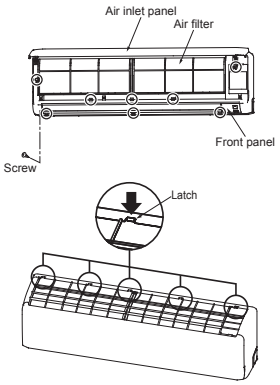
4. Installing
Insert the panel arm into the slot on the front panel from the position shown in right illustration, hold the panel at both ends of lower part, lower it downward slowly, then push it slightly until the latch works.



11. HOW TO REMOVE AND INSTALL FRONT PANEL

1. Removing
(1) Remove the air inlet panel and the air filters.
(2) Remove the 8 screws.
(3) Remove the 5 upper latches and then front panel can be removed.

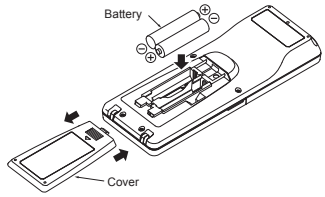
2. Installing
(1) Cover the unit with the front panel and fix 5 upper latches.
(2) Secure the front panel with the 8 screws.
(3) Install the air inlet panel and the air filters.



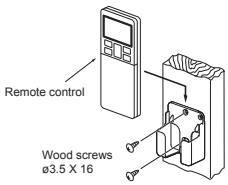
12. INSTALLING REMOTE CONTROL

Mount the batteries
(1) Slide and take out the cover of backside.
(2) Mount the batteries [R03 (AAA, Micro), ×2 pieces] in the body properly.
(Fit he poles with the indication marks + & −)
(3) Set the cover again.

NOTE
- Do not use new and old batteries together.
- In case the unit is not operated for a long time, take out the batteries



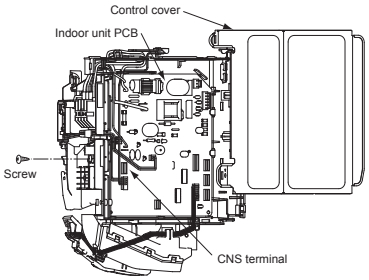
Installing remote control holder
(1) Select the place where the unit can receive signals.
(2) Fix the holder to pillar or wall with wood screws.



13. TERMINAL CONNECTION FOR AN INTERFACE

To install wired remote control, superlink etc., interface kit is needed.

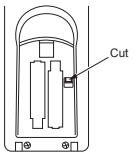
(1) Remove the air inlet panel and front panel.
(2) Remove the control cover. (Remove the screw.)
(3) There is a terminal (respectively marked with CNS) for the indoor control board. While connecting an interface, connect to the respective terminal securely with the connection harness supplied with an optional “Interface connection kit SC-BIKN2-E” and fasten the connection harness onto the indoor control box with the clamp and screw supplied with the kit.
For more details, refer to the user’s manual of “Interface connection kit SC-BIKN2-E”.



14. INSTALLING TWO AIR-CONDITIONERS IN THE SAME ROOM

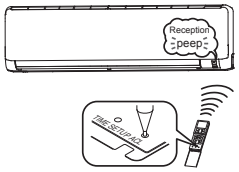
In case two air-conditioners are installed in the same room, apply this setting so that one unit can be operated with only one remote control.

Setting one remote control
(1) Slide and take out the cover and batteries.
(2) Cut the switching line next to the battery with wire cutters.
(3) Set the batteries and cover again.



Setting one indoor unit
(1) Turn off the power source and turn it on after 1 minute.
(2) Send the signal by pressing the ACL switch on the remote control that was set according to the procedure described on the left side.
(3) Check that the reception buzzer sound “peep” is emitted from the indoor unit. Since the signal is sent about 6 seconds after the ACL switch is pressed, point the remote control to the indoor unit for a while.

NOTE
If no reception buzzer is emitted, restart the setting from the beginning.

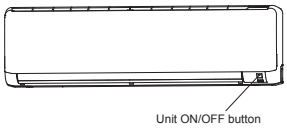


15. PUMP DOWN WORK

For the environmental protection, be sure to pump down when relocating or disposing of the unit. Pump down is the method of recovering refrigerant from the indoor unit to the outdoor unit before the connecting pipes are removed from the unit. When pump down is carried out, forced cooling operation is needed.

Forced cooling operation
(1) Turn off the power source and turn it on again after 1 miniute.
(2) Press the ON/OFF button continuously for at least 5 seconds. Then operation will start.

For the detail of pump down, refer to the installation manual of outdoor unit.



16. INSTALLATION CHECK AND TEST RUN

After finishing the installation work, check the following points again before turning on the power. Conduct a test run and ensure that the unit operates properly.
At the same time, explain to the customer how to use the unit and how to take care of the unit following the user’s manual.

Before test run
Before test run, check following points.

Power source voltage complies with the rated voltage of air-conditioner.	
Earth leakage breaker and circuit breaker are installed.	
Power cable and connecting cable are securely fixed to the terminal block.	
Both liquid and gas operation valves are fully open.	
No gas leaks from the joints of the operation valves.	
Indoor and outdoor side pipe joints have been insulated.	
Hole on the wall is completely sealed with putty.	
Drain hose and cap are installed properly.	
Screw of the lid is tightened securely.	

Test run
Check following points during test run.

Indoor unit receives signal of remote control.	
Air-conditioning operation is normal.	
There is no abnormal noise.	
Water drains out smoothly.	
Display of remote control is normal.	

After test run

Explain the operating and maintenance methods to the user according to the user’s manual.	
Keep this installation manual together with user’s manual.	

NOTE
During restart or change in operation mode, the unit will not start operating for approximately 3 minutes. This is to protect the unit and it is not malfunction.

5.2 Electric wiring work installation
• FDT, FDTC, FDU, FDUM, FDE series

PSC012D117A

Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electrician qualified by a local power provider according to the electrical installation technical standards and interior wiring regulations applicable to the installation site.

Security instructions

- **Read the "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully first of all and then strictly follow it during the installation work in order to protect yourself.**
- **The precautionary items mentioned below are distinguished into two levels, ⚠WARNING and ⚠CAUTION .**
  ⚠WARNING : Wrong installation would cause serious consequences such as injuries or death.
  ⚠CAUTION : Wrong installation might cause serious consequences depending on circumstances.
  Both mentions the important items to protect your health and safety so strictly follow them by any means.
- **The meanings of "Marks" used here are as shown on the right:**
  ⃠ Never do it under any circumstances. ❗ Always do it according to the instruction.
- **Accord with following items. Otherwise, there will be the risks of electric shock and fire caused by overheating or short-circuit.**

⚠WARNING

- **Be sure to have the electrical wiring work done by qualified electrical installer, and use exclusive circuit.**
  Power source with insufficient capacity and improper work can cause electric shock and fire.
- **Use specified wire for electrical wiring, fasten the wiring to the terminal securely, and hold the cable securely in order not to apply unexpected stress on the terminal.**
  Loose connections or hold could result in abnormal heat generation or fire.
- **Arrange the electrical wires in the control box properly to prevent them from rising. Fit the lid of the services panel property.**
  Improper fitting may cause abnormal heat and fire.
- **Use the genuine option parts. And installation should be performed by a specialist.**
  If you install the unit by yourself, it could cause water leakage, electric shock and fire.
- **Do not repair by yourself. And consult with the dealer about repair.**
  Improper repair may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Consult the dealer or a specialist about removal of the air-conditioner.**
  Improper installation may cause water leakage, electric shock or fire.
- **Turn off the power source during servicing or inspection work.**
  If the power is supplied during servicing or inspection work, it could cause electric shock and injury by the operating fan.
- **Shut off the power before electrical wiring work.**
  It could cause electric shock, unit failure and improper running.

⚠CAUTION

- **Perform earth wiring surely.**
  Do not connect the earth wiring to the gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod and telephone earth wiring. Improper earth could cause unit failure and electric shock due to a short-circuit.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed.**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause electric shocks.
- **Make sure to install earth leakage breaker on power source line. (countermeasure thing to high harmonics.)**
  Absence of breaker could cause electric shock.
- **Use the circuit breaker of correct capacity. Circuit breaker should be the one that disconnect all poles under over current.**
  Using the incorrect one could cause the system failure and fire.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse of correct capacity where a fuse should be used.**
  Connecting the circuit by wire or copper wire could cause unit failure and fire.
- **Use power source line of correct capacity.**
  Using incorrect capacity one could cause electric leak, abnormal heat generation and fire.
- **Do not mingle solid cord and stranded cord on power source and signal side terminal block.**
  In addition, do not mingle difference capacity solid or stranded cord.
  Inappropriate cord setting could cause loosing screw on terminal block, bad electrical contact, smoke and fire.
- **Do not turn off the power source immediately after stopping the operation.**
  Be sure to wait for more than 5 minutes. Otherwise it could cause water leakage or breakdown.
- **Do not control the operation with the circuit breaker.**
  It could cause fire or water leakage. In addition, the fan may start operation unexpectedly and it may cause injury.

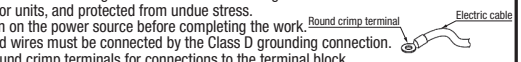
Control mode switching

- The control content of indoor units can be switched in following way. (is the default setting)

Switch No.	Control Content	
SW2	Indoor unit address (0-Fh)	
SW5-1	Master/Slave Switching (plural /Slave unit Setting)	
SW5-2		
SW6-1–4	Model capacity setting	
SW7 — 1	ON	Operation check, Drain pump motor test run
	OFF	Normal operation

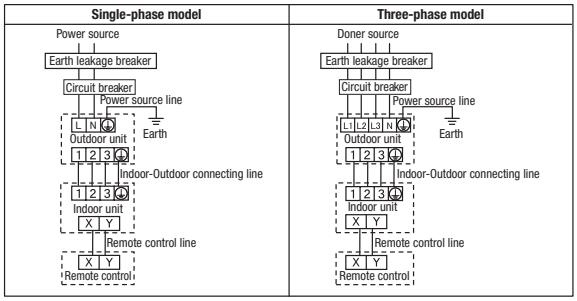
①Electrical wiring connection

- Electrical wiring work must be performed by an electlician an qualified by a local power provider. These wiring specifications are determined on the assumption that the following instructions are observed:
  ① Do not use cords other than copper ones.
  Do not use any supply line lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  – braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51), if allowed in the relevant part 2;
  – ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53);
  – flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  – ordinary polyvinyl chloride sheathed cord (code designation 60227 IEC 53);
  ② Connect the power source to the outdoor unit.
  ③ Pay extra attention so as not to confuse signal line and power source line connection, because an error in their connection can be burn all the boards at once.
- Connect ground wires before connecting wires between the indoor and outdoor units and between indoor units. The ground wires need to be longer than the wires between the indoor and outdoor units, and protected from undue stress.
- Do not turn on the power source before completing the work.
- The ground wires must be connected by the Class D grounding connection.
- Use the round crimp terminals for connections to the terminal block.
- Use dedicated branch circuits, avoiding combination with other devices. Otherwise, it could trip the power source breaker, resulting in secondary accidents.
- Install the overcurrent and earth leakage breakers (sensitivity current: 30 mA) specified to respective models.
- Do not connect indoor and outdoor signal cables to extension cables on the way. If the joint is wetted with intruding water, it could cause a ground insulation failure or poor connection, resulting in communication errors. (If it is inevitable to connect cables on the way, make sure to prevent the water intrusion completely.)
- When running wires (wires for power source, remote control, connecting between indoor and outdoor units, or other) behind the ceiling, protect them using copper or other pipes against assault by rat, or other.
- It is up to 3.5 mm² the size of power source cables connected to indoor units. When using cables of 5.5 mm² or larger, provide a dedicated pull box for branching connection to indoor units.
- If signal and power source cables are connected mistakenly, it could burn down all PCBs.
  ① Even if the power source of 220/240/380/415 V is connected mistakenly to A-B signal cable, it is protected at initial occasion only.
  ② If the remote control fails to detect the unit No. (address) at 15 minutes after turning the power on, check and repair all signal cables for misconnection.
  ③ Cut the jumper wire J10SL1 of burnt PCB, and reconnect connectors CnK (yellow) and CnK1 (white) to CnK2 (black).
  ④ If any anomaly is found on wires between the A-B terminal block and the PCB, replace them.
- At the outside of indoor and outdoor units, take care to avoid direct contacts between remote control and power source cables.
- In no event connect the power source of 220/240/380/415 V to the remote control terminal block. It could cause failures.
- Connections of wiring between units, ground wire and remote control cable
  ① When connecting wires between units, ground wire or remote control wire, connect them according to the number of terminals on the power source terminal block or signal terminal block in the control box. Connect the ground wire to the ground terminal on the power source terminal block.
  ② Make sure to install an earth leakage breaker for the power source. Select a breaker for inverter circuit.
  ③ When the earth leakage breaker is exclusive for the earth leakage protection, it is necessary to connect also an isolating switch (Switch + Class B fuse) or wiring circuit breaker in series to the earth leakage breaker.
  ④ Install the isolating switch close to the unit.
- Connect wires securing by tightening screws firmly. Confirm also no connector or wire (from terminal) is disconnected in the control box.
- When installing an auxiliary electric heater, consult the electric heater manual or technical data.



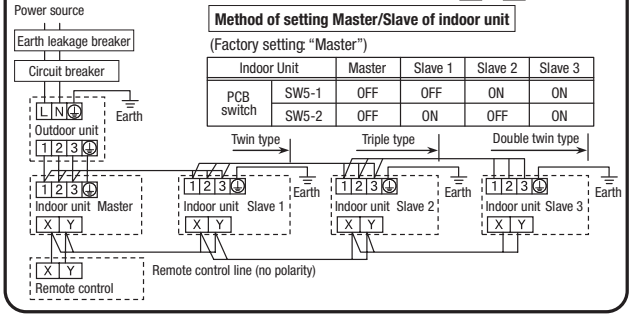
Cable connection for single unit installation

①As for connecting method of power source, select from following connecting patterns. In principle, do not directly connect power source line to inside unit.
※As for exceptional connecting method of power source, discuss with the power provider of the country with referring to technical documents, and follow its instruction.
②For cable size and circuit breaker selection, refer to the outdoor unit installation manual.



Cable connection for a V multi configuration installation

①Connect the same pairs number of terminal block "①, ②, and ③"and "ⓍandⓎ" between master and slave indoor units.
②Do the same address setting of all inside units belong to same refrigerant system by rotary switch SW2 on indoor unit's PCB (Printed circuit board).
③Set slave indoor unit as "slave 1" through "slave 3" by address switch SW5-1, 5-2 on PCB.
④When the AIR CON No. button on the remote control unit is pressed after turning on the power, an indoor unit's address number will be displayed. Do not fail to confirm that the connected indoor unit's numbers are displayed on the remote control unit by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.



Method of setting Master/Slave of indoor unit

(Factory setting: "Master")

Indoor Unit		Master	Slave 1	Slave 2	Slave 3
PCB switch	SW5-1	OFF	OFF	ON	ON
	SW5-2	OFF	ON	OFF	ON

②Remote control, wiring and functions

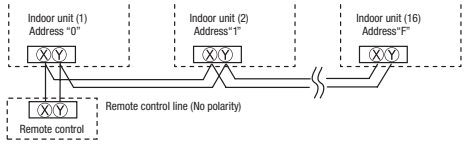
●Do not install it on the following places
①Places exposed to direct sunlight
②Places near heat devices
③High humidity places
④Hot surface or cold surface enough to generate condensation
⑤Places exposed to oil mist or steam directly.
⑥Uneven surface

Installation and wiring of remote control

①Install remote control referring to the attached installation manual.
②Wiring of remote control should use 0.3mm²×2 cores wires or cables.
The insulation thickness is 1mm or more. (on-site configuration)
③Maximum prolongation of remote control wiring is 600 m.
If the prolongation is over 100m, change to the size below.
But, wiring in the remote control case should be under 0.5mm². Change the wire size outside of the case according to wire connecting. Waterproof treatment is necessary at the wire connecting section. Be careful about contact failure.
100 - 200m ..... 0.5mm² × 2 cores
Under 300m ..... 0.75mm² × 2 cores
Under 400m ..... 1.25mm² × 2 cores
Under 600m ..... 2.0mm² × 2 cores
④Avoid using multi-core cables to prevent malfunction.
⑤Keep remote control line away from earth (frame or any metal of building).
⑥Make sure to connect remote control line to the remote control and terminal block of indoor unit. (No polarity)

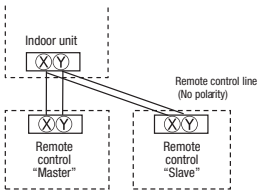
Control plural indoor units by a single remote control

①A remote control can control plural indoor units (Up to 16).
In above setting, all plural indoor units will operate under same mode and temperature setting.
②Connect all indoor units with 2 cores remote control line.
③Set unique remote control communication address from "0" to "F" to each inside unit by the rotary switch SW2 on the indoor unit's PCB.



Master/ slave setting when more than one remote control unit are used

A maximum of two remote control units can be connected to one indoor unit (or one group of indoor units.)
The air-conditioner operation follows the last operation of the remote control regardless of the master/slave setting of it.
Acceptable combination is "two (2) wired remote control", "one (1) wired remote control and one (1) wireless kit" or "two (2) wireless kits".
Set one to "Master" and the other to "Slave".
Note:The setting "Remote control unit sensor enabled" is only selectable with the master remote control unit in the position where you want to check room temperature.

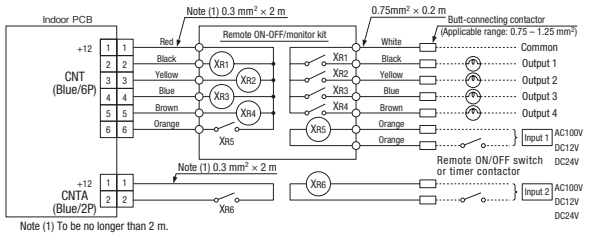


③Operation and confirmation from remote control

No.	Item	Operation from the eco touch remote controller (RC-EX series)	Operation from the standard remote control (RC-E series)
1	Check the number of units connected in the multi remote control system.	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [IU address]	① Press the AIR CON NO button to display the IU address. ② Press the ▲ or ▼ button and check addresses of connected indoor units one by one.
2	Check if each unit is connected properly in the remote control system.	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [IU address] ⇒ [Check run mode]	① Press the AIR CON NO button to display the IU address. ② Press the ▲ or ▼ button and select one of IU addresses. ③ Press the (MODE) button. The unit starts to blow air.
3	Setting main/sub remote controls	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [R/C function settings] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Main/Sub of R/C]	Set SW1 to "Sub" for the sub remote control unit.
4	Checking operation data	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Operation data]	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ "OPER DATA ▼" is displayed. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Select one of addresses for connected indoor units by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Select data by pressing the ▲ or ▼ button.
5	Checking inspection display	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Service & Maintenance] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Error display]	Press the CHECK button. ⇒ "OPER DATA ▼" is displayed. ⇒ Press the ▼ button. ⇒ "ERROR DATA ▲" is displayed. ⇒ Press the (SET) button. ⇒ "DATA LOADING" is displayed. ⇒ Data is displayed.
6	Cooling test run from remote control	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Installation settings] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Test run] ⇒ [Cooling test run] ⇒ [Start]	① Start the system by pressing the ON/OFF button. ② Select "❄ (Cool)" with the (MODE) button. ③ Press the TEST button for 3 seconds or longer. The screen display will switch to "❄ TEST RUN ▼". ④ Pressing the (SET) button, while the "❄ TEST RUN ▼" is displayed, starts the cooling test run. The screen display will switch to "❄ TEST RUN".
7	Trial operation of drain pump from remote control	[Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [Installation settings] ⇒ [Service password] ⇒ [Test run] ⇒ [Drain pump test run] ⇒ [Run]	① Start the system by pressing the ON/OFF button. The display will change to "❄ TEST RUN ▼". ② Press the ▼ button once to display "DRAIN PUMP ⇕". ③ Pressing the (SET) button starts the drain pump operation. The display will show "STOP TO STOP".

The menu configuration may vary depending on models of the remote control. If the model of your remote control is different, refer to the installation manual attached to the remote control.

④ Function of CNT connector of indoor printed circuit board



●XR1-4 are DC 12 V relays. (Equivalent to Omron's LY2F)
●XR5 is a DC 12 V, 24 V or 100 V relay. (Equivalent to Omron's MY2F)
●Maker and model of CnT connector (Site side)
Connector : Molex 5264-06
Terminal : Molex 5263T
●CnTA connector is used on FDT, or other. <Check with the specifications.> (Site side) Maker and model
Connector : J.S.T. Mfg. XAP02V-1-E
Terminal : J.S.T. Mfg. SXA-01T-P0.6
●Output 1 – 4 and input1/2 can be selected/set as required from following items.
Factory default is set as shown below.

Output

①	RUN output	⑧	Fan ON output 3
②	Heating output	⑨	Defrost/oil return output
③	Compressor ON output	⑩	Ventilation output
④	Inspection (error) output	⑪	Heater output
⑤	Cooling output	⑫	Free cleaning output
⑥	Fan ON output 1	⑬	Indoor overload error output
⑦	Fan ON output 2		

Input

①	RUN/STOP	⑤	Setting temp. shift
②	RUN permit prohibition	⑥	Compulsory thermostat OFF
③	Emergency stop	⑦	Temporary stop
④	Cooling/Heating	⑧	Silent mode

Factory default setting

CNT-2	Output 1	RUN output	CNT-5	Output 4	Inspection (error) output
CNT-3	Output 2	Heating output	CNT-6	Input 1	RUN/STOP
CNT-4	Output 3	Compressor ON output	CNTA	Input 2	RUN/STOP

●For the setting method, refer to the technical data.

⑤ Operation and setting from remote control

A : Refer to the instruction manual for RC-EX series ○ : Nearly same function setting and operations are possible. *1: Remote controls before RC-EX1A don't have this function.
B : Refer to the installation manual for RC-EX series △ : Similar function setting and opperations are possible. *2: Remote controls before RC-EX3 don't have this function.
C : Loading a utility software vie Internet

Setting & display item			Description	RC-EX3A	RC-E5
1.Remote Control network					
1	Control plural indoor units by a single remote control		A remote control can control plural indoor units up to 16 (in one group of remote control network). An address is set to each indoor unit.		○
2	Main/sub setting of remote control		A pair of remote control (including option wireless remote control) can be connected within the remote control network. Set one to “Main” and the other to “Sub”.	B	○
2.TOP scrren, Switch manipulation					
1	Menu		"Control","State", or "Details" can be selected. (3-8)	A	
2	Operation mode		"Cooling","Heating","Fan","Dry" or "Auto" can be set.	A	○
3	Set temp.		"Set temperature" can be set by 0.5℃ interval.	A	○
4	Air flow direction		"Air flow direction" [Individual flap control] can be set. Select Enable or Disable for the “3D AUTO” (in case of FDK). *1	A	△
5	Fan speed		"Fan speed" can be set.	A	○
6	Timer setting		"Timer operation" can be set.	A	○
7	ON/OFF		"On/Off operation of the system" can be done.	A	○
8	F1 SW	*1	The system operates and is controlled according to the function specified to the F1 switch.	A	
9	F2 SW	*1	The system operates and is controlled according to the function specified to the F2 switch.	A	
10	Select the language	*2	Select the language to display on the remote control. ・Select from English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Turkish, Portuguese, Russian,Polish, Japanese and Chinese.	A	
11	Zone ON/OFF operation		"On/Off for each zone" can be set.	A	
3.Useful functions					
1	Individual flap control		The moving range (the positions of upper limit and lower limit) of the flap for individual flap can be set. Set also the left and right limit positions for FDK. *1	A	△
2	Anti draft setting When the panel with the anti-draft function is assembled.	*1	・Details .....You can set Enable or Disable for anti draft motion performed at each blow outlet in each operation mode. ・ON/OFF setting .....You can set ON/OFF (operation/stop) of anti draft function for the enabled blow outlet set in Details. *2	A	
3	Timer settings	Set On timer by hour	The period of time to start operation after stopping can be set. ・The period of set time can be set within range of 1 hour-12 houres (1hr interval). ・The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
		Set Off timer by hour	The period of time to stop operation after starting can be set. ・The period of set time can be set within range of 1 hour-12 houres (1hr interval).	A	△
		Set On timer by clock	The clock time to start operation can be set. ・The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・[Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched. ・The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
		Set Off timer by clock	The clock time to stop operation can be set. ・The set clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・[Once (one time only)] or [Everyday] operation can be switched.	A	△
		Confirmation of timer settings	Status of timer settings can be seen.	A	
4	Favorite setting [Administrator password]	*1	Set the operation mode, setting temperature, air flow capacity and air flow direction for the choice setting operations. Set them for the Favorite set 1 and the Favorite set 2 respectively.	A	
5	Weekly timer		On timer and Off timer on weekly basis can be set. ・8-operation patterns per day can be set at a maximum. ・The setting clock time can be set by 5 minutes interval. ・Holiday setting is available. ・The operation mode, set temp. and fan speed at starting operation can be set.	A	△
6	Home leave mode [Administrator password]		When leaving home for a long period like a vaction leave, the unit can be operated to maintain the room temperature not to be hotter in summer or not to be colder in winter. ・The judgment to switch the operation mode (Cooring ⇔ Heating) is done by the both factors of the set temp. and outdoor air temp. ・The set temp. and fan speed can be set.	A	
7	External Ventilation When the ventilator is combined.		On/Off operation of the external ventilator can be done. It is necessary to set from [Menu] ⇒ [Service setting] ⇒ [R/C function settings] ⇒ [Ventilation setting]. ・If the “Independent” is selected for the ventilation setting, the ventilator can be operated or stopped.	A	○
8	Select the language		Select the language to display on the remote control. ・Select from English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Turkish, Portuguese, Russian,Polish, Japanese and Chinese. *1	A	
9	Silent mode control	*2	The period of time to operate the unit by prioritizing the quietness can be set. ・Start and end can be set for the silent mode	A	
4.Energy-saving setting			Administrator password		
1	Sleep timer		To prevent the timer from keeping ON, set hours to stop operation automatically with this timer. ・The selectable range of setting time is from 30 to 240 minutes. (10 miuutes interval) ・When setting is "Enable", this timer will activate whenever the ON timer is set.	A	△
2	Peak-cut timer		Power consumption can be reduced by restructing the maximum capacity. Set the [Start time], the [End time] and the capacity limit % (Peak-cut %). ・4-operation patterns per day can be set at maximum. ・The setting time can be changed by 5-minute interval. ・The selectable range of capacity limit % (Peak-cut %) is from 0% to 40-80% (20% interval) ・Holiday setting is available.	A	
3	Automatic temp set back		After the elapse of the set time period, the current set temp. will be set back to the [Set back time.] ・The setting can be done in cooling and heating mode respectively. ・Selectable range of the set time is from 20 min. to 120 min. (10 min. interval). ・Set the [Set back temp.] by 1℃ interval.	A	△
4	Motion sensor control When the panel with the motion sensor is assembled.	*1	When the motion sensor is used, it is necessary to set Enable or Disable for the “Power control” and the “Auto-off”.	A	
5.Filter					
1	Filter sign reset	Filter sign reset	The filter sign can be reset.	A	
		Setting next cleaning date	The next cleaning date can be set.	A	
6.User setting					
1	Internal settings	Clock setting	The current date and time can be set or revised. ・If a power failure continues no longer than 80 hours, the clock continues to tick by the built-in power source.	A	△
		Date and time display	[Display] or [Hide] the date and/or time can be set, and [12H] or [24H] display can be set.	A	
		Summer time	When select [Enable], the +1hour adjustment of current time can be set. When select [Disable], the [Summer time] adjustment can be reset.	A	
		Contrast	The contrast of LCD can be adjusted higher or lower.	A	
		Backlight	Switching on/off a light can be set and period of the lighting time can be set within the range of 5 sec.-90 sec. (5 sec. interval).	A	
		Control sound	It can set with or without [Control sound (beep sound)] at touch panel.	A	
		Operation lamp luminance *1	This is used to adjust the luminance of operation lamp.	A	
2	Administrator settings [Administrator password]	Permission/Prohibition setting	・Permission/Prohibition setting of operation can be set. [On/Off] [Change set temp] [Change operation mode] [Change flap direction] [Change fan speed] [High power operation] [Energy-saving operation] [Timer] Request for administrator can be set. [Individual flap control] [Weekly timer] [Select the language] [Anti draft setting] *1	A	△
		Outdoor unit silent mode timer	The period of time to operate the outdoor unit by prioritizing the quiteness can be set. ・The [Start time] and the [End time] for operating outdoor unit in silent mode can be set. ・The period of the operation time can be set once aday by 5 minutes interal.	A	△
		Setting temp range	The upper/lower limit of temp. setting range can be set. ・The limitation of indoor temp. setting range can be set for each operation mode in cooling and heating.	A	△

⑤ Operation and setting from remote control (continued)

Setting & display item			Description	RC-EX3A	RC-E5
2	Administrator settings	Temp increment setting	The temp increment setting can be changed by 0.5˚C or 1.0˚C.	A	
		Set temp display	Ways of displaying setting temperatures can be selected.	A	
	[Administrator password]	R/C display setting	Register [Room name] [Name of I/U] [Zone name] Display [Indoor temp display] or not. Display [Error code display] or not. Display [Heating stand-by display] [Defrost operation display] [Auto cooling/heating display] [Display temp of R/C, Room, Outdoor] or not	A	△
		Change administrator password	The administrator password can be changed. (Default setting is "0000")	A	
			The administrator password can be reset.	B	
		F1/F2 function setting *1	Functions can be set for F1 and F2. Selectable functions: [Anti draft ON/OFF] *2 [High power operation], [Energy-saving operation], [Silent mode cont.], [Home leave mode], [Favorite set 1], [Favorite set 2] and [Filter sign reset].	A	
7.Service setting					
1	Installer settings	Installation date	The [Installation date] can be registed. ・When registering the [Instaration date], the [Next service date] is displayed automatically. (For changing the [Next service date], please refer the item of [Service & Maintenance])	B	
	[Service password]	Company information	The [Company information] can be registed and can be displayed on the R/C. ・The [Company] can be registered within 26 characters. ・The [Phone No.] can be registed within 13 digits.	B	
		Test run	On/Off operation of the test run can be done.	B	○
		Cooling test run	The [Cooling test run] can be done at 5˚C of set temp. for 30 minutes.		
		Drain pump test run	Only drain pump can be operated.		
		Duct unit settings		B	
		Static pressure adjustment	In case of combination with only the ducted indoor unit which has a function of static pressure adjustment, the static pressure is adjustable. ・It can be set for each indoor unit individually.		
		Zone settings	Set when performing zone control.		
		Zone settings reset	Resets all zone control settings.		
		Change auto-address	The set address of each indoor unit decided by auto-address setting method can be changed to any other address. (For multiple KX units only)	B	△
		Address setting of main IU	Main indoor unit address can be set. ・Only the Main indoor unit can change operation mode and the Sub indoor units dominated by the Main indoor shall follow. ・The Main indoor unit can domain 10 indoor units at a maximum.	B	△
		IU back-up function	When a pair of indoor units (2 groups) is connected to one unit of remote control, it can be set Enable or Disable for the [IU rotation], [IU capacity back-up] and [IU fault back-up]	B	
		Motion sensor setting *1 When the panel with the motion sensor is assembled.	Set Enable or Disable for the infrared sensor detectors of indoor units connected to the remote control. If Disable is selected, it cannot be control the motion sensor control for the energy-saving setting.	B	
2	R/C function setting	Main/Sub R/C	The R/C setting of [Main/Sub] can be changed.	B	○
	[Service password]	Return air temp	When two or more indoor units are connected to one unit of remote control, suction sensors, which are used for the judgement by thermostat, can be selected. ・It can be selected from [Individual], [Master IU] and [Average temp].	B	
		R/C sensor	It can be set the mode to switch to the remote control sensor. It can be selected from cooling and heating.	B	△
		R/C sensor adjustment	The offset value of [R/C sensor] sensing temp. can be set respectively in heating and cooling.	B	△
		Operation mode	Enable or Disable can be set for each operation mode.	B	△
		ºC / ºF	Set the unit for setting temperatures. ・°C or °F can be selected.	B	
		Fan speed	Fan speeds can be selected.	B	○
		External input	When two or more indoor units are connected to one unit of remote control, the range to apply CNT inputs can be set.	B	○
		Upper/lower flap control	[Stop at fixed position] or [Stop at any position] can be selected for the upper and lower louvers.	B	○
		Left/right flap control *1	[Fixed position stop] or [Stop at any position] can be selected for the right and left louvers.	B	
		Ventilation setting	Combination control for ventilator can be set.	B	○
		Auto-restart	The operation control method after recovery of power failure happened during operation can be set.	B	○
		Auto temp setting	[Enable] or [Disable] of [Auto temp setting] can be selected.	B	
		Auto fan speed	[Enable] or [Disable] of [Auto fan speed] can be selected.	B	
3	IU settings	Fan speed setting	The fan speed for indoor units can be set.	B	○
		Filter sign	The setting of filter sign display timer can be done from following patterns.	B	○
	[Service password]	External input 1	The connect of control by external input 1 can be changed.	B	○
		External input 1 signal	The type of external input 1 signal can be changed.	B	○
		External input 2	The connect of control by external input 2 can be changed.	B	
		External input 2 signal	The type of external input 2 signal can be changed.	B	
		Heating thermo-OFF temp adjustment	The judgement temp. of heating themo-off can be adjusted within the range from 0 to +3˚C (1˚C interval)	B	△
		Return temperature adjustment	The sensing temp. of return air temp. sensor built in the indoor unit can be adjusted within the range of ±2˚C.	B	△
		Fan control in cooling thermo-OFF	Fan control, when the cooling thermostat is turned OFF, can be changed.	B	○
		Fan control in heating thermo-OFF	Fan control, when the heating thermostat is turned OFF, can be changed.	B	○
		Anti-frost temp	Judgment temperature for the anti-frost control during cooling can be changed.	B	○
		Anti-frost control	When the anti-frost control of indoor unit in cooling is activated, the fan speed can be changed.	B	○
		Drain pump operation	In any operation mode in addition to cooling and dry mode, the setting of drain pump operation can be done.	B	○
		Keep fan operating after cooling is stopped	The time period residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in cooling mode can be set.	B	○
		Keep fan operating after heating is stopped	The time period residual fan operation after stopping or thermo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
		Intermittent fan operation in heating	The fan operation rule following the residual fan operation after stopping or themo-off in heating mode can be set.	B	○
		Fan circulator operation	In case that the fan is operated as the circulator, the fan control rule can be set.	B	
		Control pressure adjust	When only the OA processing units are operated, control pressure value can be changed.	B	
		Auto operation mode	The [Auto rule selection] for switching the operation mode automatically can be selected from 3 patterns.	B	
		Thermo. rule setting	When selecting [Outdoor air temp. control], the judgment temp can be offset by outdoor temp..	B	
		Auto fan speed control	Auto switching range for the auto fan speed control can be set.	B	
		IU overload alarm	If the difference between the setting temperature and the suction temperature becomes larger than the temperature difference set for the overload alarm, at 30 minutes after the start of operation, the overload alarm signal is transmitted from the external output (CNT-5).	B	
		External output setting *1	Functions assigned to the external outputs 1 to 4 can be changed.	B	
4	Service & Maintenance	IU address	Max 16 indoor units can be connected to one remote control, and all address No. of the connected indoor units can be displayed. ・The indoor unit conforming to the address No. can be identified by selecting the address No. and tapping [Check] to operate the indoor fan.	B	○
	[Service password]	Next service date	The [Next service date] can be registered. ・The [Next service date] and [Company information] is displayed on the message screen.	A B	○
		Operation data	The [Operation data] for indoor unit and outdoor unit can be displayed.	B	○
		Error display		B	△
		Error history	The error history can be displayed.		
		Display anomaly data	The operation data just before the latest error stop can be displayed.		
		Erase anomaly data	Anomaly operation data can be erased.		
		Reset periodical check	The timer for the periodical check can be reset.		
		Saving IU settings	The I/U settings memorized in the indoor PCB connected to the remote control can be saved in the memory of the remote control.	B	
		Special settings	[Erase IU address] [CPU reset] [Restore of default setting] [Touch panel calibration]	B	△
		Indoor unit capacity display *1	Address No. and capacities of indoor units connected to the remote control are displayed.	B	
8.Contact company			Shows registered [Contact company] and [Contact phone].		
9.Inspection					
	Confirmation of Inspection		This is displayed when any error occurs.	A	△
10.PC connection					
	USB connection		Weekly timer setting and etc., can be set from PC.	C	

◆ Listed items may not function depending on the specifications of indoor and outdoor units which are combined.

5.3 Installation of outdoor unit
Models FDC200VSA-W, 250VSA-W, 280VSA-W

PSC012D154B△

Inverter driven split PAC
FDC200VSA-W, FDC250VSA-W, FDC280VSA-W
Designed for R32 refrigerant

◎This installation manual deals with outdoor units and general installation specifications only. For indoor units, refer to page 131.
◎When install the unit, be sure to check whether the selection of installation place, power supply specifications, usage limitation (piping length, height differences between indoor and outdoor units, power supply voltage and etc.) and installation spaces

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

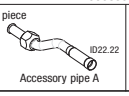
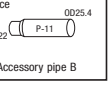
- We recommend you to read this "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" carefully before the installation work in order to gain full advantage of the functions of the unit and to avoid malfunction due to mishandling.
- The precautions described below are divided into ⚠ WARNING and ⚠ CAUTION. The matters with possibilities leading to serious consequences such as death or serious personal injury due to erroneous handling are listed in the ⚠ WARNING and the matters with possibilities leading to personal injury or damage of the unit due to erroneous handling including probability leading to serious consequences in some cases are listed in ⚠ CAUTION. **These are very important precautions for safety. Be sure to observe all of them without fail.**
- The meaning of "Marks" used here are as shown below.

⃠	Never do it under any circumstance.	❗	Always do it according to the instruction

- For 3 phase power supply outdoor unit,EN61000-3-2 is not applicable if consent by the utility company or nortification to the utility company is given before usage.
- 3phase power supply unit, both indoor and outdoor, is suitable for installation in a commercial and light industrial environment. If installed as a house-hold appliance it could cause electromagnetic interference.
- Be sure to confirm no anomaly on the equipment by commissioning after completed installation and explain the operating methods as well as the maintenance methods of this equipment to the user according to the owner's manual.
- Keep the installation manual together with owner's manual at a place where any user can read at any time. Moreover if necessary, ask to hand them to a new user.

Check before installation work

[Accessory]

Edging	Accessory pipe	
1 piece	1 piece	1 piece
 knock-out hole protection	 ID22.22 Accessory pipe A	 OD25.4 P-11 ID22.22 Accessory pipe B

- Model name and power supply
- Refrigerant piping length
- Piping, wiring and miscellaneous small parts
- Indoor unit installation manual

⚠ WARNING

- **Installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it may cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire and personal injury, as a result of a system malfunction.
- **Install the system in full accordance with the instruction manual.**
  Incorrect installation may cause bursts, personal injury, water leaks, electric shocks and fire.
- **Use the original accessories and the specified components for installation.**
  If parts other than those prescribed by us are used, It may cause fall of the unit, water leaks, electric shocks, fire, refrigerant leak, substandard performance, control failure and personal injury.
- **When installing in small rooms, take prevention measures not to exceed the density limit of refrigerant in the event of leakage accordance with ISO5149.**
  Consult the expert about prevention measures. If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of leakage, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Ventilate the working area well in the event of refrigerant leakage during installation.**
  If the refrigerant comes into contact with naked flames, poisonous gas is produced.
  In case of R32, the refrigerant could be ignited because of its flammability. 
- **After completed installation, check that no refrigerant leaks from the system.**
  If refrigerant leaks into the room and comes into contact with an oven or other hot surface, poisonous gas is produced.
- **Hang up the unit at the specified points with ropes which can support the weight in lifting for portage. And to avoid jolting out of alignment, be sure to hang up the unit at 4-point support.**
  An improper manner of portage such as 3-point support can cause death or serious personal injury due to falling of the unit
- **Install the unit in a location with good support.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **Ensure the unit is stable when installed, so that it can withstand earthquakes and strong winds.**
  Unsuitable installation locations can cause the unit to fall and cause material damage and personal injury.
- **The electrical installation must be carried out by the qualified electrician in accordance with "the norm for electrical work" and "national wiring regulation", and the system must be connected to the dedicated circuit.**
  Power supply with insufficient capacity and incorrect function done by improper work can cause electric shocks and fire,
- **Be sure to shut off the power before starting electrical work.**
  Failure to shut off the power can cause electric shocks, unit failure or incorrect function of equipment.
- **Be sure to use the cables conformed to safety standard and cable ampacity for power distribution work.**
  Unconformable cables can cause electric leak, anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Use the prescribed cables for electrical connection, tighten the cables securely in terminal block and relieve the cables correctly to prevent overloading the terminal blocks.**
  Loose connections or cable mountings can cause anomalous heat production or fire.
- **Arrange the wiring in the control box so that it cannot be pushed up further into the box. Install the service panel correctly.**
  Incorrect installation may result in overheating and fire.
- **Do not perform brazing work in the airtight room**
  It can cause lack of oxygen.
- **Use the prescribed pipes, flare nuts and tools for R32.**
  Using existing parts (for R22 or R407C) can cause the unit failure and serious accidents due to burst of the refrigerant circuit.
- **Tighten the flare nut by using double spanners and torque wrench according to prescribed method. Be sure not to tighten the flare nut too much.**
  Loose flare connection or damage on the flare part by tightening with excess torque can cause burst or refrigerant leaks which may result in lack of oxygen.
- **Do not open the service valves for liquid line and gas line until completed refrigerant piping work, air tightness test and evacuation.**
  If the compressor is operated in state of opening service valves before completed connection of refrigerant piping work, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked into refrigerant circuit, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant
- **Only use prescribed optional parts. The installation must be carried out by the qualified installer.**
  If you install the system by yourself, it can cause serious trouble such as water leaks, electric shocks, fire.
- **Do not perform any change of protective device itself or its setup condition**
  The forced operation by short-circuiting protective device of pressure switch and temperature controller or the use of non specified component can cause fire or burst.
- **Be sure to switch off the power supply in the event of installation, inspection or servicing.**
  If the power supply is not shut off, there is a risk of electric shocks, unit failure or personal injury due to the unexpected start of fan.
- **Consult the dealer or an expert regarding removal of the unit.**
  Incorrect installation can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.
- **Stop the compressor before closing valve and disconnecting refrigerant pipes in case of pump down operation.**
  If disconnecting refrigerant pipes in state of opening service valves before compressor stopping, you may incur frost bite or injury from an abrupt refrigerant outflow and air can be sucked, which can cause burst or personal injury due to anomalously high pressure in the refrigerant circuit
- **Be sure to wear protective goggles and gloves while at work.**
- **This unit is designed specifically for R32.**
  Using any other refrigerant can cause unit failure and personal injury.
- **Ensure that no air enters in the refrigerant circuit when the unit is installed and removed.**
  If air enters in the refrigerant circuit, the pressure in the refrigerant circuit becomes too high, which can cause burst and personal injury.
- **Do not run the unit with removed panels or protections**
  Touching rotating equipments, hot surfaces or high voltage parts can cause personal injury due to entrapment, burn or electric shocks.
- **Be sure to fix up the service panels.**
  Incorrect fixing can cause electric shocks or fire due to intrusion of dust or water.
- **Do not perform any repairs or modifications by yourself. Consult the dealer if the unit requires repair.**
  If you repair or modify the unit, it can cause water leaks, electric shocks or fire.
- **Do not process or splice the power cord, or share the socket with other power plugs.**
  This may cause fire or electric shock due to defecting contact, defecting insulation and over-current etc.
- **Do not bundle or wind or process the power cord. Do not deform the power cord by treading it.**
  This may cause fire or heating.

⚠ CAUTION

- **Carry out the electrical work for ground lead with care**
  Do not connect the ground lead to the gas line, water line, lightning conductor or telephone line's ground lead. Incorrect grounding can cause unit faults such as electric shocks due to short-circuiting. Never connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe because if gas leaks,it could cause explosion or ignition.
- **Use the circuit breaker for all pole with correct capacity.**
  Using the incorrect circuit breaker, it can cause the unit malfunction and fire.
- **Install isolator or disconnect switch on the power supply wiring in accordance with the local codes and regulations.**
  The isolator should be locked in accordanced with EN60204-1.
- **Take care when carrying the unit by hand.**
  If the unit weights more than 20kg, it must be carried by two or more persons. Do not carry by the plastic straps, always use the carry handle when carrying the unit by hand. Use gloves to minimize the risk of cuts by the aluminum fins.
- **Dispose of any packing materials correctly.**
  Any remaining packing materials can cause personal injury as it contains nails and wood. And to avoid danger of suffocation, be sure to keep the plastic wrapper away from children and to dispose after tear it up.
- **Pay attention not to damage the drain pan by weld spatter when welding work is done near the indoor unit.**
  If weld spatter entered into the indoor unit during welding work, it can cause pin-hole in drain pan and result in water leakage. To prevent such damage, keep the indoor unit in its packing or cover it.
- **Be sure to insulate the refrigerant pipes so as not to condense the ambient air moisture on them.**
  Insufficient insulation can cause condensation, which can lead to moisture damage on the ceiling, floor, furniture and any other valuables.
- **Be sure to perform air tightness test by pressurizing with nitrogen gas after completed refrigerant piping work.**
  If the density of refrigerant exceeds the limit in the event of refrigerant leakage in the small room, lack of oxygen can occur, which can cause serious accidents.
- **Perform installation work properly according to this installation manual.**
  Improper installation can cause abnormal vibrations or increased noise generation.
- **Earth leakage breaker must be installed**
  If the earth leakage breaker is not installed, it can cause fire or electric shocks.
- **Do not use any materials other than a fuse with the correct rating in the location where fuses are to be used.**
  Connecting the circuit with copper wire or other metal thread can cause unit failure and fire.
- **Do not install the unit near the location where leakage of combustible gases can occur.**
  If leaked gases accumulate around the unit, it can cause fire.
- **Do not install the unit where corrosive gas (such as sulfurous acid gas etc.) or combustible gas (such as thinner and petroleum gases) can accumulate or collect, or where volatile combustible substances are handled.**
  Corrosive gas can cause corrosion of heat exchanger, breakage of plastic parts and etc. And combustible gas can cause fire.
- **Secure a space for installation, inspection and maintenance specified in the manual.**
  Insufficient space can result in accident such as personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **When the outdoor unit is installed on a roof or a high place, provide permanent ladders and handrails along the access route and fences and handrails around the outdoor unit.**
  If safety facilities are not provided, it can cause personal injury due to falling from the installation place.
- **Do not install nor use the system close to the equipment that generates electromagnetic fields or high frequency harmonics**
  Equipment such as inverters, standby generators, medical high frequency equipments and telecommunication equipments can affect the system, and cause malfunctions and breakdowns. The system can also affect medical equipment and telecommunication equipment, and obstruct its function or cause jamming.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in a location where insects and small animals can inhabit.**
  Insects and small animals can enter the electric parts and cause damage or fire. Instruct the user to keep the surroundings clean.
- **Do not use the base flame for outdoor unit which is corroded or damaged due to long periods of operation.**
  Using an old and damage base flame can cause the unit falling down and cause personal injury.
- **Do not install the unit in the locations listed below**
  •Locations where carbon fiber, metal powder or any powder is floating.
  •Locations where any substances that can affect the unit such as sulphide gas, chloride gas, acid and alkaline can occur.
  •Vehicles and ships
  •Locations where cosmetic or special sprays are often used.
  •Locations with direct exposure of oil mist and steam such as kitchen and machine plant.
  •Locations where any machines which generate high frequency harmonics are used.
  •Locations with salty atmospheres such as coastlines
  •Locations with heavy snow (If installed, be sure to provide base flame and snow hood mentioned in the manual)
  •Locations where the unit is exposed to chimney smoke
  •Locations at high altitude (more than 1000m high)
  •Locations with ammonic atmospheres (e.g. organic fertilizer).
  •Locations with calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent).
  •Locations where heat radiation from other heat source can affect the unit
  •Locations without good air circulation.
  •Locations with any obstacles which can prevent inlet and outlet air of the unit
  •Locations where short circuit of air can occur (in case of multiple units installation)
  •Locations where strong air blows against the air outlet of outdoor unit
  It can cause remarkable decrease in performance, corrosion and damage of components, malfunction and fire.
- **Do not install the outdoor unit in the locations listed below.**
  •Locations where discharged hot air or operating sound of the outdoor unit can bother neighborhood.
  •Locations where outlet air of the outdoor unit blows directly to an animal or plants. The outlet air can affect adversely to the plant etc.
  •Locations where vibration can be amplified and transmitted due to insufficient strength of structure.
  •Locations where vibration and operation sound generated by the outdoor unit can affect seriously. (on the wall or at the place near bed room)
  •Locations where an equipment affected by high harmonics is placed. (TV set or radio receiver is placed within 5m)
  •Locations where drainage cannot run off safely.
  It can affect surrounding environment and cause a claim
- **Do not use the unit for special purposes such as storing foods, cooling precision instruments and preservation of animals, plants or art.**
  It can cause the damage of the items.
- **Do not touch any buttons with wet hands**
  It can cause electric shocks
- **Do not touch any refrigerant pipes with your hands when the system is in operation.**
  During operation the refrigerant pipes become extremely hot or extremely cold depending the operating condition, and it can cause burn injury or frost injury.
- **Do not clean up the unit with water**
  It can cause electric shocks
- **Do not operate the outdoor unit with any article placed on it.**
  You may incur property damage or personal injure from a fall of the article.
- **Do not step onto the outdoor unit.**
  You may incur injury from a drop or fall.
- **Do not touch the suction or aluminum fin on the outdoor unit.**
  This may cause injury.

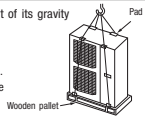
Notabilia as a unit designed for R32

- Do not use any refrigerant other than R32. R32 will rise to pressure about 1.6 times higher than that of a conventional refrigerant. A cylinder containing R32 has a light blue indication mark on the top.
- A unit designed for R32 has adopted a different size indoor unit operation valve charge port and a different size check joint provided in the unit to prevent the charging of a wrong refrigerant by mistake. The processed dimension of the flared part of a refrigerant pipe and a flare nut's parallel side measurement have also been altered to raise strength against pressure. Accordingly, you are required to arrange dedicated R32 tools listed in the table on the right before installing or servicing this unit.
- All indoor units must be models designed exclusively for R32. Check connectable indoor unit models in a catalog, etc. (A wrong indoor unit, if connected into the system, will impair proper system operation)

	Dedicated R32 tools
a)	Gauge manifold
b)	Charge hose
c)	Electronic scale for refrigerant charging
d)	Torque wrench
e)	Flare tool
f)	Protrusion control copper pipe gauge
g)	Vacuum pump adapter
h)	Gas leak detector

1. HAULAGE AND INSTALLATION (Take particular care in carrying in or moving the unit, and always perform such an operation with two or more persons.)

⚠CAUTION When a unit is hoisted with slings for haulage, take into consideration the offset of its gravity center position.
If not properly balanced, the unit can be thrown off-balance and fall.



1) Delivery

- Deliver the unit as close as possible to the installation site before removing it from the packaging.
- When some compelling reason necessitates the unpacking of the unit before it is carried in, use nylon slings or protective wood pieces so as not to damage the unit by ropes lifting it.

2) Portage

- The right hand side of the unit as viewed from the front (diffuser side) is heavier. A person carrying the right hand side must take heed of this fact. A person carrying the left hand side must hold with his right hand the handle provided on the front panel of the unit and with his left hand the corner column section.

3) Selection of installation location for the outdoor unit

Be sure to select a suitable installation place in consideration of following conditions.

- ○ A place where it is horizontal, stable and can endure the unit weight and will not allow vibration transmittance of the unit.
- ○ A place where it can be free from possibility of bothering neighbors due to noise or exhaust air from the unit
- ○ A place where the unit is not exposed to oil splashes.
- ○ A place where it can be free from danger of flammable gas leakage.
- ○ A place where drain water can be disposed without any trouble.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by heat radiation from other heat source.
- ○ A place where snow will not accumulate.
- ○ A place where the unit can be kept away 5m or more from TV set and/or radio receiver in order to avoid any radio or TV interference.
- ○ A place where good air circulation can be secured, and enough service space can be secured for maintenance and service of the unit safely.
- ○ A place where the unit will not be affected by electromagnetic waves and/or high-harmonic waves generated by other equipment.
- ○ A place where chemical substances like sulfuric gas, chloric gas, acid and alkali (including ammonia), which can harm the unit, will not be generated and not remain.
- ○ A place where strong wind will not blow against the outlet air blow of the unit.
  Do not install the unit in places which exposed to sea breeze (e.g. coastal area) or calcium chloride (e.g. snow melting agent), exposed to ammonia substance (e.g. organic fertilizer).

4) Caution about selection of installation location

(1) If the unit is installed in the area where the snow will accumulate, following measures are required.
The bottom plate of unit and intake, outlet may be blocked by snow.

1.Install the unit on the base so that the bottom is higher than snow cover surface.

2.Provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site. Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.

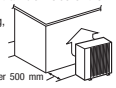
3.Install the unit under eaves or provided the roof on site.

Since drain water generated by defrost control may freeze, following measures are required.

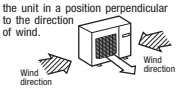
- Don't execute drain piping work by using a drain elbow and drain grommets (optional parts). [REFER TO DRAIN PIPING WORK.]
- Recommend setting Defrost Control (SW3-1) and Snow Guard Fan Control (SW3-2). [Refer to Setting SW3-1, SW3-2.]
- Attach heater on a base plate on site, if there is possibility to freeze drain water.
  In case that the product has a corrective drainage system, the drainage paths should have suitable measure against freezing but be sure not to melt the material of drainage paths with heat.

(2) If the unit can be affected by strong wind, following measures are required.
Strong wind can cause damage of fan (fan motor), or can cause performance degradation, or can trigger anomalous stop of the unit due to rising of high pressure.

1.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit to face a wall of building, or provide a fence or a windbreak screen.



2.Install the outlet air blow side of the unit in a position perpendicular to the direction of wind.



3.The unit should be installed on the stable and level foundation. If the foundation is not level, tie down the unit with wires.

5) Installation space

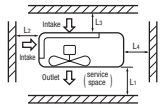
- Walls surrounding the unit in the four sides are not acceptable.
- There must be a 1-meter or larger space in the above.
- Where a danger of short-circuiting exists, install guide louvers.
- When more than one unit are installed, provide sufficient intake space consciously so that short-circuiting may not occur.
- Where piling snow can bury the outdoor unit, provide proper snow guards.
- A barrier wall placed in front of the exhaust diffuser must not be higher than the unit.

※In case that outdoor temperature is 44℃ or lower (mm)

Example installation / Size	I	II	III
L1	Open	Open	500
L2	300	5	Open
L3	150	300	150
L4	250 (S)	250 (S)	250 (S)

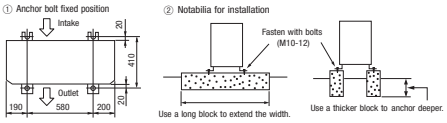
※In case that outdoor temperature is higher than 44℃ (mm)

Example installation / Size	I	II	III
L1	Open	Open	2400
L2	300	750	Open
L3	300	300	300
L4	750	300	1500



※ If unit is installed in L4 space with ( )'s condition, secure space of 250mm in lateral (L4) by unit movement at the time of exchange work of compressor.

6) Installation



- In installing the unit, fix the unit's legs with bolts specified on the left.
- The protrusion of an anchor bolt on the front side must be kept within 15 mm.
- Securely install the unit so that it does not fall over during earthquakes or strong winds, etc.
- Refer to the left illustrations for information regarding concrete foundations.
- Install the unit in a level area. (With a gradient of 5 mm or less.)
  Improper installation can result in a compressor failure, broken piping within the unit and abnormal noise generation.

7) To run the unit for a cooling operation, when the outdoor temperature is –5°C or lower.

- When the outdoor air temperature is -5°C or lower, provide a snow hood to the outdoor unit on site.
  So that strong wind will not blow against the outdoor heat exchanger directly. Regarding outline of a snow hood, refer to our technical manual.

2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK

1) Restrictions on unit installation and use

- Check the following points against the specification of the indoor unit and the installation site.
- Observe the following restrictions regarding unit installation and use. Improper installation can cause compressor failure or degradation of performance.
- The total liquid piping length of the system is restricted by the equivalent length (Le).
  The equivalent length (Le) is a virtual length corresponding to an equivalent length of liquid piping using a diameter of 12.7mm.

● FDC200V

Restriction		Dimensional restrictions	Marks appearing in the drawing: Single	Twin	Triple (A)	Triple(B)(2)	W-twin
Total equivalent length (Liquid piping)		≦ 70 m	L	L+L1 L+L2	L+L1, L+L2, L+L3	L+L1 (1)	L+La+L1, L+La+L2 L+Lb+L3, L+Lb+L4
One-way pipe length of refrigerant piping	Liquid piping	≦ 40m (L : ϕ 9.52) 40–70m(L : ϕ 12.7)					
	Gas piping	≦ 70m					
Main pipe length	Liquid piping	≦ 70m					
	Gas piping	≦ 35m (L : ϕ 22.22) 35–70m (L : ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58)	L	L	L	L	L
One way pipe length from the first branching point to the second branching point		≦ 5m	–	–	–	La	–
One-way pipe length after the first branching point		≦ 30m	–	L1,L2	L1,L2,L3	L1	La+L1, La+L2 La+L3, La+L4
One-way pipe length from the first branching point to indoor units through the second branching point		≦ 27m	–	–	–	La+L2,La+L3	–
One-way pipe length difference from the first branching point to the indoor units	Twin Type, W-Twin	≦ 10m	–	IL1–L2I	–	–	I(L1+La)–(L3+Lb)I, I(L1+La)–(L4+Lb)I, I(L2+La)–(L3+Lb)I, I(L2+La)–(L4+Lb)I, IL1–L2I, IL3–L4I
	Triple Type(A)	≦ 3m	–	–	IL1–L2I,IL2–L3I,IL3–L1I	–	–
	Triple Type(B)	3m ～ 10m	–	–	–	L1–(La+L2), L1–(La+L3)(1)	–
One-way pipe length difference from the second branching point to the indoor unit		≦ 10m	–	–	–	IL2–L3I	IL1–L2I,IL3–L4I
Total pipe length after the second branching point		≦ 15m	–	–	–	–	L1+L2,L3+L4
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher	≦ 50m (3)	H	H	H	H	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower	≦ 15m					
Elevation difference between indoor units		≦ 0.5m	–	h	h1,h2,h3	h1,h2,h3	h1,h2,h3,h4,h5,h6

⚠CAUTION

- **For model 200V, always use ϕ12.7mm liquid main pipe when one-way piping length exceeds 40m and ϕ9.52mm if it is 40m or less.**
  If ϕ9.52mm liquid pipe is used in an installation having one-way pipe longer than 40m, it may cause degradation of performance and/or water drops in the indoor unit.
- Always use ϕ25.4mm or ϕ28.58mm gas main pipe "L" when the length of "L" exceeds 35m.
  If ϕ22.22mm gas pipe is used in an installation having one-way pipe longer than 35m, it may cause degradation of performance and/or water drops in the indoor unit.

● FDC250/280V

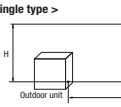
Restriction		Dimensional restrictions	Marks appearing in the drawing: Single	Twin	Triple	W-twin
Total equivalent length(Liquid piping)		[250V] ≦ 70m [280V] ≦ 60m	Le	Le	–	Le
One-way pipe length of refrigerant piping		[250V] ≦ 70m [280V] ≦ 60m	L	L+L1 L+L2	–	L+La+L1, L+La+L2 L+Lb+L3, L+Lb+L4
Main pipe length	Liquid piping	[250V] ≦ 70m [280V] ≦ 60m	L	L	–	L
	Gas piping	≦ 35m (L : ϕ 22.22) [250V] 35-70m [280V] 35–60m (L : ϕ 25.4 or ϕ 28.58)				
One-way pipe length after the first branching point		≦ 30m	–	L1,L2	–	La+L1, La+L2 La+L3, La+L4
One-way pipe length difference from the first branching point to the indoor units		≦ 10m	–	IL1-L2I	–	I(L1+La)–(L3+Lb)I, I(L1+La)–(L4+Lb)I, I(L2+La)–(L3+Lb)I, I(L2+La)–(L4+Lb)I, IL1–L2I, IL3–L4I
One-way pipe length difference from the second branching point to the indoor unit		≦ 10m	–	–	–	IL1–L2I,IL3–L4I
Total pipe length after the second branching point		≦ 15m	–	–	–	L1+L2,L3+L4
Elevation difference between indoor and outdoor units	When the outdoor unit is positioned higher	≦ 50m (3)	H	H	–	H
	When the outdoor unit is positioned lower	≦ 15m				
Elevation difference between indoor units		≦ 0.5m	–	h	–	h1,h2,h3,h4,h5,h6

[Formula to calculate equivalent length (Le)]

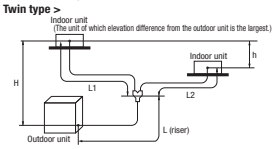
In case of new piping	Le = (length of ϕ 12.7) + 0.52 × (length of ϕ 9.52)
In case of existing piping	Le = (length of ϕ 12.7) + 0.52 × (length of ϕ 9.52) + 1.56 × (length of ϕ 15.88)

Notes: (1) Install the indoor units so that L + L1 becomes the longest one-way pipe.
(2) Connect the indoor unit with the maximum capacity to L1.
(3) If the outdoor temperature is above 43°C, the dimensional restriction is ≦ 30m.

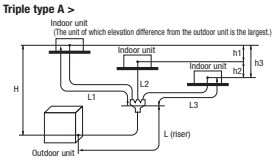
< Single type >



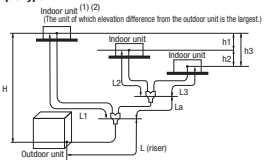
< Twin type >



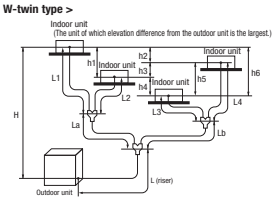
< Triple type A >



< Triple type B >



< W-twin type >



2) Determination of pipe size

- Determine refrigerant pipe size pursuant to the following guidelines based on the indoor unit specifications.

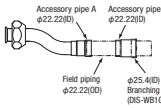
		Model 200V		Model 250V, 280V			
		Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe	Gas pipe	Liquid pipe
Outdoor unit connected		ϕ22.22	ϕ9.52	ϕ22.22	ϕ12.7	ϕ22.22	ϕ12.7
		Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare	Brazing	Flare
Refrigerant piping (main pipe L)		ϕ22.22 or ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58	ϕ9.52 or ϕ12.7	ϕ22.22 or ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58	ϕ12.7	ϕ22.22 or ϕ25.4 or ϕ28.58	ϕ12.7
In the case of a single type	Indoor unit connected	ϕ25.4	ϕ12.7	ϕ25.4	ϕ12.7	–	
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 200V		Model 250V, 280V			
In the case of a twin type	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2)	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52		
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52		
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 100V×2		Model 125V×2, 140V×2			
In the case of a triple type A	Branching pipe set	DIS-TB1G		–		–	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2,L3)	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52				
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52				
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 71V×3					
In the case of a triple type B	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe La,L1)	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52
	Branching pipe set	DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L2,L3)	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ6.35	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 71V×3		Model 60V×2+ Model 125V		Model 71V×2+ Model 100V, 71V×2+ 140V	
In the case of a W-twin type	Branching pipe set	DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G		DIS-WB1G	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe La,Lb)	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52
	Branching pipe set	DIS-WA1G		DIS-WA1G × 2		DIS-WA1G×2	
	Refrigerant piping (branch pipe L1,L2,L3,L4)	ϕ12.7	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ9.52	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52
	Indoor unit connected	ϕ12.7	ϕ9.52	ϕ12.7	ϕ6.35	ϕ15.88	ϕ9.52
	Capacity of indoor unit	Model 50V×4		Model 60V×4, 71V×4		Model 71V×4	

⚠CAUTION

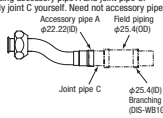
- When the model 50V or model 60V model is connected as an indoor unit, always use a ϕ9.52 liquid pipe for the branch (branching pipe – indoor unit) and a different diameter joint supplied with the branching pipe set for connection with the indoor unit (ϕ6.35 on the liquid pipe side).
  If a ϕ6.35 pipe is used for connection with a branching pipe, a refrigerant distribution disorder may occur, causing one of the indoor units to fall short of the rated capacity.
- A riser pipe must be a part of the main. A branching pipe set should be installed horizontally at a point as close to an indoor unit as possible.
  A branching part must be dressed with a heat-insulation material supplied as an accessory.
- For the details of installation work required at and near a branching area, see the installation manual supplied with your branching pipe set.

3) How to use pipe reducer

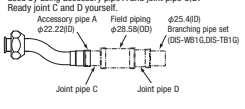
- ϕ22.22(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A,B.



- ϕ25.4(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A and joint pipe C.
  Ready joint C yourself. Need not accessory pipe B.



- ϕ28.58(OD) size of the refrigerant gas pipe can be used by using accessory pipe A and joint pipe C,D.
  Ready joint C and D yourself.



About brazing

Brazing must be performed under a nitrogen gas flow.

Without nitrogen gas, a large quantity of foreign matters (oxidized film) are created, causing a critical failure from capillary tube or expansion valve clogging.

4) Refrigerant pipe wall thickness and material

- Select refrigerant pipes of the table shown on the right wall thickness and material as specified for each pipe size.
- This unit uses R32. Always use 1/2H pipes having a 1.0mm or thicker wall for φ19.05 or larger pipes, because O-type pipes do not meet the pressure resistance requirement.

Pipe diameter [mm]	6.35	9.52	12.7	15.88	22.22	25.4	28.58
Minimum pipe wall thickness [mm]	0.8	0.8	0.8	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Pipe material*	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	O-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe	1/2H-type pipe

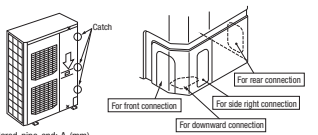
*Phosphorus deoxidized seamless copper pipe C1220T, JIS H3300

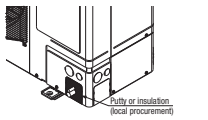
NOTE
- Select pipes having a wall thickness larger than the specified minimum pipe thickness.

5) On-site piping work

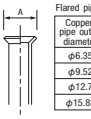
IMPORTANT
- Take care so that installed pipes may not touch components within a unit. If touching with an internal component, it will generate abnormal sounds and/or vibrations.

How to remove the service panel First remove screws (× mark) of the service panel and push it down into the direction of the arrow mark and then remove it by pulling it toward you.



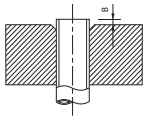


- The pipe can be laid in any of the following directions: side right, front, rear and downward.
- Remove a knock-out plate provided on the pipe penetration to open a minimum necessary area and attach an edging material supplied as an accessory by cutting it to an appropriate length before laying a pipe.
  ※Please close the gap of piping connecting part with putty or insulation material (locally procured) after piping connection. Small animals or insects may intrude into the outdoor unit and it will cause electrical short.
- Carry out the on site piping work with the operation valve fully closed.
- Give sufficient protection to a pipe end (compressed and blazed, or with an adhesive tape) so that water or foreign matters may not enter the piping.
- Bend a pipe to a radius as large as practical.(R100～R150) Do not bend a pipe repeatedly to correct its form.
- Flare connection is used between the unit and refrigerant pipe. Flare a pipe after engaging a flare nut onto it. Flare dimensions for R32 are different from those for conventional R22 and R407C. Although we recommend the use of flaring tools designed specifically for R32, conventional flaring tools can also be used by adjusting the measurement of protrusion B with a protrusion control gauge.
  ※Do not reuse existing flare, make new flare.
- The pipe should be anchored every 1.5m or less to isolate the vibration.
- Tighten a flare joint securely with a double spanner.



Flared pipe end: A (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	A 0 −0.4
φ6.35	9.1
φ9.52	13.2
φ12.7	16.6
φ15.88	19.7

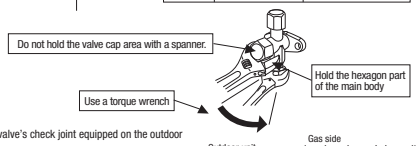


Copper pipe protrusion for flaring: B (mm)

Copper pipe outer diameter	In the case of a rigid (clutch) type	
	With an R32 tool	With a conventional tool
φ6.35	0～0.5	0.7～1.3
φ9.52		
φ12.7		
φ15.88		

CAUTION
- Do not apply force beyond proper fastening torque in tightening the flare nut.
- Fix both liquid and gas service valves at the valve main bodies as illustrated on the right, and then fasten them, applying appropriate fastening torque.
- Do not apply refrigerating machine oil to the flared surface. It can cause refrigerant leakage.

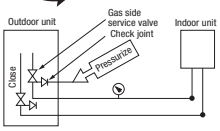
Operation valve size (mm)	Tightening torque (N·m)
φ6.35 (1/4")	14—18
φ9.52 (3/8")	34—42
φ12.7 (1/2")	49—61
φ15.88 (5/8")	68—82
φ19.05 (3/4")	100—130



6) Air tightness test

① Although outdoor and indoor units themselves have been tested for air tightness at the factory, check the connecting pipes after the installation work for air tightness from the service valve's check joint equipped on the outdoor unit side. While conducting a test, keep the service valve shut all the time.
a) Raise the pressure to 0.5 MPa, and then stop. Leave it for five minutes to see if the pressure drops.
b) Then raise the pressure to 1.5 MPa, and stop. Leave it for five more minutes to see if the pressure drops.
c) Then raise the pressure to the specified level (4.15 MPa), and record the ambient temperature and the pressure.
d) If no pressure drop is observed with an installation pressurized to the specified level and left for about one day, it is acceptable. When the ambient Temperature fall 1℃, the pressure also fall approximately 0.01 MPa. The pressure, if changed, should be compensated for.
e) If a pressure drop is observed in checking e) and a) – d), a leak exists somewhere. Find a leak by applying bubble test liquid to welded parts and flare joints and repair it. After repair, conduct an air-tightness test again.

② In conducting an air-tightness test, use nitrogen gas and pressurize the system with nitrogen gas from the gas side. Do not use a medium other than nitrogen gas under any circumstances.



7) Evacuation

<Work flow> When the system has remaining moisture inside or a leaky point, the vacuum gauge indicator will rise.
Check the system for a leaky point and then draw air to create a vacuum again.

Run the vacuum pump for at least one hour after the vacuum gauge shows -101kPa or lower. (-755mmHg or lower)

Confirm that the vacuum gauge indicator does not rise even if the system is left for one hour or more.

Airtightness test completed
↓
Vacuuming begins
↓
Vacuuming completed
↓
Vacuum gauge check
↓
Fill refrigerant

Pay attention to the following points in addition to the above for the R32 and compatible machines.
- ○To prevent a different oil from entering, assign dedicated tools, etc. to each refrigerant type. Under no circumstances must a gauge manifold and a charge hose in particular be shared with other refrigerant types (R22, R407C, R410A etc.).
- ○Use a counterflow prevention adapter to prevent vacuum pump oil from entering the refrigerant system.

8) Additional refrigerant charge

(1) Determine if the factory refrigerant charge of the outdoor unit is sufficient to cover the total liquid piping length.

Item / Capacity	Factory refrigerant charge (kg)	Liquid piping length covered with factory refrigerant charge (m)
200V	4.3	30
250V	5.1	
280V	5.6	

(2) If the factory charge does not cover the total liquid piping length, an addition of refrigerant is necessary.

Step1 - Calculate the total equivalent length, Le:
[Formula to calculate equivalent length (Le)]

In case of new piping	Le = (length of φ12.7) + 0.52 × (length of φ9.52)
In case of existing piping	Le = (length of φ12.7) + 0.52 × (length of φ9.52) + 1.56 × (length of φ15.88)

Step2 - Determine from the table below the additional refrigerant charge:

Model FDC200 *	Equivalent length (Le)				
	≦30 m	30＜Le≦40 m	40＜Le≦50 m	50＜Le≦60 m	60＜Le≦70 m
Additional refrigerant charge (kg)	0kg	0.20kg	2.11kg	2.98kg	3.65kg

Model FDC250	Equivalent length (Le)				
	≦30 m	30＜Le≦40 m	40＜Le≦50 m	50＜Le≦60 m	60＜Le≦70 m
Additional refrigerant charge (kg)	0kg	0.44kg	1.31kg	2.18kg	2.85kg

Model FDC280	Equivalent length (Le)				
	≦30 m	30＜Le≦40 m	40＜Le≦50 m	50＜Le≦55 m	55＜Le≦60 m
Additional refrigerant charge (kg)	0kg	0.44kg	1.31kg	1.96kg	2.35kg

*For FDC200VSA-W only, even if the total liquid piping length > 30m, there may be cases where additional refrigerant charge is not required.

- It is not necessary to remove or add refrigerant charge even if the total liquid piping length is less than 3 m.
- If an existing pipe system is used, the refrigerant charge will vary according to the liquid pipe size. For further information, see "6. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING."

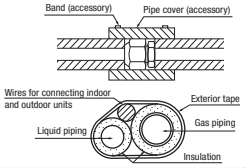
Examples:
FDC250VSA-W - W-twin system with L(φ12.7) = 35 m; La(φ9.52) = Lb(φ9.52) = 5 m; L1(φ9.52) = L2(φ9.52) = L3(φ9.52) = L4(φ9.52) = 3 m
Total liquid piping length = 57 m, additional refrigerant charge is necessary
Step 1: Le = 35 + 0.52 x (5 + 5 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 3) = 46.44 m Step 2: additional refrigerant charge = 1.31 kg

(3) Charging refrigerant
- Charge refrigerant always from the liquid side service port with the service valve shut. When you find it difficult to charge a required amount, fully open the outdoor unit valves on both liquid and gas sides and charge refrigerant from the gas (suction) side service port, while running the unit in the cooling mode. In doing so, care must be taken so that refrigerant may be discharged from the cylinder in the liquid phase all the time. When the cylinder valve is throttled down or a dedicated conversion tool to change liquid-phase refrigerant into mist is used to protect the compressor, however, adjust charge conditions so that refrigerant will gasify upon entering the unit.
- In charging refrigerant, always charge a calculated volume by using a scale to measure the charge volume.
- When refrigerant is charged with the unit being run, complete a charge operation within 30 minutes. Running the unit with an insufficient quantity of refrigerant for a long time can cause a compressor failure.

NOTE Put down the refrigerant volume calculated from the pipe length onto the label attached on the back side of the service panel.

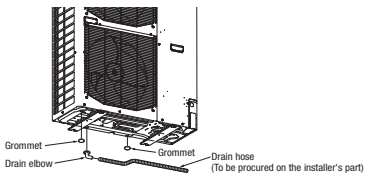
9) Heating and condensation prevention

(1) Dress refrigerant pipes (both gas and liquid pipes) for heat insulation and prevention of dew condensation.
(2) Use a heat insulating material that can withstand 120℃ or a higher temperature. Poor heat insulating capacity can cause heat insulation problems or cable deterioration.
- Improper heat insulation/anti-dew dressing can result in a water leak or dripping causing damage to household effects, etc.
- All gas pipes must be securely heat insulated in order to prevent damage from dripping water that comes from the condensation formed on them during a cooling operation or personal injury from burns because their surface can reach quite a high temperature due to discharged gas flowing inside during a heating operation.
- Wrap indoor units' flare joints with heat insulating parts (pipe cover) for heat insulation (both gas and liquid pipes).
- Give heat insulation to both gas and liquid side pipes. Bundle a heat insulating material and a pipe tightly together so that no gaps may be left between them and wrap them together with a connecting cable by a dressing tape.
- **Both gas and liquid pipes need to be dressed with 20 mm or thicker heat insulation materials above the ceiling where relative humidity exceeds 70%.**

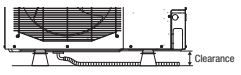


3. DRAIN PIPING WORK

- Execute drain piping by using a drain elbow and drain grommets supplied separately as optional parts, where water drained from the outdoor unit is a problem.
- Water may drip where there is a larger amount of drain water. Seal around the drain elbow and drain grommets with putty or adequate caulking material.
- Condensed water may flow out from vicinity of service valve or connected pipes.
- Where you are likely to have several days of sub-zero temperatures in a row, do not use a drain elbow and drain grommets. (There is a risk of drain water freezing inside and blocking the drain.)
- Do not use drain elbow and grommet made of plastic for drain piping when base heater for outdoor unit is used. Plastic grommet and elbow will be damaged and burnt in worst case.
- Prepare another drain tray made of metallic material for collecting drain when base heater is used.

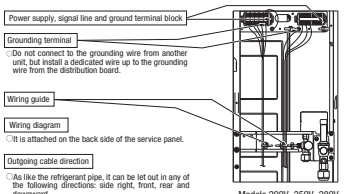


- When condensed water needs to be led to a drain, etc., install the unit on a flat base (supplied separately as an optional part) or concrete blocks.
  Then, please secure space for the drain elbow and the drain hose.



4. ELECTRICAL WIRING WORK For details of electrical cabling, refer to the indoor unit installation manual.

Electrical installation work must be performed by an electrical installation service provider qualified by a power provider of the country.
Electrical installation work must be executed according to the technical standards and other regulations applicable to electrical installations in the country.
- Do not use any supply cord lighter than one specified in parentheses for each type below.
  - braided cord (code designation 60245 IEC 51),
  - ordinary tough rubber sheathed cord (code designation 60245 IEC 53)
  - flat twin tinsel cord (code designation 60227 IEC 41);
  Do not use anything lighter than polychloroprene sheathed flexible cord (code designation 60245 IEC57) for supply cords of parts of appliances for outdoor use.
- Ground the unit. Do not connect the grounding wire to a gas pipe, water pipe, lightning rod or telephone grounding wire.
  If improperly grounded, an electric shock or malfunction may result.
- A grounding wire must be connected before connecting the power cable. Provide a grounding wire longer than the power cable.
- The installation of an impulse withstanding type earth leakage breaker is necessary. A failure to install an earth leakage breaker can result in an acccident such as an electric shock or a fire.
- Do not turn on the power until the electrical work is completeted .

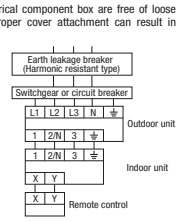


Models 200V, 250V, 280V

- Do not use a condensive capacitor for power factor improvement under any circumstances. (It dose not improve power factor, while it can cause an abnormal overheat accident)
- For power supply cables, use conduits.
- Do not lay electronic control cables (remote control and signaling wires) and other cables together outside the unit. Laying them together can result in the malfunctioning or a failure of the unit due to electric noises.
- Fasten cables so that may not touch the piping, etc.
- When cables are connected, make sure that all electrical components within the electrical component box are free of loose connector coupling or terminal connection and then attach the cover securely. (Improper cover attachment can result in malfunctioning or a failure of the unit, if water penetrates into the box.)
- Always use a three-core cable for an indoor-outdoor connecting cable. Never use a shield cable. Separate grounding wire from indoor - outdoor connecting wire.
- Connect a pair bearing a common terminal number with an indoor-outdoor connecting wire.
- In cabling, fasten cables securely with cable clamps so that no external force may work on terminal connections.
- Grounding terminals are provided in the control box.

Power cable, indoor-outdoor connecting wires
- Always perform grounding system installation work with the power cord unplugged.

CAUTION Always use an earth leakage circuit breaker designed for inverter circuits to prevent a faulty operation.



Models 200V, 250V, 280V

Model	Power supply	Power cable size (mm²)	MAX. over current (A)	Power cable length (m)	Earth wire size	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	19	72	φ1.6mm	φ1.6mm × 3
250V			20	69		
280V			20	69		

※In case of FDU indoor unit combination.

Model	Power supply	Power cable size (mm²)	MAX. over current (A)	Power cable length (m)	Earth wire size	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	23	60	φ1.6mm	φ1.6mm × 3
250V			25	55		
280V			25	55		

※In case of FDUM indoor unit combination.

Model	Power supply	Power cable size (mm²)	MAX. over current (A)	Power cable length (m)	Earth wire size	Indoor-outdoor wire size × number
200V	3 phase 4 wire 380-415V 50Hz 380V 60Hz	5.5	19	72	φ1.6mm	φ1.6mm × 3
250V			20	69		
280V			22	62		

- The specifications shown in the above table are for units without heaters. For units with heaters, refer to the installation instructions or the construction instructions of the indoor unit.
- Switchgear or circuit breaker capacity which is calculated from MAX. over current should be chosen along the regulations in each country.
- The cable specifications are based on the assumption that a metal or plastic conduit is used with no more than three cables contained in a conduit and a voltage drop is 2%. For an installation falling outside of these conditions, follow the internal cabling regulations. Adapt it to the regulation in effect in each country.
- Use an all-pole disconnection type breaker with at 3mm or more gap between the contact points, that provide full disconnection under over-voltage category III.

5. COMMISSIONING

⚠ WARNING
- Before conduct a test run, make sure that the service valves are opened.
- Turn on power 6 hours prior to a test run to energize the crank case heater.
- In case of the first operation after turning on power, even if the unit does not move for 30 minutes, it is not a breakdown.
- Always give a 3-minute or longer interval before you start the unit again whenever it is stopped.
- Removing the service panel will expose high-voltage live parts and high-temperature parts, which are quite dangerous. Take utmost care not to incur an electric shock or burns. Do not leave the unit with the service panel open.

} A failure to observe these instructions can result in a compressor breakdown.

⚠ CAUTION
- When you operate switches (SW3, SW5) for on-site setting, be careful not to touch a live part.
- You cannot check discharge pressure from the liquid operation valve charge port.
- The 4-way valve (20S) is energized during a heating operation.
- When power supply is cut off to reset the unit, give 3 or more minutes before you turn on power again after power is cut off. If this procedure is not observed in turning on power again, "Communication error between outdoor and indoor unit" may occur.

1) Test run method

(1) A test run can be initiated from an outdoor unit by using SW3-3 and SW3-4 for on-site setting.
(2) Switching SW3-3 to ON will start the compressor.
(3) The unit will start a cooling operation, when SW3-4 is OFF, or a heating operation, when SW3-4 is ON.
(4) **Do not fail to switch SW3-3 to OFF when a test run is completed.**

SW-3-3	SW-3-4	
ON	OFF	Cooling during a test run
	ON	Heating during a test run
OFF	—	Normal or After the test operation

2) Checking the state of the unit in operation

Use check joints provided on the piping before and after the four-way valve installed inside the outdoor unit for checking discharge pressure and suction pressure.
As indicated in the table shown on the right, pressure detected at each point will vary depending on whether a cooling or heating operation has been selected.

	Check joint of the pipe	Charge port of the gas service valve
Cooling operation	Discharge pressure (High pressure)	Suction pressure (Low pressure)
Heating operation	Suction pressure (Low pressure)	Discharge pressure (High pressure)

3) Setting SW3-1, SW3-2, on-site

(1) Defrost control switching (SW3-1)
・When this switch is turned ON, the unit will run in the defrost mode more frequently.
・Set this switch to ON, when installed in a region where outdoor temperature falls below zero during the season the unit is run for a heating operation.
(2) Snow guard fan control (SW3-2)
・When this switch is turned on, the outdoor unit fan will run for 10 seconds in every 10 minutes, when outdoor temperature falls to 3℃ or lower and the compressor is not running.
・When the unit is used in a very snowy country, set this switch to ON.

4) Failure diagnosis in a test run

Error indicated on the remote control unit	Printed circuit board LED(The cycles of 5 seconds)		Failure event	Action
	Red LED	Green LED		
E40	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	63H1 actuation or operation with service valves shut (occurs mainly during a heating operation)	1. Check whether the service valves are open. 2. If an error has been canceled when 3 minutes have elapsed since a compressor stop, you can restart the unit by effecting Check Reset from the remote control unit.
E49	Blinking once	Blinking continuously	Low pressure error or operation with service valves shut (occurs mainly during a cooling operation)	

- If an error code other than those listed above is indicated, refer to the wiring diagram of the outdoor unit and the indoor unit.

5) The state of the electronic expansion valve.

The following table illustrates the steady states of the electronic expansion valve.

	When power is turned on	When the unit comes to a normal stop		When the unit comes to an abnormal stop	
		During a cooling operation	During a heating operation	During a cooling operation	During a heating operation
Valve for a cooling operation	Complete shut position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position	Full open position
Valve for a heating operation	Full open position	Full open position	Complete shut position	Full open position	Full open position

6) Heed the following on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker.

・This outdoor unit may start in the standby mode (waiting for a compressor startup), which can continue up to 30 minutes, to prevent the oil level in the compressor from lowering on the first operation after turning on the circuit breaker. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.
・At the first operation of heating mode after turning on the circuit breaker, the outdoor unit may start in cooling mode a while to prevent from liquid refrigerant back to compressor. If that is the case, do not suspect a unit failure.

Items to check before a test run

- When you leave the outdoor unit with power supplied to it, be sure to close the panel.

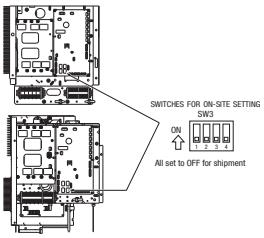
Item No.used in the installation manual	Item	Check item	Check
2	Refrigerant plumbing	If brazed, was it brazed under a nitrogen gas flow?	
		Were air-tightness test and vacuum extraction surely performed?	
		Are heat insulation materials installed on both liquid and gas pipes?	
		Are service valves surely opened for both liquid and gas systems?	
4	Electric wiring	Have you recorded the additional refrigerant charge volume and refrigerant pipe length on the panel's label?	
		Is the unit free of cabling errors such as uncompleted connection, an absent or reversed phase?	
		Are properly rated electrical equipments used for circuit breakers and cables?	
		Doesn't cabling cross-connect between units, where more than one unit are installed?	
		Aren't indoor-outdoor signal wires connected to remote control wires?	
		Do indoor-outdoor connecting cables connect between the same terminal numbers?	
		Are either VCT cabtyre cables or WF flat cables used for indoor-outdoor connecting cables?	
		Does grounding satisfy the D type grounding (type III grounding) requirements?	
		Is the unit grounded with a dedicated grounding wire not connected to another unit's grounding wire?	
		Are cables free of loose screws at their connection points?	
		Are cables held down with cable clamps so that no external force works onto terminal connections?	
—	Indoor unit	Is indoor unit installation work completed?	
		Where a face cover should be attached onto an indoor unit, is the face cover attached to the indoor unit?	

Test run procedure

- Always carry out a test run and check the following in order as listed.

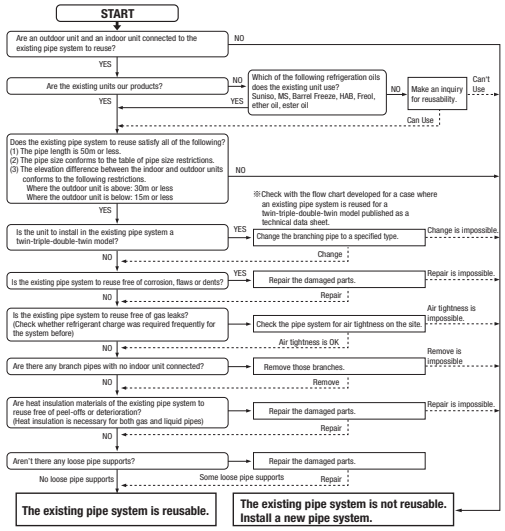
Turn	The contents of operation	Check
①	Open the gas side service valve fully.	
②	Open the liquid side service valve fully.	
③	Close the panel.	
④	Where a remote control unit is used for unit setup on the installation site, follow instructions for unit setup on the installation site with a remote control unit.	
⑤	SW3-3 ON / SW3-4 OFF: the unit will start a cooling operation.	
	SW3-3 ON / SW3-4 ON: the unit will start a heating operation.	
⑥	When the unit starts operation, press the wind direction button provided on the remote control unit to check its operation.	
⑦	Place your hand before the indoor unit's diffuser to check whether cold (warm) winds come out in a cooling (heating) operation.	
⑧	Make sure that a red LED is not blinking.	
⑨	When you complete the test run, do not forget to turn SW3-3 to the OFF position.	
⑩	Where options are used, check their operation according to the respective instruction manuals.	

<200V, 250V, 280V>



6. UTILIZATION OF EXISTING PIPING

Check whether an existing pipe system is reusable or not by using the following flow chart.



⚠ WARNING <Where the existing unit can be run for a cooling operation.>

Carry out the following steps with the excising unit (in the order of (1), (2), (3) and (4))

(1) Run the unit for 30 minutes for a cooling operation.
(2) Stop the indoor fan and run the unit for 3 minutes for a cooling operation (returning liquid)
(3) Close the liquid side service valve of the outdoor unit and pump down (refrigerant recovery)
(4) Blow with nitrogen gas. ※ If discolored refrigeration oil or any foreign matters is discharged by the blow, wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- For the flare nut, do not use the old one, but use the one supplied with the outdoor unit. Process a flare to the dimensions specified for R32.
- **Turn on-site setting switch SW5-1** to the ON position. (Where the gas pipe size is φ19.05)

<Where the existing unit cannot be run for a cooling operation.>

Wash the pipe system or install a new pipe system.
- If you choose to wash the pipe system, contact our distributor in the area.

<Table of pipe size restrictions>

Applicable pipe size combination is restricted by the following table.
Pipe length is limited according to the total refrigerant charge amount.
For additional charging amount of refrigerant, refer to 2.8) Additional refrigerant charge.
◎:Standard pipe size ○:Usable
△:Restricted to shorter pipe length limits ×:Not usable

Pipe size	Liquid pipe	φ9.52	φ9.52	φ9.52	φ12.7	φ12.7	φ12.7	φ15.88	φ15.88	φ15.88
	Gas pipe	φ22.22	φ25.4	φ28.58	φ22.22	φ25.4	φ28.58	φ22.22	φ25.4	φ28.58
200V	Usability	◎	○※2	○※2	△	◎	◎	△	△	×
250V 280V		×	×	×	◎	◎	◎	△	△	△

<Pipe system after the branching pipe>

Pipe size			After 1st branch ※3			After 2nd branch		
	Liquid pipe		φ9.52			φ9.52		
	Gas pipe		φ12.7	φ15.88	φ19.05※1	φ12.7	φ15.88	φ19.05※1
Model	Combination type	Combination of capacity						
200V	Twin	100+100	×	◎	○	—	—	—
	Triple A	71+71+71	×	◎	○	—	—	—
	Triple B	71+71+71	×	◎	○※4	×	◎	○
	Double twin	50+50+50+50	×	◎	○	◎	○	×
250V 280V	Twin	125+125, 140+140	×	◎	○	—	—	—
	Triple A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	Triple B	60+60+125, 71+71+140	×	◎	○※4	◎	×	×
	Triple B	71+71+100	×	◎	○※4	×	◎	×
	Double twin	60+60+60+60, 71+71+71+71	×	◎	○	◎	○	×

※1 Because of its insufficient pressure resistance, **turn the DIP switch SW5-1** provided on the outdoor unit board to the ON position for φ19.05 × t1.0. (In the case of a twin-triple-double-twin model, this also applies to the case where φ19.05 × t1.0 is used in a pipe system after the first branching point.) However, you need not turn the DIP switch SW5-1 to the ON position, if 1/2H pipes or pipes having 1.2 or thicker walls are used.
※2 When the main pipe length exceeds 40m, a significant capacity drop may be experienced due to pressure loss in the liquid pipe system. Use φ12.7 for the liquid main.
※3 Piping size after branch should be equal or smaller than main pipe size.
※4 Piping size from first branch to indoor unit should be φ9.52 (Liquid) / φ15.88 (Gas).
- Any combinations of pipe sizes not listed in the table or marked with × in the table are not usable.

<The model types of existing units of which branching pipes are reusable.>

Models later than Type 8.
- FDC ＊＊＊8□□□ ●FDCP ＊＊＊8□□□

The branching pipes used with models other than those listed above are not reusable because of their insufficient pressure resistance. Please use our genuine branching pipes for R32.

- ＊＊＊ are numbers representing horsepower. □□□ is an alphanumeric letter.

Formula to calculate additional charge volume

Refer to "2. REFRIGERANT PIPING WORK", "8) Additional refrigerant charge".

5.4 Method for connecting the accessory pipe

Models FDC200VSA-W, 250VSA-W, 280VSA-W

PSC012D028H F

- Be sure to use the accessory pipe to connect the service valve on the gas side with the field pipe.
- Be sure to use the straight pipe (Procured at the field) shown in the table 1 applicable to the model of outdoor unit.
- When tightening the flare, connect the pipe securely by pressing the flared face of pipe against the service valve.
- When brazing between the pipe in place and the attached pipe, confirm that no excessive force is applied to the flare joint. Otherwise gas could leak from the flare joint.
- Connect the attached pipe according to the following steps ① — ⑤.

① Referring to Table 2 and Table 3, prepare the straight pipe and the elbow in the field, which are used in the construction examples Ⓐ — Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.

② Firstly, use the accessory pipe to assemble the connecting pipe assembly outside the outdoor unit. (As shown in the figure of connecting examples Ⓐ — Ⓓ.)

③ After assembling the connecting pipe, connect it to the service valve on the gas side inside the outdoor unit. Tighten the flare nut with appropriate torque.

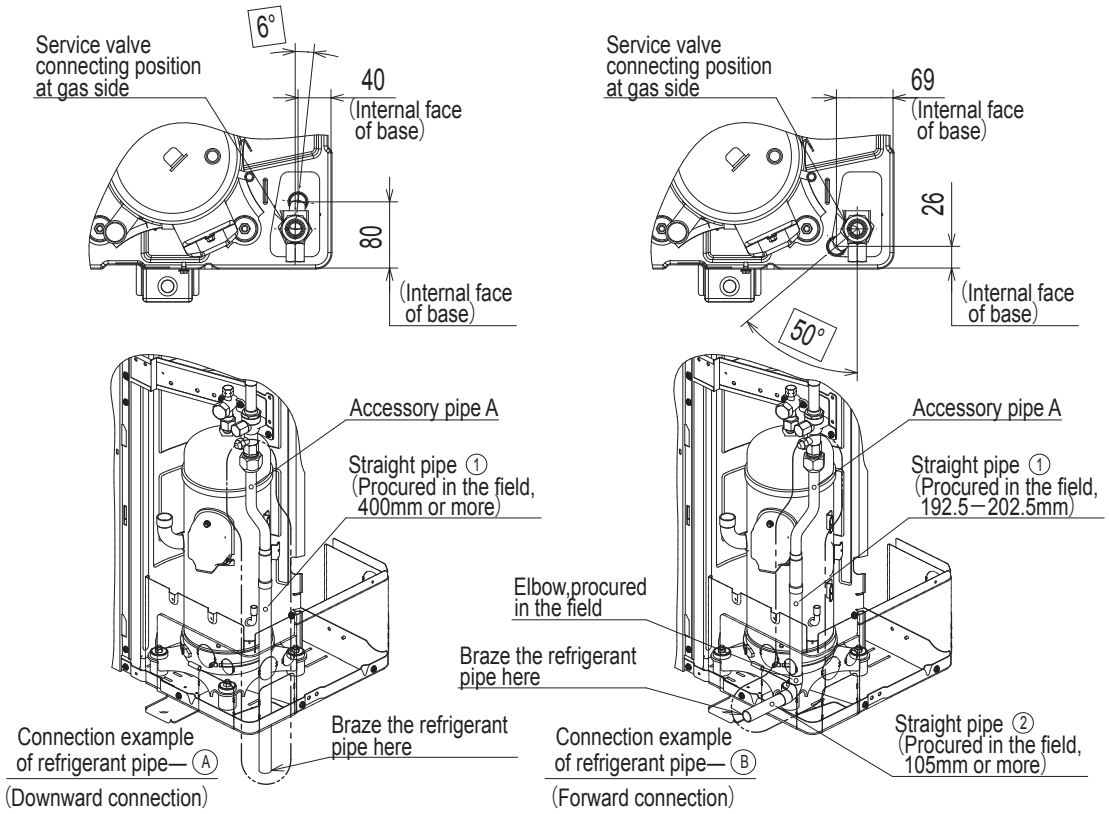
Proper torque	
ϕ 19.05	100−130N•m

④ After connection of the connecting pipe assembly to the service valve on the gas side, braze the connecting pipe assembly and the field pipe.

⑤ When connecting pipe contacts wiring, attach heat insulating material to the pipe in order to prevent from contacting of the pipe and wiring. (If the wiring is rubbed with the pipe and the cover of wiring is teared, there is a risk of a short circuit or an electtric shock.)

【Connection example Ⓐ — Ⓓ applicable to the connecting direction.】

- The piping angle shown below is an example in case of 15mm of heat insulating material. Adjust an angle, according to the thickness of heat insulating material. Pass the connecting pipe in a hole after angle adjustment.



About brazing

● Be sure to braze while supplying nitrogen gas.
If no nitrogen gas is supplied, a large amount of impurity (oxidized film) will be generated, which may clog the capillary tube and the expansion valve, resulting in fatal malfunction.

Table 1 Pipe specification

		Refrigerant line (one way) length (m)	
Single type	200V	≦35 (m)	φ22.22 x t1.0
	250V	≦70 (m)	φ25.4 x t1.0 or φ28.58 x t1.0
	280V	≦35 (m)	φ22.22 x t1.0
		≦60 (m)	φ25.4 x t1.0 or φ28.58 x t1.0

● Be sure to use pipes of 1／2H material, and wall thickness above 1mm. (Pressure resistance of O-type pipe is not enough.)

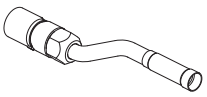
Table 2 Parts used for the connecting pipe assembly

No.	Name	Quantity	Remark
1	Accessory pipe A	1	Accessory
2	Straight pipe ①	1	Procured at the field
3	Straight pipe ②	1 or 0	Procured at the field (Not required for downward direction)
4	Elbow	1 or 0	Procured at the field (Not required for downward direction)

Table 3 Length and specification of straight pipe (Procured in the field)

	Ⓐ Downward	Ⓑ Forward	Ⓒ Rightward	Ⓓ Backward
Straight pipe ①	400mm or more	192.5－202.5mm	192.5－202.5mm	210mm
Straight pipe ②	－	105mm or more	155mm or more	370mm or more

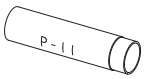
A



Accessory pipe A x 1 pc.

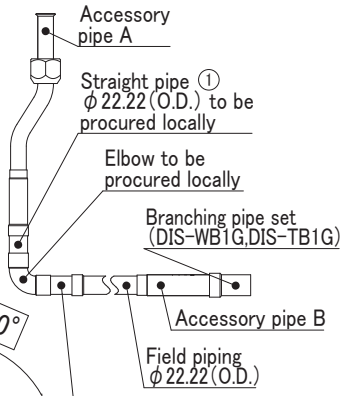
Heat insulating material is attached to the accessory pipe with band. When installing the heat insulating material, cut the band and retrieve it.

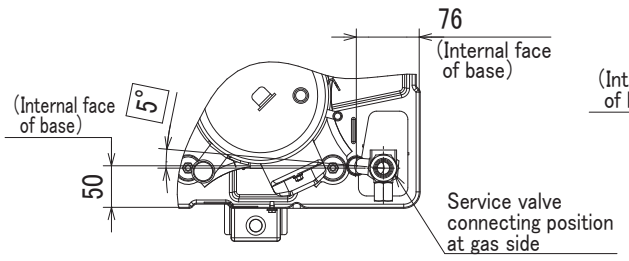
B

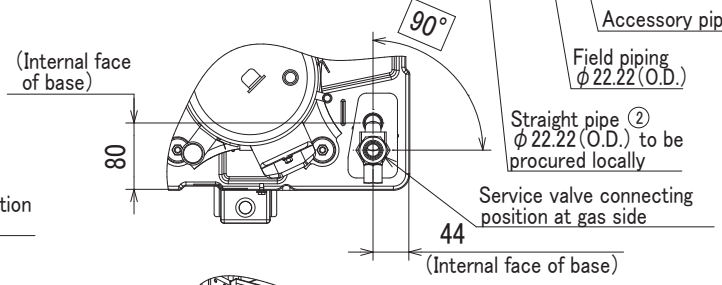


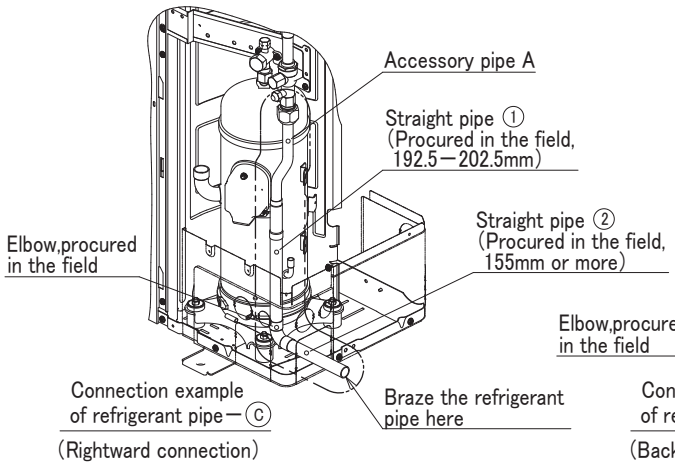
Accessory pipe B x 1 pc.

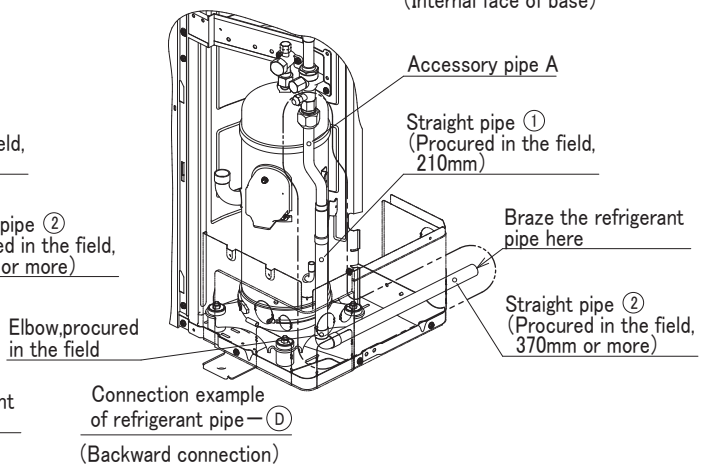
● Branching pipe set can be used by using the accessory pipe B. When φ22.22 (O.D.) size of the indoor unit gas pipe is used, the accessory pipe B is unnecessary.











5.5 Instructions for branching pipe set (DIS-WA1G, WB1G, TA1G, TB1G)

PSB012D865

⚠ WARNING / CAUTION

- This set is for R410A and R32 refrigerant.
- Select a branching pipe set correctly rated for the combined total capacity of connected indoor units and install it according to this manual.
  An improperly installed branching pipe set can cause degraded performance or an abnormal unit stop.
- Provide good heat insulation to the pipes by following instructions contained in this manual.
  Improper heat insulation can result in degraded performance or a water leak accident from condensation.
- Please make sure that only parts supplied as accessories or the manufacturer's approved parts are used in installing the unit, because a leak of refrigerant can result in a lack-of-oxygen accident, if it reaches a concentration beyond the tolerable limit.

This manual explains how to use a branching pipe set that is indispensable in connecting pipes for a twin/triple/double-twin configuration installation (system). For the details of piping work, unit installation work and electrical installation work, please refer to the installation manuals and installation guides supplied with your outdoor and indoor units.

1. Branching pipe set specifications

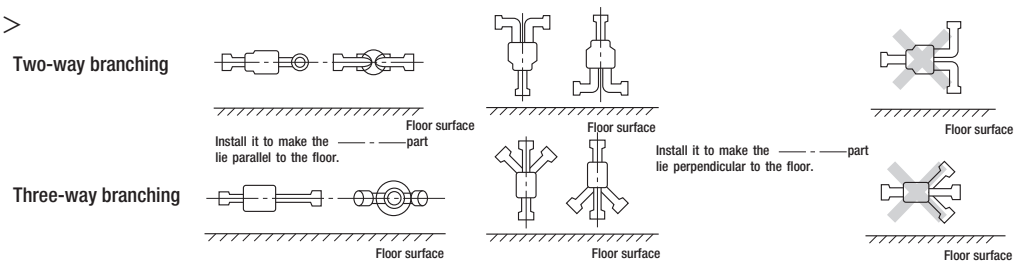
(1) Please make sure that you have chosen the right branching pipe set and the specifications of the parts contained in it by checking with the table below.
(2) Connect pipes as illustrated in the table below. The pipe from an outdoor unit must be brazed to the pipe connection port "①" and the pipes from indoor units to "②," "③" and "④."

Branching pipe set type	Supported outdoor/indoor unit combinations		Part lists			
	Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	Branching pipe set for a liquid pipe	Branching pipe set for a gas pipe	Different diameter pipe joint	Heat insulation material
DIS-WA1G (Two-way branching set)	3HP	1.5HP＋1.5HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ID9.52 ID9.52 1 piece	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ID15.88 ID15.88 1 piece	Joint A ID9.52 2 pieces Flare joint (for indoor unit side connection) Joint B OD15.88 2 pieces ID12.7	One each for liquid and gas
	4HP	2HP＋2HP				
		1.5HP＋2.5HP				
	5HP	2.5HP＋2.5HP				
		2HP＋3HP				
	6HP	3HP＋3HP				
		2HP＋4HP				
DIS-WB1G (Two-way branching set)	8HP	4HP＋4HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ID12.7 ID9.52 1 piece	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ID25.4 ID15.88 1 piece	Joint C OD12.7 1 piece ID9.52	One each for liquid and gas
		3HP＋5HP				
	10HP 12HP	5HP＋5HP 6HP＋6HP				
DIS-TA1G (Three-way branching set)	6HP	2HP＋2HP＋2HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ④ ID9.52 1 piece	ID12.7 ① ② ③ ④ ID15.88 1 piece	Joint A ID9.52 3 pieces Flare joint (for indoor unit side connection)	One each for liquid and gas
DIS-TB1G (Three-way branching set)	8HP	3HP＋3HP＋3HP	ID9.52 ① ② ③ ④ ID9.52 1 piece	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ④ ID25.4 1 piece	Joint A ID9.52 2 pieces Flare joint (for indoor unit side connection) Joint B OD15.88 1 piece ID12.7 Joint D ID12.7 1 piece OD9.52	One each for liquid and gas

ID stands for inner diameter and OD, outer diameter.

(3) To connect pipes for a Double Twin installation (involving 4 indoor units), please see 2-7. "Double Twin configuration."
(4) A branching pipe set must always be installed into the posture as illustrated in the drawing below.

＜Posture to install into＞

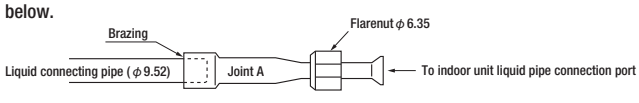


2. Pipe connecting procedure

Braze the different diameter pipe joint found in the set matching the connected outdoor and indoor unit capacities according to the instructions set out below.

⚠ CAUTION

In connecting an indoor unit of which capacity is 1.5HP, 2HP or 2.5HP, always use a ϕ9.52 liquid pipe to connect to the branching pipe (branching pipe – indoor unit).
In connecting to an indoor unit (liquid pipe side: ϕ6.35), use the different diameter pipe joint A supplied with the set and follow the procedure set out below.



2-1 DIS-WA1G

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
3HP	1.5HP＋1.5HP	Flare joint (φ6.35) Joint A / Connecting pipe (φ9.52) / ID9.52 / CAUTION Reference / Joint A / Flare joint (φ6.35)	ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ Joint B ID12.7
4HP	2HP＋2HP		
	1.5HP＋2.5HP		※A: ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ Joint B ID12.7 / ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88
5HP	2.5HP＋2.5HP		※A: ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ Joint B ID12.7 / ID15.88 ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88
	2HP＋3HP	Flare joint (φ6.35) Joint A / Connecting pipe (φ9.52) / ID9.52 / CAUTION Reference / ID9.52	ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88
6HP	3HP＋3HP	ID9.52 ② ① ID9.52 ③ ID9.52	ID15.88 ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88
	2HP＋4HP	Flare joint (φ6.35) Joint A / Connecting pipe (φ9.52) / ID9.52 / CAUTION Reference / ID9.52	ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88

Note When connect the indoor unit of an old model that is shown in the model list, use the joint supplied with the branch piping set like ※A

2-2 DIS-WB1G

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
8HP	3HP＋5HP	ID9.52 ② ID9.52 ① ③ Joint C ID9.52	ID15.88 ② ① ID25.4 ③ ID15.88
	4HP＋4HP		
10HP 12HP	5HP＋5HP 6HP＋6HP	ID9.52 ② ① ID12.7 ③ ID9.52	ID15.88 ② ① ID25.4 ③ ID15.88

2-3 DIS-TA1G

Applicable to the difference in length of pipes after the branch being less than 3m
* Connection is not allowed when the difference in length of pipes is larger than 3m.

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
6HP	2HP＋2HP＋2HP	Connecting pipe (φ9.52) Joint A / ② ③ / ID9.52 ① ④ Flare joint (φ6.35) / Joint A / CAUTION Reference	ID12.7 ① ② ③ ④ ID15.88

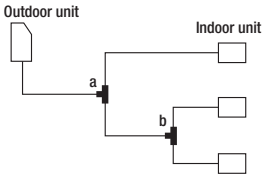
2-4 DIS-TB1G

Applicable to the difference in length of pipes after the branch being less than 3m
* Connection is not allowed when the difference in length of pipes is larger than 3m.

Supported combinations		Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model		
8HP	3HP＋3HP＋3HP	② ID9.52 / ① ID9.52 ③ ④	ID15.88 ① ② ③ ④ ID25.4

2-5. Triple type for same model/same capacity or different model/same capacity

When the difference in length of pipes after the branch is longer than 3m and shorter than 10m

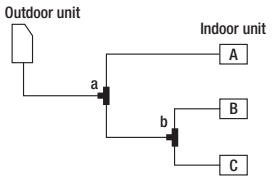


Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	Branching pipe	Branching pipe set type	Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
6HP	2HP＋2HP＋2HP	a	DIS-WA1G	Flare joint (φ6.35) Joint A / Connecting pipe (φ9.52) / ID9.52 / CAUTION Reference / ID9.52	ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88
		b		Flare joint (φ6.35) Joint A / Connecting pipe (φ9.52) / ID9.52 / CAUTION Reference / Joint A / Flare joint (φ6.35)	ID12.7 Joint B ② ① ID15.88 Joint B ③ ID12.7
8HP	3HP＋3HP＋3HP	a	DIS-WB1G	ID9.52 ② ID9.52 ① ③ Joint C ID9.52	ID15.88 ② ① ID25.4 ③ ID15.88
		b	DIS-WA1G	ID9.52 ② ID9.52 ① ③ ID9.52	ID15.88 ② ① ID15.88 ③ ID15.88

2-6. Triple type for same model/different capacity or different model/different capacity

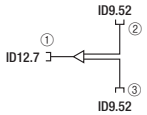
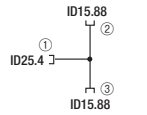
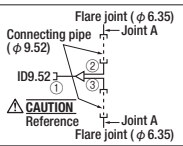
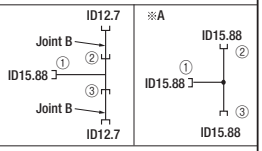
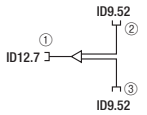
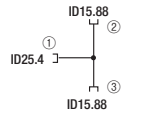
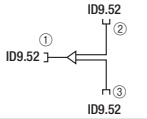
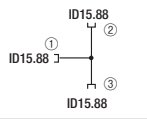
Applicable to the difference in length of pipes after the branch being less than 3m

* Connection is not allowed when the difference in length of pipes is larger than 3m.



Connecting position

Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	A	B	C
10HP	2.5HP+2.5HP+5HP	5HP	2.5HP	2.5HP
	3HP+3HP+4HP	4HP	3HP	3HP
12HP	3HP+3HP+6HP	6HP	3HP	3HP

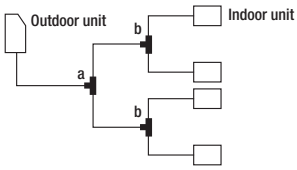
Outdoor unit model	Indoor unit model	Branching pipe	Branching pipe set type	Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
10HP 12HP	2.5HP+2.5HP+5HP 3HP+3HP+6HP	a	DIS-WB1G		
		b	DIS-WA1G		
10HP	3HP+3HP+4HP	a	DIS-WB1G		
		b	DIS-WA1G		

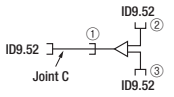
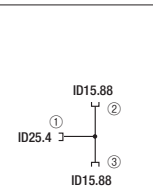
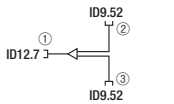
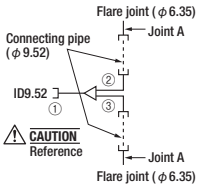
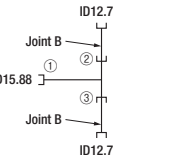
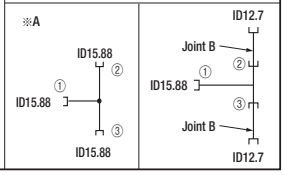
Note When connect the indoor unit of an old model that is shown in the model list, use the joint supplied with the branch piping set like※ A.

2-7. Double twin type

Pipes should be connected as follows for a double twin installation (4 connected indoor units. The capacity of an outdoor unit available for this configuration is either 8HP or 10HP only):

Outdoor unit capacity	Indoor unit capacity
8HP	2HP×4 units
10HP	2.5HP×4 units
12HP	3HP×4 units



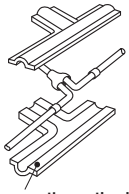
Branching pipe	Branching pipe set type	Outdoor unit model	Liquid branching pipe	Gas branching pipe
a	DIS-WB1G	8HP		
		10HP 12HP		
b	DIS-WA1G	8HP		
		10HP 12HP		

Note When connect the indoor unit of an old model that is shown in the model list, use the joint supplied with the branch piping set like※ A.

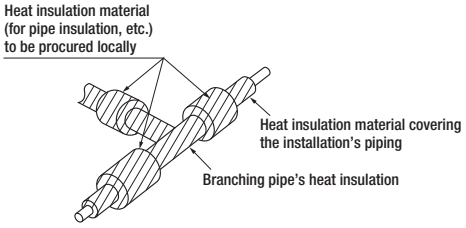
3. Heat insulation work

(1) Condensation can also occur on liquid pipes with this model. Please provide good heat insulation to both liquid and gas pipes.

(2) For the heat insulation of a branching pipe, always use the heat insulation material supplied with the set and provide heat insulation according to the instructions set out below.



1. It has an adhesive layer on the entire inner face. Remove a separator and wrap it around the branching pipe.



2. Apply a heat insulation material (to be procured locally) to the joint between the branching pipe's heat insulation and the heat insulation material covering the installation's piping as described above and wrap a tape over the gap shown as a hatched (///) area to complete dressing of the piping.

MICRO INVERTER PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONERS

MITSUBISHI HEAVY INDUSTRIES THERMAL SYSTEMS, LTD.
2-3, Marunouchi 3-chome, Chiyoda-ku, Tokyo, 100-8332, Japan
http://www.mhi-mth.co.jp/en/